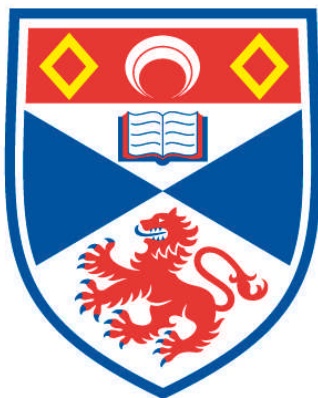


**A CRITICAL EDITION OF AL-DURR AL-MAKNŪN FĪ  
AL-MA'ĀTHIR AL-MĀDIYA MIN AL-QURŪN OF YĀSĪN  
AL-'UMARĪ (920-1226 A.H. = 1514/15 A.D. -  
1811/12 A.D.) : VOL. 1**

**Sayyār al-Jamīl**

**A Thesis Submitted for the Degree of PhD  
at the  
University of St Andrews**



**1983**

**Full metadata for this item is available in  
Research@StAndrews:FullText  
at:**

**<http://research-repository.st-andrews.ac.uk/>**

**Please use this identifier to cite or link to this item:**

**<http://hdl.handle.net/10023/7073>**

**This item is protected by original copyright**

**This item is licensed under a  
Creative Commons Licence**

**A CRITICAL EDITION OF AL\_DURR**  
**AL\_MAKNŪN FĪ AL\_MA'ĀTHIR AL\_MĀDIYA MIN**  
**AL\_QURŪN OF YĀSĪN AL\_UMARĪ**

**( 920 - 1226 A.H. = 1514 / 1515 A.D. — 1811 / 1812 A.D. )**

**BY**

**Sayyār K. Al.Jamīl**

**Ph.D. Thesis**

**Vol. I**

**Introduction and Notes**



University of St. Andrews  
Department of Arabic Studies

A Critical Edition of al-Durr al-Maknūn fī  
al-Ma'āthir al-Māḍiya min al-Qurūn of Yāsīn al-'Umārī  
(920-1226 A.H. = 1514/1515 A.D. -1811/1812 A.D.)

A thesis submitted for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy

By  
Sayyār Kawkab 'Alī al-Jamīl

1983

IN MEMORY OF  
MY FATHER



## DECLARATION

I hereby declare that the following is a record of research work carried out by me; that the thesis is my own composition and it has not previously been presented for any other degree.

ST. ANDREWS

20/5/1983

Sayyār Kawkab 'Alī al-Jamīl.

## CERTIFICATION

I CERTIFY THAT Sayyār Kawkab 'Alī al-Jamīl has completed nine terms of research work in the United College of St. Salvator and St. Leonard, University of St. Andrews, that he has fulfilled the conditions of Resolution No. 1 (1967) of the University Court, and that he is qualified to submit the accompanying thesis in application for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

D.E.P. Jackson, (Dr.)  
(Supervisor).

## ABSTRACT

This thesis is a critical edition of "al-Durr al-Maknūn fī al-Ma'āthir al-Mādiya min al-Qurūn" (DUR.) by the Iraqi historian, Yāsīn Efendi al-Khaṭīb al-'Umārī al-Mawṣilī, 1158-1234 A.H. = 1745-1818 A.D. covering the years 920 A.H. -1226 A.H. (= 1514/1515 A.D. - 1811/1812 A.D.).

The present thesis consists of three parts, and is divided into three volumes. The first part (Vol. I, Introduction and Notes) contains the introduction to DUR., in four chapters, with a supplement. Chapter one is composed of two sections, the first of which deals with the author's personality and his biography: name and nisba, titles and kunya, birth, background, knowledge, character, mystical leanings, social standing, and his death. The second section deals with the author's family (the 'Umārī's in Mosul). The second chapter is divided into two sections, the first is a list of all the author's works; historical, poetical, and literary, and his Naskhiyyāt. The second section is a study of the author's historical works. This study deals analytically with each work in turn. The third chapter is a study of the relevant MSS. The historical structure of these MSS is examined, and the MSS of DUR. are described individually; orthography and the style of the author ... etc. are also investigated. The fourth chapter is a study of the text of DUR. It contains two sections. In the first section, peculiarities of the text are outlined as are the name of the work, the sources, the work as history, its literary forms, geographical elements and economic information.

Section two comprises a study of the historical content which is embodied in this thesis under the following headings: a) Biographical material, b) Annals, c) Contemporary chronicles, d) Local History. Historical content of the biographical material is analysed, as also is the historical material in other fields. The annals cover: 1) The Ottoman conflict with Iran, 2) Eastern Europe, 3) The Mediterranean, 4) Russia and Poland. Also covered in the contemporary chronicles are: 1) The French Revolution, 2) Napoleon Bonaparte, 3) The Ashrāf of Mecca, 4) The Syrian provinces, 5) Salafiyya and Wahhābiyya, 6) Istanbul, 7) Iraq. Local historical subjects covered are: 1) The local powers in the Middle East during the 18th century, 2) Iraq during the 18th century, and 3) The local history of Mosul. The last subject is studied in detail because it is of considerable importance in DUR. which contains full details of the Jalīlī house in Mosul during the 18th century. The additional supplement deals with the methods employed in editing DUR.

This volume also contains appendices, tables, diagrams, maps, lists and bibliographies. Of these appendices attention is drawn to "App. No. 1": (= Notes to the Text) which contains explanatory comments and emendations.

The second part of the thesis (Vol. II Text) contains the text of the first version of DUR. (= DUR. 1 : MSS v and p).

The third part of the thesis (Vol. III, "Apparatus Criticus") contains a comparison of the DUR. 1 and DUR. 2 MSS (= v, p, Bn, B, BR); it also contains the additional material from DUR. 2 (= MSS Bn, B, BR). In this volume, there is also a supplement of additional historical material, covering the period 1218-1226 A.H. (= 1803-1811 A.D.), taken from DUR. 2 (= MS Bn). This is compared with MSS B and BR.

## PREFACE

The story of editing *al-Durr al-Maknūn fī al-Ma'āthir al-Māḍiya min al-Qurūn* (DUR.) is complicated and complex. It is necessary to say at the beginning that DUR. appears to have been written by the author in two versions. The first version is dated 1218 A.H.; while the second version is dated 1226 A.H. This edition of DUR. involves not only the first version itself but also the second version. Both versions (DUR. 1 and DUR. 2) are presented in this thesis.

As an annalistic and biographical chronicle, DUR. 1 begins in the first year of Hijra, 1 A.H. = 622 A.D., and ends in 1218 A.H. = 1803-1804 A.D.; while DUR. 2 goes on to cover the period between 1 A.H. to 1226 A.H. (= 1811/1812 A.D.), hence, DUR. 1 and DUR. 2 cover more than one thousand two hundred years of Islamic history.

This research is thus based on: a) 182 folios of DUR. 1 (= Vienna MS) which cover the period 920-1218 A.H. (= 1514-1803 A.D.). b) 188 folios of DUR. 2 (= Berlin MS) which cover the period 920-1226 A.H. (= 1514-1811 A.D.). These parts of DUR. are of considerable importance because:

1 - This period (the 16th, 17th and 18th centuries in Iraq) is a hitherto ill-researched part of the history of the Ottoman Near - Middle East. DUR. contains important historical material, as well as the local history of Mosul and other parts of Iraq during the 18th century.

2 - These parts of DUR. are not a collection of entertaining stories, or events in only one field of Ottoman history. They constitute

an amalgam of various subjects closely relevant to the Ottoman dispensation, such as: The Sultan; the capital and its internal affairs; the Ottoman conflicts, with the European powers in the west, and with the Persian power in the East; and the foreign policy and the provincial administrative powers in the Arab - Middle East during the 18th century.

3 - These sections of DUR. contain many literary forms, as well as showing the development of the Arabic language, poetry and style with which they deal.

4 - These sections of DUR. contain much economic, social and geographical information, and genealogical and biographical material.

5 - The last stage of this part of DUR., describes in detail the local history of Mosul during the Jalīlī era. Most of the historical material and literary forms are original and valuable.

The year 920 A.H. (= 1514 A.D.), has been chosen as the starting point of this edition, because during this year the Ottoman Sultan Salīm I, 1512-1520 A.D. defeated Ismā'īl I, the Safavid Shah of Iran in the strategic battle at Chāldīrān. After this war, the occupation of Northern Iraq was one of the first Ottoman achievements at the beginning of the 16th century. Northern Iraq was the gate which was opened by Sultan Salīm I to forward his son Sultan Sulaimān I, the Magnificent 1520-1566 A.D., who entered Baghdad with little difficulty, and subdued the whole of Iraq in 1534-5 A.D. Iraq became one of the Ottoman acquisitions when Sultan Sulaimān I subsequently led his armies against the Persians.

The present thesis comprises a major part of DUR., dealing with eras of 22 Ottoman Sultans, ending during the era of Sultan Maḥmūd II, 1808-1839 A.D.

The importance of the author appears primarily through DUR., but his other historical works are not inconsiderable. Yāsīn al-'Umārī was the only Iraqi historian writing in Arabic during the second half of the 18th century; he has written more than 17 historical books on a variety of historical subjects, such as: domestic history, chronicles, biographical material, annalistic history and local history. Most of his historical material deals with the main trends of Mosuli domestic history, which played a significant part in the 18th century history of the Ottoman Empire.

The research for this thesis was done under the auspices of the University of St. Andrews. The following critical edition of DUR., with the ancillary materials, owes a great deal to the interest and generous efforts of numerous individuals at all stages of the project. The advice and help of my supervisor have been of great assistance during the course of my research.

One of the difficulties involved finding DUR. 2. After some time, the mother version of DUR. 2 was discovered and a microfilm of the Berlin MS, the original book of DUR. 2, entitled "Tārīkh Yāsīn Efendi al-'Umārī", was obtained. This occupied a period of some 15 months.

In editing both DUR. 1 and DUR. 2 other difficulties concerning the Apparatus Criticus emerged: the technical system of integrated comparison of all DUR. MSS, and typing the results which are contained

in volume III of this thesis, is an attempt to reconcile the problems posed by the complex nature of the text.

Fortunately, attempts to obtain microfilms of manuscripts of the author's historical works and other historians works have proved successful. Further attempts to discover the lost books, written by the author himself, have proved unsuccessful.

One of the pleasures of producing this thesis has been to reconcile the difficulties posed by the edition of the two different versions of DUR. through the methods and conventions which have been used in this edition. It is hoped that those historians who are interested in the history of the Ottoman Empire during 16th, 17th and 18th centuries, will find rich material in DUR.; and also those researchers and academics who are interested in the critical examination of MSS which pose analogous problems, will find here some suggestions towards establishing a valid method for the prosecution of such edition.

S.K. al-Jamīl

Department of Arabic Studies

St. Andrews University



## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This thesis has been produced under the supervision of Dr. D.E.P. Jackson, the Chairman of the Department of Arabic Studies in the University of St. Andrews, whose criticism, concern, and persistence, spent in reading and discussing this work, have proved invaluable over the five years.

I also wish to thank Dr. John Burton, Senior Lecturer in the Department of Arabic Studies for his careful supervision and concern for my work. My thanks are also due to Professor Maḥmūd al-Jalīlī, the Vice-Principal of the Iraqi Academy for his encouragement and for his help in preparing information regarding the local history of Mosul.

I am particularly grateful to all those people, who provided aid through the use of their private Libraries, and to all those friends and colleagues for translating historical material from German, Latin, Italian and Modern Turkish.

I owe special thanks to the staff of the University Library of St. Andrews University for their assistance, and to Mrs. Elizabeth L. Kerr, the Secretary of the Department of Arabic Studies for patience and typing volume I of this thesis.

Finally, I would like to express my gratitude to my mother without whose encouragement and financial support none of this would have been possible.

## CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
<u>VOL. I</u>	
<u>Part One</u>	
Declaration	1
Certification	11
Abstract	111
Preface	v
Acknowledgements	ix
Contents	x
Tab. No. I Transliteration System	xiii
List of Principal Abbreviations	xiv
List of Abbreviations (References)	xv
List of Abbreviations employed in Apparatus and Notes	xvii
List of the Languages Abbreviations	xviii
List of Marks and Signs	xvix
List of Tables, Appendices and Maps	xx
 The Introduction	 1
Chapter I <u>The author and his family</u>	2
Section a) The author	3
Section b) The 'Umarī Family	15
Chapter II <u>The author's Works</u>	30
Section a) List of the author's works	31
Section b) A Study of the author's historical works	34
Chapter III <u>A Study of DUR. MSS</u>	69
Section a) The MSS of DUR.	70
Section b) The Style of DUR.	79
Section c) The Description of MSS	82
Section d) Orthographical and Grammatical Peculiarities of the DUR. MSS	94
Section e) Conclusion	97

		<u>Page</u>
Chapter IV	<u>The Text of DUR.</u>	102
Section a)	The Peculiarities of the Text	103
Section b)	A Study of the Historical Contents	116
Supplement	The methods and conventions used in the edition of DUR. 1 and DUR 2.	158
Appendices		164
Appendix I	Notes to the Text	166
Appendices 2-5	App. 2 Sultans of the Ottoman Empire	341
	App. 3 Shahs of Persia 1501-1924 A.D. = 907-1343 A.H.	343
	App. 4 Grand Vizirs of the Ottoman Empire 1451-1922 A.D. = 855-1341 A.H.	345
	App. 5 The Walls of Mosul during the Local Rule 1726 A.D.-1139 A.H.-1835 A.D. - 1251 A.H.	353
Maps		356
Bibliographies	1. Archives	364
	2. Manuscripts	364
	3. Miscellaneous Works of Reference	370
	4. Generalia & Encyclopaedias	370
	5. Catalogues	371
	6. Dictionaries	372
	7. Arabic Books	374
	8. Persian Books	382
	9. Turkish Books	383
	10. Western Books	385
	11. Articles & Periodicals	393
	12. Maps & Sketches	396
	13. Atlases	398
	14. Calendar	398
	15. The Private Libraries	398
Index		399

PageVOL. IIPart Two

The author's introduction to DUR. 1 i-vi

The Text 1-510VOL. IIIPart Three

The author's introduction to DUR. 2 i-iii

A) Apparatus Criticus 512-1188

B) Supplement of additional material from 1189-1240  
DUR. 2.

Tab. No. I : Transliteration System

Consonants

	A	P	OT + T		A	P	OT + T
•	.	.	.	ض	d	z	z
ب	b	b	b	ط	t	t	t
پ	-	p	p	ظ	z	z	z
ت	t	t	t	ع	'	'	'
ث	th	s	s	غ	gh	gh	g or ġ
ج	j	j	c	ف	f	f	f
چ	-	ch	c	ق	q	q	k
ح	h	h	h	ك	k	k	k
خ	kh	kh	h	گ	-	g	g
د	d	d	d	ل	l	l	l
ذ	dh	z	z	م	m	m	m
ر	r	r	r	ن	n	n	n
ز	z	z	z	ه	h	h	h
ژ	-	zh	j	و	w	u	v
س	s	s	s	ی	y	y	y
ش	sh	sh	s	ا	-a		
ص	s	s	s	ال	al		

(Column Heading : A = Arabic, P = Persian, OT + T = Ottoman + Turkish.)

Vowels

Long	ا	or	ی	ā	Diphthongs	و	au or aw
			و	ū		ی	ai or ay
			ي	ī			
Doubled			•	ī or yy	Short	a	فتحة
			و	ū or ww		u	ضمه
						i	کسره

Note: The transliteration system is that of the International Journal for Middle East Studies.

List of Principal Abbreviations

anon.	anonym
App.	Appendix
b.	ibn
b.	born
B.	Bey, used only in Tables
Chap.	Chapter
d.	died
E.	East, Eastern
ed.	edited
ex.	executed
fol.	folio
fols.	folios
gram.	grammar, grammatical
Ind.	Index
Madr.	Madrasa (A.)
Medr.	Medrasa (T.)
MS	Manuscript
MSS	Manuscripts
N.	North, Northern
P	Pasha, used only in Tables
P.	Page, used only in heading subjects in Apparatus Criticus.
p.	page
plur.	plural
S.	South, Southern
Tab.	Table
Tran.	Translated
vol.	volume
vols.	volumes
vulg.	vulgar
W.	West, Western

List of Abbreviations (References)

ATH	Yāsīn al-'Umārī, <u>al-Āthār al-Jaliyya fī al-Hawādith al-Ardīyya</u> (MS)
Baghdadi	Ismā'īl al-Baghdādī, <u>Hadiyat al-'Ārifīn</u> ...
BAY	Yāsīn al-'Umārī, <u>Ghāyat al-Bayān fī Manāqib Sulaimān</u> (MS)
Brock.	Carl Brockelmann, <u>Geschichte<sup>der</sup> Arabischen Litteratur</u>
BSOAS	<u>Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies</u>
BZTI	<u>Bildlexikon Zur Topographie Istanbul</u> by Muller-Wiener
Dalil	S. B. Ausābiūs, <u>Dalīl Libnān 'Abra al-Tārīkh</u>
Dawha	R. H. al-Kirkūklī, <u>Dawḥat al-Wuzarā'</u> ..
DUR. 1	Yāsīn al-'Umārī, <u>al-Durr al-Maknūn fī al-Ma'āthir</u> .... , (v and p MSS)
DUR. 2	Yāsīn al-'Umārī, <u>al-Durr al-Maknūn fī al-Ma'āthir</u> .... , (Bn, B, BR MSS)
En 1	<u>Encyclopaedia of Islam</u>
En 2	<u>Encyclopaedia of Islam</u> New edition
EWB	L. Langer, <u>An Encyclopedia of World History</u>
GHA.	Yāsīn al-'Umārī, <u>Ghāyat al-Marām fī Tārīkh Mahāsīn</u> ....
GHAR.	Yāsīn al-'Umārī, <u>Gharā'ib al-Athar fī Hawādith</u> ....
GUL.	M. Nazmi-Zadeh, <u>Gulsin Hulafa</u>
I.AN.	<u>Islam Ansiklopedesi</u>
IBI	A. 'Azzāwī, <u>Tārīkh al-'Irāq bain Ihtilālain</u>
IJMES	<u>International Journal of Middle Eastern Studies</u>
I.TU.	Ibn Tūlūn, <u>Mufākahāt al-Khillān</u> ....
JAOS	<u>Journal of American Oriental Society</u>
JESHO	<u>Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient</u>
JIAS	<u>Journal of the Iraqi Academy of Sciences</u>
JRAS	<u>Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society</u>
JWH	<u>Journal of World History</u>
Khaz.	al-Khazrajī, <u>Kitāb al-'Uqūd al-Lu'lu'iyya</u> ....
KHU.	Yāsīn al-'Umārī, <u>Khulāsat al-Tawārīkh</u> (MS)
Majmu'	N. Siyūfī, <u>Majmū' al-Kitābat al-Muharrara</u> ....
MAN.	M. Amīn al-Khaṭīb al-'Umārī, <u>Manhal al-Awliya'</u> ....
MANH.	Yāsīn al-'Umārī, <u>Manhaj al-Thuqāt fī Tarājim al-Qudāt</u> (MS)

- M. M. M. Majallat Ma'had al-Makhtūtāt al-'Arabiyya
- M. L. A. Majallat lughat al-'Arab
- M. Q. J. Mesopotamia Quarterly Journal
- MUH. M. Amīn al-Muhibbī, Khulāṣat al-Athar ....
- MUN. Yāsīn al-'Umarī, Munyat al-Udabā' fī Tārīkh al-Mawsil ....
- NCMH The New Cambridge Modern History
- NISA. Yāsīn al-'Umarī, al-Rawḍa al-Fayḥā' fī Tawārīkh al-Nisā'
- NOA. The New Oxford Atlas
- OCD The Oxford Classical Dictionary
- QUR. Yāsīn al-'Umarī, Qurrat al-'Ainain fī Tarājīm .... (MS)
- RAW. 'Isām al-Dīn 'Uthmān al-'Umarī, al-Rawḍ al-Nadīr ....
- RAWD. 'Alī Ibn Yāsīn al-'Umarī, Rawḍat al-Akhbār fī Dhīkr Afrād al-Akhyār (MS)
- SAIF. Yāsīn al-'Umarī, al-Saif al-Muḥannad fī Manāqib man Summiya Ahmad (MS)
- SAL. Musul Vilāyeti Salnāmesi
- SALK. M. K. al-Murādī, Salk al-Durar fī A'yān al-Qarn al-Thānī 'Ashar
- SHA. Yāsīn al-'Umarī, 'Unwān al-Sharaf
- SHAM. M. M. al-Ghulāmī, Shammāmat al-'Anbar wa al-Zahr al-Mu'anbar
- SUMER Sumer Journal
- Taq. Abū al-Fidā', Tagwīm al-Buldān
- TAW. The Time Atlas of the World
- UMD. Yāsīn al-'Umarī, 'Umdat al-Bayān fī Dhīkr Taṣārīf al-Zamān (MS)
- UMM. Yāsīn al-'Umarī, Umm al-Dunyā (MS)
- ZAH. Yāsīn al-'Umarī, al-Rawḍ al-Zāhir fī Tawārīkh al-Mulūk al-Awa'il wal Awākhir (MS)
- ZUB. D. al-Chalabī, Zubdat al-Āthār al-Jaliya fī al-Hawādith al-Ardiyya



List of Abbreviations of Apparatus Criticus and Notes

ab.	above
ab.L.	above the line
ac.	according
ad.	add, adds, added
af.	after
app.	appear, appears, appeared
be.	before
betw.	between
c.m.	copying mistake
corr.	correct, corrected
cr.	crossed out by copyist
damg.	damage, damaged
del.	deleted by author
diff.	different, difference
dis.	distorted
ditt.	ditto
en.	end, ending
er.	eraser, erasers, erased
ins.	instead of
L.	Line
Ldv	Local dialect variant
marg.	margin
men.	mention, mentions, mentioned
mod.	modify, modified, modification
n.c.	not clear
(om.	omit, omits, omitted
(- hapl.	haplography
p. his.	poetic - history ( = التاريخ الشعري )
(para.	paragraph
{parag.	
Pass.	Passage
Sen.	Sentence
Supp.	Supplement (Apparatus Criticus)
suppl.	supply, supplied

List of the Languages Abbreviations

(A)	Arabic
(Alb.)	Albanian
(Bulg.)	Bulgarian
(F.)	French
(Ge.)	German
(Georg.)	Georgian
(Gk.)	Greek
(Hung.)	Hungarian
(It.)	Italian
(K.)	Kurdish
(Lat.)	Latin
(Ot.)	Ottoman
(P.)	Persian
(Pol.)	Polish
(Roum.)	Roumanian
(Russ.)	Russian
(Sl.)	Slavonic
(Sp.)	Spanish
(T.)	Turkish

List of Marks and Signs used in the Text and in the  
Apparatus Criticus

- @....@      For words and phrases and paragraphs in the Margins.
- (      )      For words presented in red ink in MS v.
- <      >      For words and phrases supplied from other MSS of DUR.,  
or from other sources.
- [      ]      For words and phrases added to the Text and to the  
Apparatus Criticus by ed.
- -      For formulae
- "      "      For sayings or quotations.  
  
For blanks.
- /      For ending the page.
- †      Illegible.

List of Tables, Appendices and Maps

a) TABLES

Table I	Transliteration System
Table II	The Branch of 'Uthmān b. 'Alī b. Qāsim al-'Umarī
Table III	The Branch of Muḥammad b. 'Alī b. Qāsim al-'Umarī
Table IV	The Branch of Mūsā b. 'Alī b. Qāsim al-'Umarī
Table V	Chronological table of the historical works of Yāsīn al-'Umarī
Table VI	The Stemma of the DUR. MSS
Table VII	The two families of DUR.
Table VIII	The spaces left in MS Bn
Table IX	Peoples and countries
Table X	The Wālīs of Baghdād during the Mamlūk era
Table XI	The administrative and military structure of the government of Mosul during the Jalīlī era
Table XII	The Tree of the Ottoman Sultans
Table XIII	The Tree of the Jalīlī Family
Table XIV	The House of Ḥāj Husain Pasha
Table XV	The House of Muhammad Amīn Pasha (Ghāzī)
Table XVI	The House of Murād Pasha
Table XVII	Contemporary Monarchs of the Ottoman Empire and Persia

b) APPENDICES

Appendix 1	The Notes to the Text
Appendix 2	Sultans of the Ottoman Empire 1281-1922 A.D.
Appendix 3	Shahs of Persia 1501-1924 A.D. = 907-1343 A.H.
Appendix 4	Grand Vizirs of the Ottoman Empire 1451-1922 A.D. = 855-1341 A.H.
Appendix 5	The Walis of Mosul during the Local Rule 1726 A.D. - 1139 A.H. - 1835 A.D. - 1251 A.H.

c) MAPS

- Map I      The Ottoman Empire during the 16th century
- Map II     The Provinces of the Ottoman Empire
- Map III    The Map of Mosul - by Felix Jones
- Map IV    The Topography of the Tigris between Mosul and Nineveh
- Map V     The Routes of Nādir Shah in Iraq 1743
- Map VI    Plan Von Mosul - by E. Herzfeld Dec. 1917

## THE INTRODUCTION

## CHAPTER ONE

### THE AUTHOR AND HIS FAMILY

## THE AUTHOR

### Section a)

#### 1. Name and nisba

The author, Yāsīn al-'Umarī, presents himself in his present work as: ياسين العمري الخطيب بن خير الله العمري الخطيب بن محمود العمري الخطيب ابن الشيخ موسى العمري الخطيب الموصلي الحنفي القادري <sup>(1)</sup>.

But in another work, he provides us with his full nisba which has been included in one of his *qaṣīda*; <sup>(2)</sup> according to this *qaṣīda*, his nisba appears as follows: ياسين بن خير الله بن محمود بن موسى بن علي قاسم بن حسين بن علي ابن حسن بن محمد بن حسين بن ابو بكر بن موسى بن عمر بن عثمان بن حسين بن صالح بن عبد النبي بن عبد القادر بن عبد الوهاب بن عبد الله بن منصور بن شمس الدين بن يحيى بن يعقوب بن محمد بن احمد العربي بن ابو بكر بن يوسف بن سعيد بن عبد الهادي ابن عاصم بن عبيد الله بن عاصم بن عمر الفاروق <sup>(3)</sup>. 'Umar al-Fārūq which is a name of 'Umar Ibn al-Khaṭṭāb, the second caliph in Islam, has been presented as a surname of the 'Umarī family.

#### 2. Titles and Kunya

ياسين افندي الخطيب بن خير الله الخطيب العمري الحنفي القادري الموصلي <sup>(4)</sup>.

The author was called, "Yāsīn Efendī al-Khaṭīb b. Khairullāh al-Khaṭīb al-'Umarī al-Hanafī al-Qādirī al-Mawṣilī".

1 - Efendī is a Turkish title which was given to scholarly gentlemen.



2 - al-Khaṭīb, which simply shows that he was the preacher, like his brother Muḥammad Amin al-Khaṭīb, his father Khairullāh and his grandfathers Maḥmūd and Mūsā.

3 - al-Hanafī, shows that he belonged to the Islamic doctrine of Abū-Hanīfa al-Nu'mān.

4 - al-Qādirī shows that he observed Imām 'Abdul-Qādir al-Gaillānī's Ṭarīqa which is one of the famous Ṣūfī orders.

5 - al-Mawṣilī, shows that he belonged to the city of Mosul.

Yāsīn al-'Umarī has been called (al-Shaikh) by some other sources;<sup>(4)</sup> he is also known as a historian and Adīb.<sup>(5)</sup>

### 3. Birth

Yāsīn al-Khaṭīb al-'Umarī was born in Mosul in the early morning of Thursday, 1st April, 1745 A.D. = 28th Ṣafar 1158 A.H.<sup>(6)</sup> He holds that he was born one year and a half after the siege of Mosul by Nādir Shah 1156 A.H. = 1743 A.D.; the author states: سنة الف ومائة وثمان وخمسين ، في اواخر صفر الخير ليلة الخميس (7) كان مولدى فيكون بعد رحيل طهماز عن الموصل بسنة ونصف . by the night of Thursday, he means either the early morning of Thursday dated 28th of Ṣafar 1158 A.H. = 1st of April, 1745 A.D.; or possibly late at night on Wednesday 27th of Ṣafar 1158 A.H. = 31st of March, 1745 A.D.<sup>(8)</sup>

In the same text (DUR. 2), the author mentions that he was born two years after the siege of Mosul by Nādir Shah in 1743 A.D. = 1156 A.H.; he states: (9) . بعد رحيل طهماز بستتين .

In GHA., Yāsīn records the same year as his year of birth, and states:

(10) "والفقر ، كانت ولادته سنة الف ومائة وثمانية وخمسين ."

Most of the author's biographers have recorded a different date for his birth, <sup>(11)</sup> that is the year 1157 A.H. = 1744 A.D. <sup>(12)</sup> It seems to me that those biographers took as their source either directly or indirectly, the statement of his famous brother Muḥammad Amīn al-Khaṭīb al-'Umarī who says in his short biography of his brother Yāsīn: "مولده

(13) "سنة سبع وخمسين ومائة والف ، فبني وبني سنة نحو خمس سنين في العمر والله اعلم ."

According to another statement by Yāsīn himself in his biography of his brother Muḥammad Amīn, it seems that his brother was eight years his senior rather than five. He writes:

(14) "اخي وشقيقي امين العمرى .... مولده سنة الف ومائة وخمسين ."

#### 4. Background

Our knowledge about Yāsīn's education, schools he attended, teachers and his early life, is very scanty, although some facts relating to his early life are available in his DUR. 2 in particular. On the other hand, Yāsīn al-'Umarī was practically ignored by all his contemporary biographers, except his brother Muḥammad Amīn al-Khaṭīb who wrote a short biography of him. <sup>(15)</sup>

Yāsīn was brought up in a religious family which, while not rich, was famous for teaching in religious schools. The great influence exercised

over him by his family, resulted in his devoting himself to religious activities.

He was taught to read by his father Khairullāh and his older brother Muḥammad Amīn. Both Yāsīn and Amīn were probably instructed in Arabic grammar by their father who is described by his son Yāsīn:

" كان فقيها نحويها صرفيا له حواشي على الفقه  
 اقام خطيبا في الجامع العمري ستين سنة". (16)

No doubt, Yāsīn's early education followed traditional lines, embracing study of the Qur'ān, the Ḥadīth and Arabic literature.

In his biography of Yāsīn al-'Umarī, P. Kemp says: "We know nothing of his education and life before his forties... No doubt he attended the madrasat al-Sibyan when in his teens, but the names of his teachers have not reached us ...". (17)

Indeed, Yāsīn himself gives us some information; he said that he had studied the Qur'ān, Arabic calligraphy and received his first education from al-Saīyid Mallā 'Alī al-Mawṣilī who was known as Fattāḥ al-Fāl, when he was not yet eight years old. He wrote: السيد ملا علي الموصلي المعروف بفتح الفال ، كان شيوخا في القرآن وأنا غلام لم ابلغ ثمان اعوام ، وعلمني الخط ، وادبني وهدبني وكان حسن الخلق ، حليم الطبع عفيف النفس ، وكان يعلم الغلمان القرآن". (18)

Also, in DUR. 2, Yāsīn wrote a biography of his teacher mentioned

above, and added that he was taught writing by him. He writes:

" قرأت عليه القرآن ، وعلمني الكتابة". (19)

When he was a child, Yāsīn also joined his father in his visits to the Mawṣilī Majālis (meetings) of the famous scholars, such as the majālis of Muḥammad al-Ghulāmī. He states:

"... وكان - محمد افندي الغلامي - له صحبة مع والدي ، وكان  
(20) والدي يزوره وأنا غلام مع والدي ، وكنت اراه صاحب شبة ورنار وهيبة "

Yāsīn spent the whole of his childhood, teenage and youth in the same house with his brother Muḥammad Amīn, the famous scholar. No doubt Yāsīn was influenced by his brother's personality and gained much knowledge from him. They were living together under the same roof for 32 years. (21) They were separated in 1777 A.D. = 1191 A.H. (22)

Yāsīn remarks that when he wrote the biography of his brother, he said:

" اقول وأنا بحمد الله اتفضل على علومه ، واقتبس من نور  
(23) فهمه ، واعترف اني نقطة في بحر تاليفه ومنظومه "

"I admit that I am a drop in the sea of his knowledge and composition."

## 5. Knowledge

It seems evident that Yāsīn did not get any degree or Ijāzā in knowledge, religion or literature during his early life. We have no idea whether he had studied in the schools of Mosul or not. In the Middle East of his contemporaries, Mosul was well-known as a cultural and educational centre as well as the home of scholars.

Yāsīn, from the available evidence, appears not to have made any great effort to take his primary education seriously. His works reveal

faults in Arabic grammar, literary style, poetry and handwriting. This is not the case, however, with his knowledge of history. We are extremely fortunate in having his excellent accounts of historical material, especially the local history of Mosul and Iraq during the Ottoman periods. The author tells us that he had been fond of books of classical history since his youth. He writes: *منذ نشأت لم ازل اطالع كتب التواريخ المتقدمة وأشرح نظري في رياض آداب اهل الكالات المتعنة*.<sup>(24)</sup>

In his short biography of his brother Yāsīn, Muḥammad Amīn says: that Yāsīn was a literary man, and had a mastery of poetry, especially in poetic-history. Also from reading he developed a wide and varied knowledge of several sciences. In addition, he was experienced in medicine.<sup>(25)</sup>

In 1789 A.D. = 1204 A.H., the scholar 'Abdul-Qādir al-Arbīlī had come to settle in Mosul, teaching at the school of Zakariyā al-Tājir in Maḥallat Bāb al-Iraq, near the 'Umarī's' dwelling place. Yāsīn had joined this scholar who taught him Fiqh.

Yāsīn himself mentions that he was taught Sadr al-Sharī'a with al-Arbīlī. He writes:... *ملا عبد القادر الاربلي ثم الوطي هو العالم الباهر صاحب الجيد الزاهر ، قدم الى الموصل سنة ١٢٠٤ ، وولي التدريس في مدرسة الحاج زكريا التاجر ، واقام بها يدرس وتلمذ عليه جماعة ، وقرأت عليه صدر الشريعة*.<sup>(26)</sup>

It obviously seems that Yāsīn studied Fiqh around the age of 44. It does not reach us that he took his Ijāzā in Fiqh, but P. Kemp thinks he did. On the other hand, we know that Yāsīn decided to learn Fiqh in 1789 A.D., just after the death of his brother Amīn in 1788 A.D. = 1203 A.H.

## 6. Character

Yāsīn al-'Umarī was a native of Mosul. He loved his home very much, and enjoyed living in that old city which, as far as I am concerned, is why he recorded much of its local historical material during the Jalīlī era, and preserved its belle-lettres, legacy and biographies of its leading men. He described Mosul as his home, saying proudly: الموصل

الحدباء .... هي دار وطني ، ومحل انسي وسكني ،  
(27) فقد قالت الحكماء .... فطرة الرجل معجونة بحب الوطن .

Also, as a native of Mosul, Yāsīn gave us another note about his life and the city of Mosul in which he was born, lived and died. He spent the whole of his life in Mosul, never leaving it, not even for a short while, as this following statement says: وحيث اني

ما سافرت من بلدي - الموصل - ، ولا بعدت عن  
سورها مقدار فرسخ ، هذا في حالة الشباب  
(28) فكيف الآن وقد ضعفت القوة ، وذهبت الهمة ، ولت النعمة .

On the other hand, Yāsīn seems through his style to have been fond of pleasantry and jocularity. In his DUR. 2, Yāsīn mentioned that one of the Mawṣilī notables Yūnis Efendi b. Mallā Bakr al-Mawṣilī misunderstood him when he attributed to him weakness, weariness, fellowship of the ignorant, following the people of seduction, even intercourse with women and much of like nature. (29)

This does not seem to be a fair picture of Yāsīn, in that he, as a person, is classified as one of the Fuḍalā' al-Mawṣil. (30) He appears not, however, to have rejected these slanders mentioned above, but was just contented to reply by these following four verses:

اود دنوه ويزرد هجرى      واعظم قدره ويخط ذكرى  
 فلو يدري بحالي ما جفاني      وقابلني بهجر لا ييشرى  
 ويشهد اني ابدا صوتا      وصمتي كان من عسرى وفقرى  
 وما مدحي له ابني نوالا      ولكن ذاك من شائي وامرى<sup>(31)</sup>

It seems to us that Yāsīn was not respected by the court of the government of Mosul; secondly, he described himself as a reticent person and a poor man. Thirdly, he composed books and poetry in praise of princes and royalties with ulterior motives, principally money.

## 7. Sufism

Yāsīn was one of the believers in Sufism - Islamic mysticism.<sup>(32)</sup>

Its influence appears clearly in the author's life, works, style and his biographical literature. He described himself as a good believer in Awliyā' and Mashāikh. In the text of his DUR. 2, he compared himself with a contemporary scholar Mallā Muḥammad Efendī b. al-Kūla al-Mawṣilī who was considered as a reformer and unbeliever in Sufism. Yāsīn wrote saying: "ولي قضاء ديار بكر ملا محمد افندی ابن ملا احمد الوصلي المعروف بابن الكولہ فاقام بها اياما وعزل .... فقدم الى الموصل وكان يبنض الشيخ محي الدين ابن العربي ، ويطلق لسانه عليه ، وهو شديد الانكار على جميع الاولياء ، فاجتمعت معه عند احد امراء بني عبد الجليل ورأيت عنده من التكبر ما ليس عند احد . أقول واني اعترف اني لست من رجاله في العلم لكن ان شاء الله تعالى احسن منه ديانة ، حسن الاعتقاد بالاولياء الكرام والمشايخ العظام ، والمذكور مشهور بالانكار حتى تابعه بعض الناس الاشرار ، ولا سيما حين سافر الى الروم ، وتقدم بعلمه لا بعلمه حتى ولي القضاء وصار صاحب ثروة".<sup>(33)</sup>

The author mentions that he was in contact with Shaikh 'Uthmān al-Khaṭīb al-Aswad b. al-Ḥāj Ibrāhīm al-Mawṣilī al-Ḥanafī, who died in 1196 A.H. = 1776 A.D. This shaikh instructed Yāsīn in Qādiriyyah and Naqshibandiyyah, the two famous Ṣufī orders in Iraq.

Yāsīn himself confirms this in the following statement. He says:

"سنة ١١٩٦ توفي شيخنا الشيخ الرشيد الحاج  
عثمان الخطيب الشهير بالاسود خطيب جامع الناصري  
كان له طريقة قادرية وطريقة نقشبندية وعنه اخذت الطريقتين نعمنا الله به (34).

In another place, the author says:

"ولنا منه اجازة بالطريقة القادرية والنقشبندية (35).

## 8. Social Standing

Yāsīn al-'Umarī does not seem to have had any vital position in his society, or the political scene. He spent his twenties and thirties in the paper trade as a Warrāq, and made his living by copying books and writing history and literature. (36) In his middle-age, he offered his works and poetry, dedicating them to the Amīrs, vizīrs and notables of Mosul and Baghdad. (37)

In 1204 A.H. = 1789 A.D., the author joined the service of Sa'dallāh Bey (later Pāshā) b. Ḥāj Ḥusain Pāshā al-Jalīlī, and he remained his personal Imām for 12 years. He states: "وفي سنة ١٢٠٤  
انصلت بخدمته - سعد الله ابن الحاج حسين باشا الجليلي -  
فجعلني اماما في الصلاة ، فاقمت عنده اتني  
عشر سنة ، ثم استعفيت منها ، وقيت ازوره غبا (38).



Yāsīn does not mention any reason for his resignation from that position, but he still visited Sa'dallāh Bey Jalīlī from time to time.

On the other hand, the author seems to have been satisfied with his simple life, but it appears that he was not widely respected by his contemporaries as a scholar, owing to his poverty despite his literary works. Recognition of the value of his historical records and the attendant fame has had to wait until this century.

It seems that he belonged to the lower-middle class. As a religious man, once he was asked by the poor in his capacity as Imām, to help them in praying during the plague of Mosul in 1215 A.H., he complied. As he records:   
 " فَأَقَمْتُ فِي بَابِ الْجَدِيدِ لِلصَّلَاةِ نَحْوَ سِتِينَ   
 يَوْمًا فِي الصَّبَاحِ إِلَى الْمَسَاءِ مُتَزَمًا الْأَمَامَةَ ... وَمِنْ غَرِيبٍ   
 مَا وَقَعَ أَنْ فَقَرَاءَ بَابَ الْجَدِيدِ أَجْمَعُوا عَلَيَّ ، وَطَلَبُوا مِنِّي   
 أَنْ أَسِيرَ بِهِمْ إِلَى حُضْرَةِ نَبِيِّ اللَّهِ شَيْتَعٍ م ،   
 وَنَدَعُو اللَّهَ أَنْ يَدْفَعَهُ عَنَّا   
 هَذَا النَّازِلُ الْهَـ" (39)

It seems that his personality and his knowledge never helped him to hold any public office. Neither was he forced by the Jalīlī's (contemporary governors of Mosul) or even by the aristocratic 'Umari's to accept not even for a short time an appointment as Imām or Khaṭīb of any mosque in Mosul, except for the 60 days he spent as Imām in Bāb al-Jadīd. (40) He was not given the opportunity of teaching in any school, and we have no knowledge of his employment during his thirties and forties.

His father Khairullāh died in 1182 A.H. = 1768 A.D. (41) when Yāsīn

was 23 years old; after ten years, the two brothers Yāsīn and Muḥammad Amīn were in dispute about 60 books left by their father. Later, after the death of Muḥammad Amīn in 1203 A.H. = 1712 A.D., Yāsīn records that he suffered at the hands of his nephews who denied him those books. (42)

However we do know that he favoured writing and copying to other activities. He was a detached observer not directly involved in the political events of his days. Once, Yāsīn remarked that he was a participant in the local conflict of Mosul 1175 A.H. = 1760 A.D. between two political blocs. He supported Bāb al-Iraq of Jalīlī's against the bloc of Maldān under the leadership of the Turkish Wālī Muṣṭafā Pasha Shāhisiwār, (43) who was appointed as Wālī of Mosul in 1174 A.H. = 1760-61 A.D.; the author records: "وامر الوالي مصطفى باشا بضرب الطوب، فحاربوا الفرقة الاخرى في مدة ايام مائة وخمسة وعشرين كلهم، وكنيت من الفرقة الضرويين ثم امر بضرب القنبر فحاربوا نحو ثلاثين قنبرة ولم تضر الكل احدا من المسلمين." (44)

But it seems to me that this experience was the first and last of Yāsīn's political life when we know that he was 15 years old, therefore did not compromise his position as a recorder of history. However, he did take an interest in the politics of his region.

On the other hand, it seems that he had many friends, some of whom were reputedly reporters or talkers. The others were of a multifarious nature, thus a picture emerges of one who could mix with various kinds of people in his society.

### 9. Death

We do not know the exact date of Yāsīn's death because he himself was the last local chronicler of the Jalīlī era. It is probable that he died in 1818 A.D. = 1234 A.H. <sup>(45)</sup>

THE 'UMARĪ FAMILY

Section b)

Mosul had been populated by many Arab tribes in the early centuries of Islam; one of those tribes was the 'Umarī's who were wealthy and landowners, who lived in Mosul during the fourth century of Islam. (46)

But the later 'Umarī's who settled in Mosul during the last centuries of Ottoman rule belonged to Ḥāj Qāsim al-'Umarī, the great grand-father of the author, who died 1001 A.H. = 1590 A.D. (47)

At the time of the Ottoman conquest of Mosul in 1516 A.D. = 922 A.H., the city had long since suffered chaos socially and politically under Persian rule. (48) Accordingly, the Ottomans brought Ḥāj Qāsim al-'Umarī from Mecca to Mosul as a religious 'ālim to help in spreading the Ḥanafī doctrine which was the Ottoman-Islamic madhhab. (49)

Qāsim lived in Maḥallat Bāb al-'Irāq, south-west of old Mosul. This Qāsim had had erected in 971 A.H. = 1563-64 A.D., a mosque on the rubble of an old masjid near his house. (50) This mosque became known as Jāmi' al-'Umarī. In his mosque, Qāsim himself was the Khaṭīb and Imām; (51) his mosque had as waqf two baths situated beside it, a stretch of woodland, an orchard, eight shops situated in Suwāiqat Bāb al-'Irāq, (52) and two others in Suq al-'Allāfīn. (53)

Qāsim, out of concern for his welfare, appears to have established his family in Mosul, and as a result of that, he was in conflict with the city over land. (54)

Qāsim, the founder of the 'Umarī's had one son only. His name was 'Alī who died one year before his father, in 1591 A.D. = 1000 A.H. <sup>(55)</sup> This 'Alī left three sons, 'Uthmān, Mūsā and Muḥammad.

These three 'Umarī's became the fathers of the three branches in this family. We know that 'Uthmān's progeny was gaining fame day after day, and obtained a high social position in Mosul. <sup>(56)</sup>

'Uthmān's branch of the 'Umarī's was rich. <sup>(57)</sup> Most of the branch achieved positions as 'Ulamā', 'Udabā', Qāḍī's and Muftī's, as well as landowners; while the members of Mūsā's branch of the 'Umarī's <sup>(58)</sup> were known as Mallās. Mūsā's progeny were not rich and Mūsā himself was Khaṭīb only.

The third branch of the 'Umarī family, is that of Muḥammad b. 'Alī b. Qāsim, who left two sons Aḥmad and Abū Bakr. Muḥammad's progeny was smaller in number. <sup>(59)</sup>

It seems that both 'Umarī's and the Ashrāf were still in conflict when the Persians captured Mosul in 1623 A.D. = 1032 A.H. supported by the Ashrāf, therefore Mūsā b. 'Alī b. Qāsim escaped with his family to Jazīrat Ibn 'Umar, while his two brothers 'Uthmān and Muḥammad fled with their families to Qal'at al-Qamarī near 'Amādiya in northern Iraq. <sup>(60)</sup>

In Mosul, the Persian leader Qāsim Khān married a girl from the Ashrāf. <sup>(61)</sup>

The 'Umarī's spent about three years in the upper northern mountains of Mosul, and returned home after the Persians had abandoned Mosul. <sup>(62)</sup>

In DUR., Yāsīn has provided many details about his family and its three branches. He wrote the biographies of many 'Umarī's who were noblemen, scholars, poets, literary men, ṣūfīs, muftī's, qādīs ... etc. Some other 'Umarī's were celebrated in the local political administrative arena of Mosul and Baghdad.

### 1. The branch of 'Uthmān al-'Umarī

We know that Murād b. 'Uthmān (d. 1681 A.D. = 1092 A.H.), the ra'īs al-'Ulamā' in Mosul, was a teacher in Nabī Yūnus mosque. He mastered Turkish, Persian and Kurdish as well as his native Arabic;<sup>(63)</sup> his son, 'Abdul-Bāqī (d. 1697 A.D. = 1109 A.H.) became mudarris in Nabī Yūnus mosque after his visit to Anatolia, and met the grand vizīr Muṣṭafā Pasha Guperlī in Istanbul, where he taught. Later, he was appointed qādī in various towns, but he spent most of his life in Mosul, and sent his deputies to act on his behalf.<sup>(64)</sup> There is another son of Murād, by name 'Alī Abū al-Faḍā'il (d. 1734 A.D. = 1147 A.H.) who succeeded his brother as mudarris at Nabī Yūnus mosque, also. Like his father, he obtained the honorary title, ra'īs al-'Ulamā', and became muftī of Mosul and then qādī of Baghdad for two years. He returned to Mosul and remained muftī at Mosul until he reached old age.<sup>(65)</sup> Abul-Faḍā'il 'Alī became rich after he visited Istanbul many times. He owned many villages in the plain of Mosul and Jabal Maqlūb,<sup>(66)</sup> he also owned various bazaars, baths, coffee houses and khāns;<sup>(67)</sup> his reliable relations with Istanbul made him the chief notable in Mosul during the first stage of Jalīlī rule,<sup>(68)</sup> and Abul-Faḍā'il was considered as the head of the 'Umarī family.<sup>(69)</sup>

'Alī abul-Faḍā'il left seven sons, one of them is Murād (d. 1716 A.D. = 1129 A.H.), who studied in Mosul, and was literarily prolific. His disagreement with his father led him to leave Mosul for Istanbul where he died. <sup>(70)</sup> This Murād left two sons, one of whom is Yaḥyā (d. 1748 A.D. = 1161 A.H.) who managed to achieve the rank of muftī later on succeeding his grand-father 'Alī Abul - Faḍā'il. <sup>(71)</sup> Yaḥyā was a scholar and a poet.

The second famous son of 'Alī abul-Faḍā'il was 'Alī (d. 1778 A.D. = 1192 A.H.), who studied in Mosul and became a scholar. He wrote many Taṣānīf and was also a poet; he died in Istanbul, and buried in Uskudār. <sup>(72)</sup>

'Alī abul-Faḍā'il had another famous son, 'Uthmān Daftarī (d. 1770 A.D. = 1184 A.H.), who studied in Māwraṇ and Mosul. He became a literary man, and a famous poet. He entered the service of Ḥāj Ḥusain Jalīlī, the wālī of Mosul, and 'Uthmān Daftarī remained his personal assistant many years, and was close to the Jalīlīs, especially during the siege of Mosul by Nādir Shah (1743 A.D. = 1156 A.H.). On the other hand 'Uthmān was a companion of Muḥammad Amīn b. Ḥāj Ḥusain Pāshā al-Jalīlī when they were sent to Istanbul by the Vālī Ḥāj Ḥusain himself after the siege of Mosul to convey the news of the great victory to the Sultan Maḥmūd I.

'Uthmān Daftarī spent more than four years with Ḥāj Ḥusain al-Jalīlī in Asia Minor when the Jalīlī was Vālī of Qāris and Kutāhyā. In 1756 A.D. = 1170 A.H., 'Uthmān Daftarī finished writing his famous book entitled (al-Rawḍ al-Naḍīr fī Tarjamat 'Udabā' al-'Aṣr). At first, he offered this book to Amīn Pasha al-Jalīlī, but shortly after he left Mosul

for Istanbul and met the Grand Vizir, Rāghib Pasha to whom he offered his (RAW.). 'Uthmān was appointed Daftardār of Baghdad by the Grand Vizir Rāghib Pasha. 'Uthman remained four years in Daftardāriya of Baghdad, until the death of Sulaimān Pasha Abū Līla, the wālī of Baghdad who favoured him. Thus, 'Uthmān became Qā'im-maqām the wālī of Baghdad. After a short while, he was in conflict with the new wālī of Baghdad, 'Umar Pasha. He took refuge in many places, and died after years of harm and vagrancy. (73)

2. The second branch of the 'Umarī family that of Muḥammad b. 'Alī b. Qāsim, who left two sons, one of them a famous figure called Aḥmad (d. 1650 A.D. = 1061 A.H.) who visited Istanbul where he obtained a high rank and held various important but unspecified positions. When he finally returned home, he was rich. Once he was back home he spent the spring of every year in his orchard near the Mujāhidī mosque in Mosul; he was murdered by the Turkish Wālī of Mosul Ibrāhīm Pasha. Aḥmad's mother and his brother Abū Bakr (d. 1664 A.D. = 1075 A.H.) went to Istanbul after his execution, and raised a complaint against Ibrāhīm Pasha who was killed in Diyār-Bekr the year after. After his death, Aḥmad was celebrated as (Aḥmad al-Maqtūl). His brother Abū Bakr mentioned above was a literary man. (74)

3. The third branch of the 'Umarī family, is that of Mūsā b. 'Alī b. Qāsim who left two sons, the first of whom Maḥmūd (d. 1690 A.D. = 1102 A.H.)<sup>(75)</sup>, who was a Khaṭīb and a literary man, visited Turkey eleven times. In his last visit, he had reached the grand vīzīr Qara Muṣṭafā pasha during the



siege of Vienna. The author Yāsīn recorded: الخطيب محمود  
 العمري ابن الشيخ موسى العمري .... سافر الى الروم احدى عشر  
 مرة اخرها سنة سفر بيج ، فوصل الى مخيم  
 الوزير الاعظم قرة مصطفى باشا ، وقضى حوائجه  
 وعاد الى الموصل لـ (76)

The second son of Maḥmūd was Faṭḥallāh (d. 1695 A.D. = 1107 A.H.). This Faṭḥallāh was known as a Qārī' and teacher in Mosul. He was appointed qāḍī of Mosul and Baṣra later on. It seems that he acquired a considerable wealth through his position as qāḍī. He also fought his cousin 'Alī Abūl Faḍā'il over control of the Tauliya and Waqf of the 'Umarī mosque, after which fight they went to court in Istanbul where they were recorded by the grand vizir and became partners<sup>(77)</sup> in 1690 A.D. = 1102 A.H. of that Waqf.

His brother, Maḥmūd, mentioned above, had left three sons, Amīn (d. 1712 A.D. = 1124 A.H.) who was a poet,<sup>(78)</sup> Aḥmad (d. 1740 A.D. = 1153 A.H.) who was a literary man, spent seven years in Istanbul,<sup>(79)</sup> and Khairallāh (d. 1768 A.D. = 1182 A.H.).<sup>(80)</sup>

Khairallāh, the Khaṭīb in the 'Umarī mosque for sixty years, studied in Mosul and became a scholar in Fiqh, Arabic grammar, Ṣarf, Ḥisāb, farā'id, Tafsīr and logic. As well as that, he was a deputy in Iftā' for his cousin 'Alī Abul-Faḍā'il al-'Umarī. The Muftī of Mosul was called (Amīn al-Fatwā).

Khairallāh had left five sons, Ṣabghatallāh, Muḥammad Amīn, (the author) Yāsīn, Maḥmūd and 'Abdul-Razzāq, two of whom were widely celebrated, Muḥammad Amīn and Yāsīn.

Muhammad Amīn was born in Mosul 1738 A.D. = 1151 A.H., and studied in its schools, and in Māwrān and Baghdad. He took several ijāzā's from the famous scholars and shaikhs. He became a teacher, taught in many schools in Mosul and compiled many books.

Amīn al-'Umarī was a ṣūfī, historian, adīb and poet. He also wrote science books, philosophy (ḥikma), logic and exegesis of the Qur'ān. Reckoned one of the most important books on the local history of Mosul during the first stage of the Jalīlī era is (Manhal al-Auliya wa Mashrab al Aṣfiya' fī Tārīkh al-Mawṣil al-Ḥadba') = (MAN.). Moreover (MAN.) gives an account of the siege of Mosul by Nādir Shah in 1743 A.D. = 1156 A.H. Muhammad Amīn al-Khaṭīb died in Mosul 1788 A.D. = 1203 A.H. (81)

His brother, Yāsīn al-Khaṭīb was born in Mosul on Thursday, 1st April, 1745 A.D. = 1158 A.H., and received his education in Mosul. He did not get as much knowledge as his brother, but he was known as a writer and historian. Most of his 17 historical works are of considerable importance as records of local history of Iraq, and as chronicles of Middle Eastern events. He was also considered an adīb, showing his interest in poetry and sufism. (82)

TABLE I: The Branch of 'Uthmān b. 'Alī b. Qāsim 'Umarī

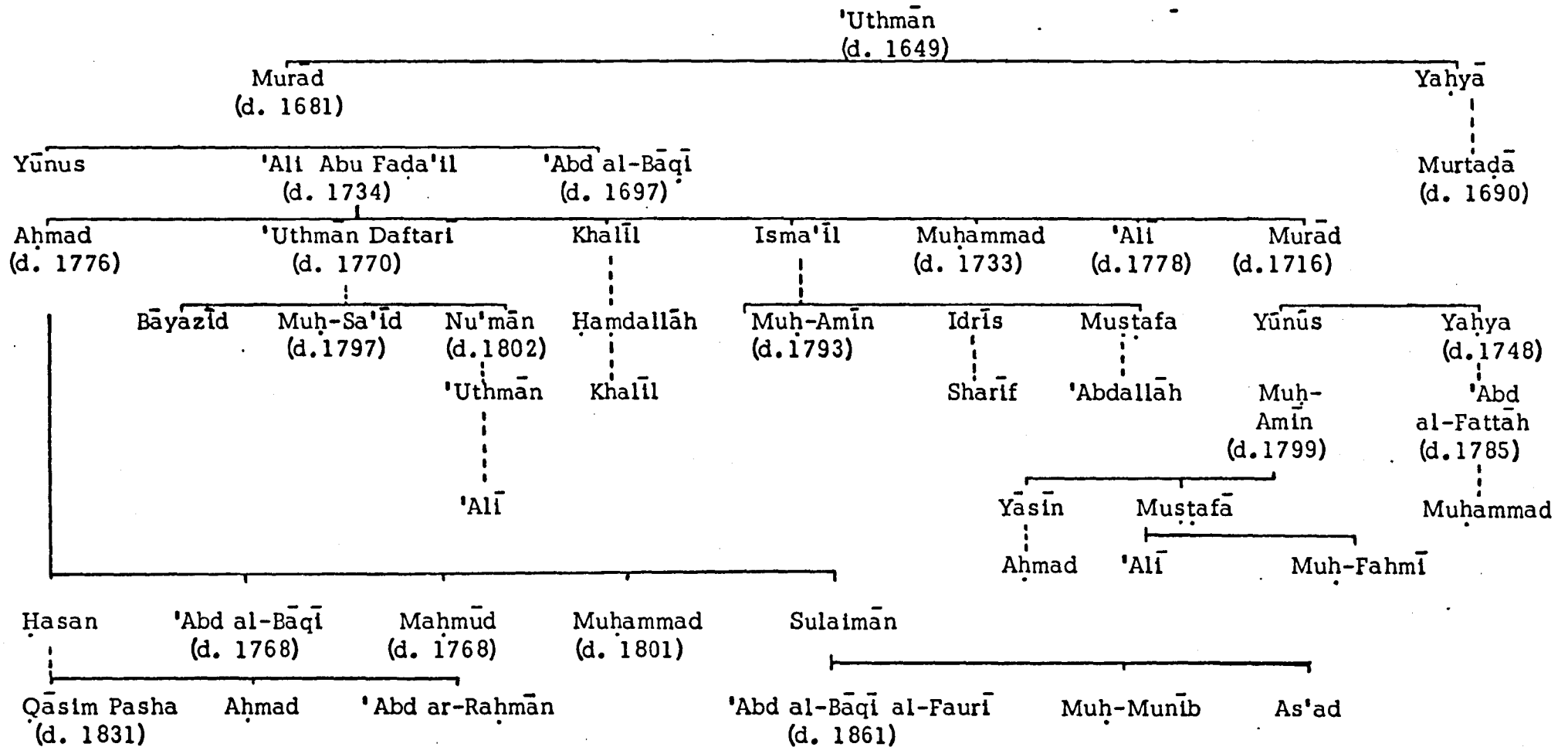


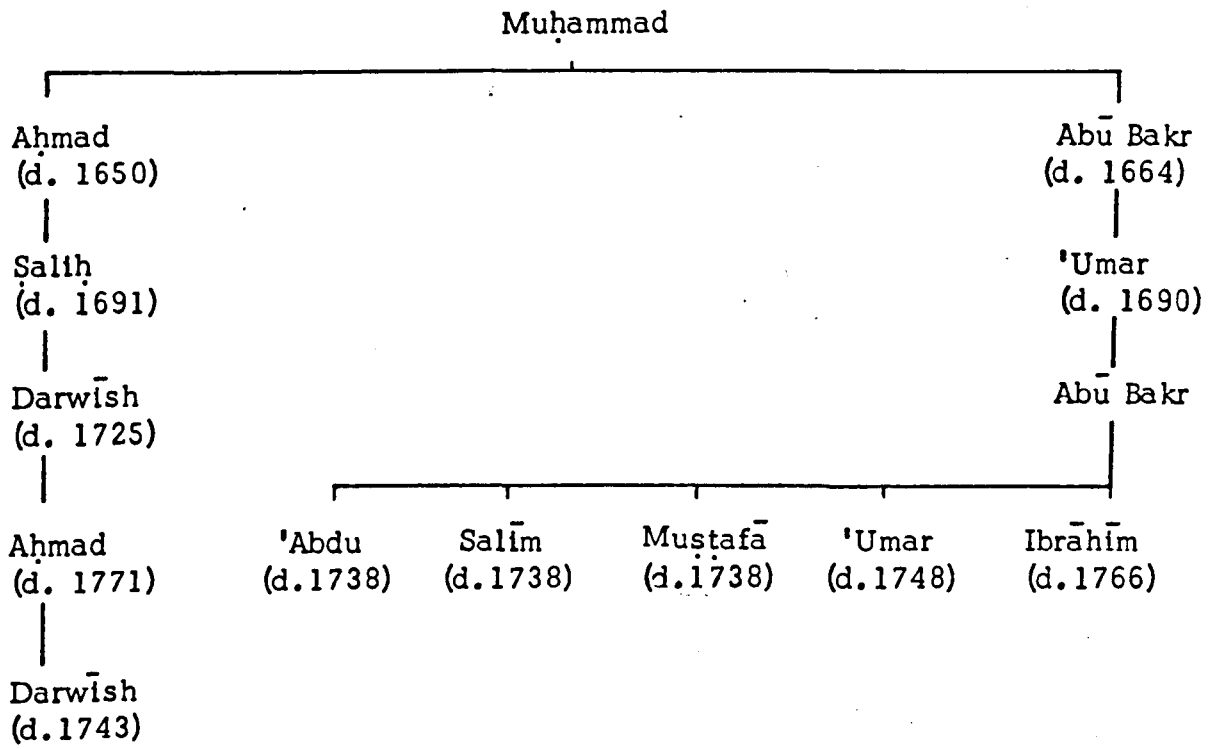
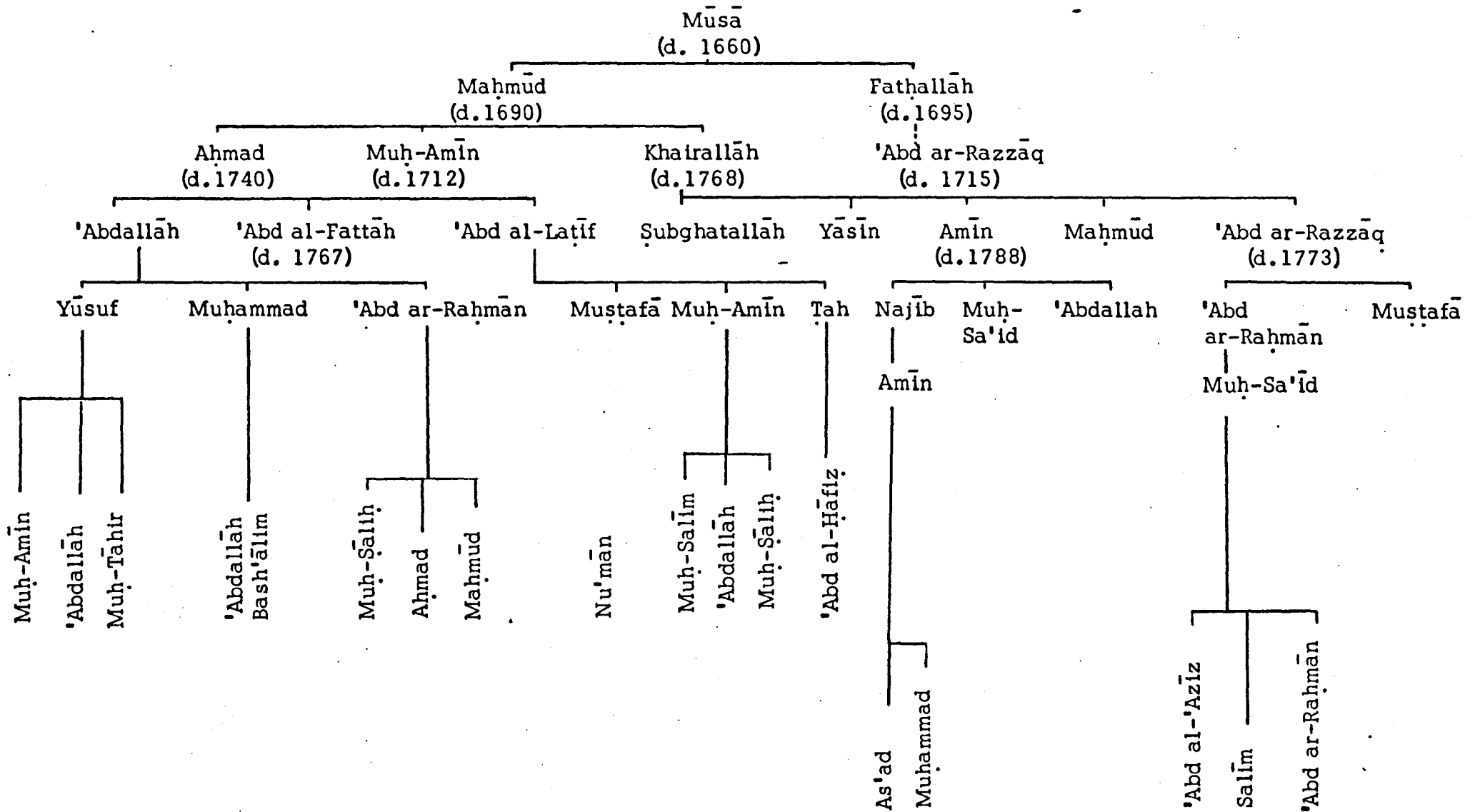
TABLE II: The Branch of Muhammad b. 'Alī b. Qāsim 'Umarī

TABLE III: The Branch of Mūsā b. 'Alī b. Qāsim 'Umarī



NOTES

- (1) Text, p.508.
- (2) cf. his qaṣīda in his SAIF., fol. 47b.
- (3) Loc. cit.
- (4) A. 'Azzāwī, Tārīkh al- Adab al-'Arabī fī-l 'Irāq, vol. II, 1534-1917 A.D., Baghdad 1962, p.46; see also Louis Shīkho al-Yasū'ī, al-Ādāb al-'Arabiya fī al-Qarn al-Tāsi' 'Ashar, vol. I, 1800-70, Beirut 1927, p.31; and see GHA., p.5.
- (5) MAN., 1/308; Kaḥḥāla, Mu'jam al-Mu'alifīn, vol. 13, Damascus 1961, p.177; Baghdādī, Hadiyat al-'Ārifīn, 2/512; S. Sā'īgh, Tārīkh al-Mawsil, Beirut 1940, 2/208; Zirkilī, al-A'lām, \_\_\_\_\_, 9/155; details in MUN., p.24.
- (6) In his thesis, P. Kemp wrongly stated that the author Yāsīn al-Khaṭīb al-'Umarī was born on a Thursday at the end of Rajab 1158 A.H. - end of July 1745 A.D.; cf. Kemp, Mosul and Mosuli Historians of the Jalīlī era 1726-1834, Ph.D. thesis preserved in Oxford New Bodleian Library, p.216, on the other hand, Kemp does not give us the source of the date of Yāsīn's birth mentioned above.
- (7) Apparatus Criticus, p.901 ; or see MS Bn, fol. 373a, ll.28-9.
- (8) For changing the dates from A.H. to A.D., see Muḥammad Mukhtār Pasha, al-Tawfīqāt al-Ilhāmiya, Būlāq 1311 A.H.; The month of Safar in the year 1158 A.H. was 29 days.
- (9) Apparatus Criticus, p.895; or see MS Bn, fol. 372a, ll.20-1.
- (10) GHA., p.340.
- (11) See above, note No. 1; also, in his explanatory remark on his work, S.H. Longrigg wrongly records that the author "was born in 1734 A.D." ; cf. S.H. Longrigg, Four Centuries of Modern Iraq, Oxford 1925, p.329.

- (12) Ṣā'igh, op.cit., 2/208; S. Daiwahchī in his introduction of MAN. 1/12; Zirkilī, op.cit., 9/155; Kaḥḥālā, op.cit., 13/177; I.A. Ra'ūf in his introduction of ZUB., p.16; R. Sāmarrā'ī in his preface of NISA., p.11.
- (13) MAN., 1/310.
- (14) GHA., p.350.
- (15) MAN., 1/308-10.
- (16) Apparatus Criticus, p.971, and cf. the present text, p.401.
- (17) Kemp, op.cit., p.216.
- (18) QUR., fol. 73b-74a.
- (19) Apparatus Criticus, p.933 ( الخط ) instead of ( الكتابة ) in Text, p.383.
- (20) Ibid., p.960; or see, (MS Bn, fol. 387a, L.19).
- (21) Kemp, op.cit., p.217.
- (22) Ibid., p.216.
- (23) GHA., p.353.
- (24) NISA., p.35.
- (25) MAN., 1/308.
- (26) GHA., p.375.
- (27) MUN., p.29.
- (28) GHA., p.5.
- (29) Apparatus Criticus, p.1092.
- (30) Zirkilī, op.cit., p.155, from Daiwahchī's introduction of MUN., pp.11-13.
- (31) Apparatus Criticus, loc. cit.
- (32) ZUB., pp.19-20; MUN., p.14; and Kemp, op.cit., p.216.
- (33) GHAR. pp.35-6.

- (34) Text, p.440.
- (35) Apparatus Criticus, p.1044; see also GHA., p.373.
- (36) MUN., p.12.
- (37) Ibid., pp.12-13; ZUB., p.21; and Kemp, op.cit., p.217.
- (38) GHA., p.331.
- (39) Apparatus Criticus, p.1156.
- (40) Loc. cit.
- (41) Text, p.401; but in his MANH., the author mentions that his father Khairullāh died in 1181 A.H.; cf. MANH., fols. 45b-46a.
- (42) MANH., loc. cit.
- (43) Text, pp.389-90; and Apparatus Criticus, pp.948-49.
- (44) ZUB., pp.117-18.
- (45) Daiwahchī thinks that the author died after 1232 A.H. - 1816 A.D.; cf. MUN., p.27; Ra'uf follows and agrees Daiwahchī, cf. ZUB., p.22; but Kemp says that Yāsīn must have died c.1820; cf. Kemp, op.cit., p.217.
- (46) S. Daiwahchī, Jawāmi' al-Mawsil .. , Baghdad 1963, p.129.
- (47) Text, p.59.
- (48) S.K. al-Jamīl, "The Ottoman Conquest of Mosul and al-Jazīra district, 1516 A.D...", Part Two, in M.Q.J., vol. 8, No. 31, pp.325-40.
- (49) Daiwahchī, loc. cit.
- (50) Text, loc. cit.; Apparatus Criticus, p.553. Also, Text, p.61 and Apparatus Criticus, p.555.
- (51) Loc. cit.
- (52) Loc. cit.
- (53) Kemp, op.cit., p.105.
- (54) Ibid., p.110.



- (55) Text, p.59; and Apparatus Criticus, p.553.
- (56) Kemp, loc. cit., and see Tab. No. II.
- (57) See Tab. No. II.
- (58) See Tab. No. IV.
- (59) See Tab. No. III.
- (60) Text, p.164, details in Apparatus Criticus, p.639; see also ZUB., pp.65-6, and MAN., 1/136.
- (61) Text, loc. cit.
- (62) Loc. cit., and see ZUB., p.66.
- (63) MAN., 1/224.
- (64) Text, pp.321-2; for further details see Apparatus Criticus, pp.816-9.
- (65) Text, p.351; for further details see Apparatus Criticus, p.872-3; and see QUR., fols. 71b-72a, also MANH., fols. 83a-99b, MAN., 1/225, SHAM., pp.71-97, GHA., p.240, RAW., 1/44 and SALK., 3/231.
- (66) Apparatus Criticus, loc. cit.
- (67) Loc. cit.
- (68) Kemp, op.cit., p.107.
- (69) Loc. cit.
- (70) Text, p.334, Apparatus Criticus, pp.835-6; see also MAN., 1/230, RAW., 1/177 and SHAM., pp.80-83.
- (71) Text, p.370; details in MANH., fols. 83a-84b; Apparatus Criticus, pp.907-8.
- (72) Text, p.432, and Apparatus Criticus, pp.1031-2; also cf. QUR., fol. 78a-78b, MAN., 1/236 and SHAM., pp.360-67.
- (73) Text, p.406, Apparatus Criticus, pp.979-981; for further details see S. Nu'aimī in his introduction of RAW., 1/8-22, and MAN., 1/234, GHA., p.184, SHAM., pp.84-98, Longrigg, op.cit., p.172, Kemp, op.cit., pp.197-201.

- (74) Text, p.232 and Apparatus Criticus, p.711; also MAN., 1/230-32, SAIF., fol. 34b, and ZUB., pp.71-3).
- (75) Text, p.316.
- (76) Apparatus Criticus, p.811.
- (77) Text, p.320 and MAN., 1/238-39.
- (78) Text, pp.330-1.
- (79) Ibid., p.359.
- (80) Text, p.401 and Apparatus Criticus, p.971.
- (81) Text, pp.451-2; and Apparatus Criticus, pp. 1068-1070.
- (82) See above "The Author" in Chap. No. 1.

## CHAPTER TWO

### THE AUTHOR'S WORKS

List of the author's works

Section a)

(A) The major historical works:

1. al-Durr al-Maknūn fī al-Ma'āthir al-Mādiya min al-Qurūn, (Annalistic and Biographical Chronicles).<sup>(1)</sup>
2. al-Āthār al-Jāliya fī al-Hawādith al-Arḍiya,<sup>(2)</sup> (Annalistic work).
3. 'Unwān al-'A'yān fī dhikr Tawārīkh al-Zamān,<sup>(3)</sup> (Dynastic work).

(B) The minor historical works:

1. Ghāyat al-Marām fī Maḥāsin Baghdād dār al-Salām,<sup>(4)</sup> (Local history).
2. Munyat al-Udabā' fī Ta'rīkh al-Mawṣil al-Ḥadbā',<sup>(5)</sup> (Local history).
3. Umm al-Dunyā,<sup>(6)</sup> (Annalistic work).
4. Gharā'ib al-Athar fī Hawādith rub' al-Qarn al-Thālith 'Ashar,<sup>(7)</sup> (Chronicle).
5. 'Umdat al-Bayān fī Taṣārīf al-Zamān,<sup>(8)</sup> (Annalistic history).
6. al-Raud al-Zāhir fī Tawārīkh al-Mulūk al-Awā'il wa al-Awākhir.

(C) The Biographical works:

1. al-Rawḍa al-Fayḥā' fī Tawārīkh al-Nisā',<sup>(9)</sup> (Biographical work).
2. Ghāyat al-Bayān fī Manāqib Sulāimān,<sup>(10)</sup> (Biographical Dictionary).
3. Khulāṣat al-Tawārīkh,<sup>(11)</sup> (Biographical Dictionary).
4. Qurrat al-'Alnāin fī Tarājīm al-Ḥasan wa al-Ḥusāin,<sup>(12)</sup> (Biographical Dictionary).
5. al-Saif al-Muḥannad fī Manāqib man Summiya Aḥmad,<sup>(13)</sup> (Biographical Dictionary).
6. Manhaj al-Thiqāt fī Tarājīm al-Qudāt,<sup>(14)</sup> (Biographical Dictionary).
7. al-Durr al-Muntathir fī Tarājīm Fudalā' al-Qarn al-Thālith 'Ashar,<sup>(15)</sup> (Biographical work).

8. 'Unwān al-Ashrāf, <sup>(16)</sup> (Biographical Dictionary).
9. al-Tarājim. <sup>(17)</sup>

(D) The 'Adabiyāt

1. Maqāsid al-Ta'bīr, <sup>(18)</sup> (poem).
2. al-Suyūf al-Sāti'a, <sup>(19)</sup> (prayers).
3. al-'Adhb al-Sāfi fī Tashīl al-Qawāfī, <sup>(20)</sup> (prosody).
4. al-Kharīda al-'Umariya (Medical treatise).
5. Raḍat al-Mushtāq wa Nuzhat al-'Ushshāq, (Literature).
6. Raḍ al-Adab, (Literature).
7. 'Uyūn al-Adab, <sup>(21)</sup> (Literature).
8. Qasā'id, <sup>(22)</sup> (poem).
9. Safwat al-'Udabā' fī Mahāsin al-Shu'arā'. <sup>(23)</sup>
10. al-Jawhara fī al-Lugha al-Mushtahira, <sup>(24)</sup> (Arabic language).

(E) The Naskhiyāt (Transcription) <sup>(25)</sup>

1. al-Lam'a al-Nūrāniya fī Hal mushkilat al-Shajara al-Nu'māniya by Ṣadr al-Dīn al-Qunawī (d. 1273 A.D. = 672 A.H.), transcribed in 1217 A.H. = 1802 A.D.
2. Raḍ al-Rayāhīn fī Hikāyat al-Sālihīn by Yāfi'ī, transcribed in 1221 A.H. = 1806 A.D.
3. Tuhfat al-Rāghibīn fī Amr al-Ṭawā'īn, transcribed in 1186 A.H. = 1772 A.D.
4. al-Kashf 'an mujāwazāt ḥadīth il-umma by al-Suyūṭī. This is a work in the science of ḥadīth.
5. Kitāb Masā'il al-Khilāf bain al-Imāmaīn al-Qalā'id wa al-Farā'id. This is a work in fiqh, written by 'Abdul-Ghanī al-Nābulī.
6. Tuhfat al-Mubtadī (poem).

7. Ikhtilāj al-A'dā', attributed to Imām Ja'far al-Ṣādiq.
8. Sharḥ Ikhtilājāt al-A'dā' 'ala Khams Maqālāt (transcribed in 1223 A.H. = 1808 A.D.
9. Dīwān Ṣafī al-Dīn al-Ḥillī (d. 1349 A.D. = 750 A.H.)
10. al-Durr al-Naqī fī fann al-Mūsīqī.
11. Kashf al-Asrār 'an Ḥukm al-Tuyūr wa al-Azhār by al-'Izz b. 'Abdul-Salām b. Shaikh Aḥmad b. Ghānim al-Maqdisī (it is an incomplete work).
12. Nazm ba'd Abwāb Kitāb Fākihāt al-Khulafā' ma'a Ziyāda 'Alaiḥa by Muḥammad 'Amīn al-Khatīb al-'Umarī al-Mawsilī.
13. Risāla fī al-Farā'id.
14. al-Turāz al-Marqūm fī Ma'rifat Maḥāsin al-Manẓūm by Muḥammad Amīn al-Khatīb al-'Umarī.
15. al-Fuṣūl al-Zarīfa wa al-Nukāt al-Laṭīfa.

A study of the author's historical works

Section b)

Introduction

Yāsīn al-'Umarī, the author as a literary man and a famous historian, composed several books of history, and wrote many letters and monographs, most of which are not edited, but they are still extant as manuscripts scattered in various libraries in Europe, Iraq and Egypt. Most of Yāsīn's MSS are preserved in libraries of British Museum, Vienna, Berlin, Paris, Baghdad and Mosul.

Yāsīn al-'Umarī was primarily a historian. He compiled more than 17 historical works in various fields of history (i.e. Annalistic History, Dynastic History, Local History, Chronicles and Biographies ...). Most of his available historical works will be examined in this study except two works which I was not able to obtain. Their titles are:

1. "al-Raud' al-Zāhīr fī Tawārīkh al-Mulūk al-Awā'il wa al-Awākhir".
  2. "al-Durr al-Muntathir fī Tarājīm Fuḍalā' al-Qarn al-Thālīth 'Ashar".
- These two books appear to be lost.

A. Annalistic History

There are four historical works which covered this field of history by the author Yāsīn.

1. al-Durr al-Maknūn fī al Ma'āthir al-Mādiya min al-Qurūn.
2. a) al-Āthār al-Jaliya fī'l-Hawādith al-Ardīya.  
b) Zubdat al-Āthār al-Jaliya .. (Epitome of al-Āthār al-Jaliya by Dr. Dāwūd Chalabī).
3. 'Umdat al-Bayān fī Taṣārīf al-Zamān.
4. Umm al-Dunyā.

1. al-Durr al-Maknūn fī al-Ma'āthir al-Mādiya min al-Qurūn (DUR)<sup>(26)</sup>

It is the largest and most influential Arabic historical work dealing with the 16th - 18th centuries in the Middle East. Also, the DUR. is one of the most significant works in annalistic history, covering almost twelve centuries of Islamic history. On the other hand, DUR. seems to have been considered as the main work of the author Yāsīn because it treats a great variety of subjects, beginning from the first year of the Hijra. The second part of DUR. is important for a full appreciation of the history of the Ottoman Near-Middle East during the 16th, 17th and 18th centuries. It also deals with the local histories of Iraq up to and including the contemporary events just prior to the author's death. The author, Yāsīn himself considered his DUR. as a main reference for writing his other works. But it is necessary to say here that the DUR. appears to have been written by the author himself in two versions. The first version, dated 1218 A.H.; while the second version, dated 1226 A.H.

These two versions of the DUR. work are presented in this thesis.\*

2.a) al-Āthār al-Jaliya fī al-Hawādith al-Ardīya (ATH.)<sup>(27)</sup> and Zubdat al-Āthār al-Jaliya fī al-Hawādith al-Ardīya (ZUB.)<sup>(28)</sup>

ATH. is an annalistic historical work which covers twelve centuries of Islam, beginning with the first year of Hijra, and ending in 1210 A.H. The original manuscript of ATH. was kept in the Library of Madrasat Aḥmad Efendi al-Khayyāt in Mosul, (No. 19).<sup>(29)</sup> This copy appeared to have been written by the author himself. It is now lost. But it was used by

---

\* DUR. will be examined at length in the following pages. See, Chap. No. 3,



Dr. Dāwūd Chalabī as a basis when he wrote his ZUB., a selection from ATH. The original version of ATH. contained 273 pages, and the last folio was missing, according to the Chalabī papers, when he examined it. (30)

His introduction to ATH. is somehow similar to that of DUR. In his introduction to ATH., (31) the author Yāsīn writes: "I decided to compile a separate book about outstanding and magnificent events, with reference to sources such as Ibn al-Athīr, (32) Ibn Khallikān, (33) Ibn al-Wardī, (34) al-Ghurār (35) and al-Himyan (36) as well as what I have heard from the wise men and what I have witnessed with my own eyes ..."

• احببت ان اجمع كتابا مستقلا . في الحوادث الظاهرة  
والنوافع الباهرة ، فجمعت هذا الكتاب من  
كتب عديدة .... وما سمعته من مشايخ  
العصر والزمان ، وما شاهدته بالعيون  
ليكون عبرة لاولي الابصار ..... (37)

There is another copy of ATH. which is preserved in the British Library (Or. 6300) in 248 pages. (38) According to the original, ATH., falls into twelve separate articles, each dealing with one century, covering twelve centuries of Islam ending as we said in 1210 A.H., whereas the British copy ends in the year 1199 A.H. = 1784 A.D. (39) It also differs from the original manuscript in that the author dedicated his original of ATH. to Muhammad Amīn Bey b. Ibrāhīm Bey b. Yūnus Bey b. Yāsīn Efendi al-Muftī al-Mawṣilī, (40) whereas no dedication can be found in the British copy. (41)

The last article in ATH., which covers the events of the twelfth century, seems to have dealt with the local history of Mosul and Iraq. (42) The author also gives us many personalities from Mosul, details about the Jalīlī dynasty in Mosul, about the Mamlūks in Baghdad, and the Pashas of

other Iraqi provinces. In ATH., the author goes into the economic and social life of Mosul in particular during the eighteenth century. (43)

b) Zubdat al-'Athār al-Jaliya, (44) is an epitome of ATH. written by Dr. D. al-Chalabī who based it on the original manuscript of ATH., and he selected events with regard to their reliability. ZUB. contains two parts, the text, which deals with the history of Mosul and its surroundings during 633-1209 A.H. = 1235-1794 A.D.; (45) and a supplement about the history of the Arab provinces during 920-1208 A.H. = 1514-1794 A.D. (46)

In his preface to ZUB., Dr. Chalabī writes about his abstracted ATH., the following statement: .....  
 - ياسين الخطيب العمري - عن الموصل وحواليها وخصوصا عن حوادث عصره وما تقدمه بقليل ، لا يخلو من فائدة نظرا لقلّة المؤلفين في تلك الحقبة من الزمان في العراق ، فجمعت الفقرات المختصة في الموصل وحواليها في سنة ١٢٩٩ هـ لأن ما تقدم هذا التاريخ مبسوط في كامل ابن الاثير ..... فكانني اخذت عبارة الآثار الجلية وتركت ثقلها . ولذا سميت هذه الفقرات بـ ( زبدة الآثار الجلية ) . ثم انتقيت من عين الكتاب جميع ما وجدته يمس تاريخ سائر البلاد العربية وذلك منذ بدأ استيلاء العثمانيين على البلاد العربية في عهد السلطان سليم الاول سنة ١٠٢٠ هـ ، وجعلته ذيلاً لهذا الكتاب (47)

It appears that ZUB. was written in 1922-26 A.D. when Dr. Chalabī was compiling his well-known Index entitled "Makḥṭūṭāt al-Mawṣil". (48)

3. 'Umdat al-Bayān fī Taṣārīf al-Zamān (UMD.) (49)

This work in annalistic history, is still in manuscript form and it

appears to be incomplete. There is a copy of this work preserved in the Iraqi Museum Library of Baghdad, number 9084. UMD. contains 124 folios; it seems to us that this copy has been brought to this official library from the private library of 'Abbās 'Azzāwī in Baghdad.<sup>(50)</sup> There is another copy of UMD., kept in the private library of Nāẓim al-'Umarī in Mosul.

The work of UMD. covers the general history of Islam, and ends abruptly in 1205 A.H., without epilogue, but in the preface of UMD., the author Yāsīn mentions that his UMD. is a derivative of DUR.<sup>(51)</sup> This is definitely DUR. (M). In his analytic study, Kemp sees that the style of UMD. is very similar to that of ATH., but in my opinion, the style UMD. is very similar to that found in DUR. On the other hand, it seems to me that the author Yāsīn was writing his UMD. while completing the copy of DUR. in 1206 A.H.\*<sup>(52)</sup> which he later sold. We find in UMD. that events have only been briefly recorded. In each year, the author gives one or two major historical events which, as he believed, had marked that year.

There is no doubt that the author's references in his writing of UMD. were the same references he used for DUR. or possibly the first original manuscript of DUR. itself.<sup>(53)</sup>

#### 4. Umm al-Dunyā or Umm al-Barāhīn (UMM)<sup>(54)</sup>

This work is extant in an abridgement and deals with an annalistic history. The MS is kept in the Staatsbibliothek of Berlin, number 9486;<sup>(55)</sup>

---

\* See the following pages, Chap. No. 3.

it contains 63 folios, belonging to Yāsīn al-'Umārī, but is without a title. It seems as though it is an original manuscript. All the folios appear to have been written by the author Yāsīn himself, who tells us in the last folio that "this part of the manuscript is a compendious account of a historical book called Umm ad-Dunyā, and it was also named Umm al-Barāhīn. (56)

Staatsbibliothek has entitled UMM "Tārīkh Yāsīn Efendī al-'Umārī" (which indeed is the same title as given to DUR. 2 by this library). The beginning of this manuscript is missing. It starts with the year 1182 A.H. = 1768 A.D. abruptly, and stops in the middle of the year 1213 A.H. = 1798 A.D. (57) This book has been written in a similar style to that of the other annalistic works, by the same author. All in all this small manuscript which covers a period of thirty years, seems to be based on the first original manuscript of DUR. It is written in a big, strong, rounded hand, without vowels; it is clear, has keywords in red, and dates approximately to 1240 A.H. = 1824 A.D.

## B. The Dynastic Works

### 1. 'Unwān al-A'Yān fī dhikr Tawārīkh Mulūk al-Zamān (UNW.) (58)

This is a work in dynastic history which is as yet unedited and is divided into an introduction of 43 chapters and an annexe. A copy of UNW. is preserved in the Staatsbibliothek of Berlin, number 9484, (59) but this manuscript is incomplete; it has 303 folios. Many pages are missing from the end. It ends in the middle of the 42nd chapter, and so the whole of the last chapter, and the author's annexe of this UNW. are missing.

It seems that the missing 43rd chapter dealt to some extent with the Jalīlī dynasty in Mosul.

The author Yāsīn ordered this work alphabetically. He has mentioned the prophets and the apostles, then the Ṣaḥāba and the Rāshidūn Caliphs, the 'Ulamā', and the Fuḍalā'. He followed that with a mention of the kings and the Sultans, giving their dates of birth, the rise of their states, the historical events which took place during their eras, and finally their deaths. The author was able to obtain his material from many historical books. UNW. is based on Qaramānī,<sup>(60)</sup> Ibn al-Wardī,<sup>(61)</sup> al-Yāfi'ī,<sup>(62)</sup> Ibn al-Athīr,<sup>(63)</sup> Tārīkh al-Yaman<sup>(64)</sup> and Muḥibbī.<sup>(65)</sup> The author says that when he completed this work, he offered it to Sa'dallāh Bey b. Ḥusain Pasha al-Jalīlī.<sup>(66)</sup>

There is another copy of this work kept in the private library of Nāẓim al-'Umarī in Mosul. It had been owned by 'Abdul-lah Ref'at Efendi b. Ḥāj 'Alī al-'Umarī who gave it as a present to Nāẓim Efendi al-'Umarī.<sup>(67)</sup> This copy is also lacking many folios which have been lost and which dealt with the Jalīlī dynasty in Mosul. In addition, I found the copyist of this manuscript made many errors. His hand writing is barely legible.

In his MANH., the author Yāsīn cites that he wrote his UNW. after he had completed his DUR.<sup>(68)</sup> (This is probably DUR. 1, which dated 1218 A.H.)

2. al-Raud al-Zāhīr fī Tawārīkh al-Mulūk al-Awā'il wa al-Awākhir (ZAH.)<sup>(69)</sup>

It is the only historical manuscript which I was not able to find.

This manuscript appears to have been lost, and as far as we know this work is a biographical book of Kings, Emīrs, 'Ulamā' and Qādī's whom the author Yāsīn placed in alphabetical order.

This book was written in 1204 A.H. = 1790 A.D. Yāsīn himself wrote in his introduction of MANH. the following statement: نم

جميعت كتابا آخر ، وذكرت فيه  
ملوك الامصار ورتبته على  
حروف الهجاء. وذكرت فيه القضاة وشيوخ الاسلام  
والامراء وسماه ( الروض الزاهر في تواريخ الملوك الاوائل والاواخر).<sup>(70)</sup>

It seems to us that ZAH. was written before DUR.

### C. Local History

#### 1. Ghāyat al-Marām fī Tārīkh Mahāsin Baghdād Dār-al-Salām (GHA.)<sup>(71)</sup>

GHA. is one book of two which deals with local history of Iraq.

In this book, Yāsīn, the author, mistakenly entitled Baghdad "Dār as-Salām", whereas Baghdad has been called historically "Madīnat as-Salām".<sup>(72)</sup>

The author, Yāsīn, completed this work on 21st of Sha'bān 1220 A.H. = 15th of November, 1805 A.D.<sup>(73)</sup> He dedicated GHA. to Yahya Bey (later Pasha)

b. Nu'mān Pasha al-Jalīlī.<sup>(74)</sup>

Three copies of this manuscript, are preserved in the Library of the Iraqi Museum. The first copy is numbered 324, dated 1335 A.H.; the second copy is numbered 1811, copied by Ibrāhīm ad-Durūbī in 1335 A.H.; the third copy is numbered 2142, dated 1336 A.H.

The author Yāsīn presents Baghdad in this work, saying:

"بغداد أم الدنيا وسيدة البلاد"<sup>(75)</sup>

"Baghdad is the mother of the world and the lady of all countries".

The first twelve chapters of this work are Yāsīn's record of the founding of Baghdad city, its geographical position, and the origin of its name. (76) This he based on Yāqūt's work, specifically the material about old Baghdad and the description of its quarters, buildings, schools, *sūqs* and gates; while the Ottoman Baghdad in GHA. (77) as a religious city appears to have been based strictly on the Arabic translation of Murtadā Nazmī Zādeh's (*Jām' al-Anwār*). It is titled in Arabic "Tarjamat Auliya' Baghdad". (78)

In this GHA., the author Yāsīn describes to us many Iraqi towns: Hilla, Baṣra, Kūfa, Sāmarrā, Hīt, 'Āna, Rāwa, Kubaīsa, Ālūsa, Bundanījair, Hasaka, Badrān, Shahrāzūr, Arbīl, Tikrīt, Mārdīn, Tall A'far, 'Amādiya and Jazīrat Ibn 'Umar. He also provides some information about each town, taken from Yāqūt. The author includes 'Ulamā' associated with each town. (79)

The author, Yāsīn, deals in his other seven chapters with the governors of Baghdad, since the foundation of the city, its Emīrs and its Vizirs, the Baghdādī 'Ulamā', 'Udabā' and Fuḍalā'. (80) It seems clear that the material of these chapters comes from Yāsīn's main historical works, such as: DUR. and ATH.

The last chapter deals with historical disasters which struck Baghdad, such as: earthquakes, floods, droughts, ... and men of violence. (81)

At the end of this work, the author, Yāsīn includes a list of the contemporary famous Mawṣilīs who visited Baghdad, such as: Vizirs, Emīrs, Poets, 'Ulamā' and merchants ... etc. (82)

The last chapter and its affiliated list are based on his DUR. and ATH.

Although this GHA. is a book of local history, "it contains much geographical, genealogical, and biographical material, and is a history of Baghdad, of which the last fifty years (ending in 1805 A.D.) are original and valuable." (83)

2. Munyat al-'Udabā' fī Tārīkh al-Mawṣil al-Hadbā' (MUN.) (84)

This is another work of local history which is more specifically concerned with the historical material and geographical elements of Mosul, the home of the author Yāsīn, who compiled MUN. after his GHA. (85)

The original manuscript of MUN. is missing, but there is one copy preserved in the British Library (Add. 23323), in 55 folios. The copyist is 'Abdul-Fattāḥ b. Hājī Sa'īd Shawwāf Zādeh. (86)

The author, Yāsīn, in his preface, presented his MUN. to the reader to whom he endeavoured to write a history of Mosul after he had compiled his GHA., a local history of Baghdad. In MUN., he says that Mosul is his home city, the place where he lives . . . . After his GHA. became known in Mosul, he thought that it would be suitable to write about the history of Mosul and its people, as well as about various events which took place in it, and to record its Kings and learned men. (87)

MUN. seems to have been based on (Manhal al Awliyā' = MAN.) by his famous brother Muḥammad Amīn al-Khaṭīb al-'Umārī, (88) and some other various historical sources such as Yāqūt and Yāsīn's original DUR. MUN. is divided into six chapters; the first chapter gives information about Mosul city geographically, and its historical background before Islam; (89) the third chapter deals with the history of Mosul through its rulers during



the Islamic eras. <sup>(91)</sup> The author, Yāsīn, also gives us a list of Mosul's Wālī's during the Ottoman periods; <sup>(92)</sup> the fourth chapter deals with the tombs of 50 prophets and saints in Mosul. In this chapter, which is based on MAN., the list numbered 118 names. <sup>(93)</sup> The fifth chapter is a geographical list of the neighbouring towns and villages of Mosul, <sup>(94)</sup> with some information based on Yāqūt. The sixth chapter is about "heavenly and earthly events which took place in Mosul". <sup>(95)</sup> At the end of MUN., the author Yāsīn includes a section which deals with the Tigris. <sup>(96)</sup>

To sum up, MUN. is one of the most important books of local history of Mosul, the city and the province, including the author's brief description of its sūqs, quarters, buildings, gates, and the social and economic life inside Mosul.

#### D. Chronicle

Gharā'ib al-Athar fī Hawādith rub' al-Qarn al-Thālith 'Ashar (GHAR.) <sup>(97)</sup>

GHAR. is a chronicle of events which covers the first quarter of the thirteenth century after the Hijra, 1200-1226 A.H. = 1785-1810 A.D.

There is a copy of GHAR., preserved in the Library (Dār al-Kutub al-Baladiya) in Alexandria in Egypt under No. 2036 D. <sup>(98)</sup> Another copy of GHAR., copied from the above, was kept in the private library of Mārī Anstās el-Kermalī in Baghdad; it is now preserved in the library of the Iraqi museum under No. 1329. Dr. Maḥmūd al-Jalīlī made a copy of GHAR. for himself, and this third copy is kept in his private library in Mosul. <sup>(99)</sup>

The author, Yāsīn, indicated <sup>in</sup> his GHAR. the prince who is not mentioned by name, but from his description <sup>(100)</sup> it can be declared that he

is Sa'dalla Pasha al-Jalīlī<sup>(101)</sup> who had been appointed Wālī of Mosul after 1226 A.H. = 1811 A.D.,<sup>(102)</sup> the year in which GHAR. was completed.

In his preface, the author presents his purpose in compiling this chronicle and tells us why he produced his GHAR. The introduction of GHAR. contains events of annalistic history, covering the period 240 A.H. - 1185 A.H., but it seems to have covered only 71 years. Most of these events are, earthquakes, volcanoes, famine, plagues, etc. which took place in the Middle East.<sup>(103)</sup>

GHAR. itself as a chronicle covers 26 years, 1200 A.H. - 1226 A.H.<sup>(104)</sup> The author described important events in detail. Most of the material was compiled by him; he talked about Iraq and other countries in the Near East. We also find detailed reports of Mosul during the Jalīlī era, its society and economic life, with full and interesting coverage of the political situation in Iraq 1805 - 1811 A.D.; the author deals with the Jalīlīs of Mosul, the Mamlūks in Baghdad, the Bābān Kurds of Shahrazūr on whose political relationships GHAR. sheds light. Also he delineates the relationships of the above mentioned with others outside Iraq, such as Istanbul and the Wahhābīs. In addition to such local history of Mosul as city and province, there is also a considerable amount of information on a whole range of other varied topics such as relations among the Jalīlīs themselves, with the Janissaries, with the Kurds, with the Arab tribes and with the Yazīdīs. An important aspect which we can observe in GHAR., as we have already observed in DUR. 2, is that the author Yāsīn mentions 'The French Revolution' and its effect on the economy of Mosul.<sup>(105)</sup>

It seems to us that GHAR. is based especially on DUR. 2. In conclusion, the numerous events which took place during the author's lifetime are thus recorded here in GHAR. and DUR.

E. Biographical Works

a. Subjects and Tabagāt

1. al-Rawda al-Faiḥā' fī Tawārīkh al-Nisā' (NISA.)<sup>(106)</sup>

A biographical work of history concerned exclusively with women; divided into an introduction, two chapters and an epilogue.

There are three copies of this manuscript, one of them is preserved in Staatsbibliothek of Berlin, number 9902.<sup>(107)</sup> It contains 173 folios, and dates back to 18th of Rajab. Both the year and the copyist remain unknown. Another copy of this work is kept in (Maktabat al-Auqāf al-'Āmma) of Baghdad, number 5830. This copy is the original manuscript, written by the author himself. It contains 149 folios. It was owned by the Iraqi scholar Maḥmūd Shukrī al-'Ālūsī. The last folio shows that the author Yāsīn finished this work on 1st Dhul Qa'da 1204 A.H. The third copy of this manuscript is kept in the Iraqi Museum Library, number 1802, copied by Ibrāhīm ad-Durūbī on 18th Ramaḍān 1330 A.H. = 1910 A.D.<sup>(108)</sup>

In his introduction, the author, Yāsīn, gives many quotations pertaining to the qualities of women.<sup>(109)</sup> The first chapter, "On virtuous women" provided 113 biographies of Muslim women. The author started with the biography of Āmina b. Wahab (the prophet's mother), and closed this chapter with the biography of Khānim Sultan, daughter of Sultan Sulaimān the magnificent.<sup>(110)</sup> The second chapter consists of 20 biographies. It

deals with vicious and lustful women, from Ruqāsh, to Sultan Bakht, daughter of Taimūrlank. <sup>(111)</sup> The author's closing section deals with interesting and witty women. <sup>(112)</sup>

In his writing of this book, the author Yāsīn used several sources such as Manhal al-Ṣafā, <sup>(113)</sup> al-Sīra al-Ḥalabīya, <sup>(114)</sup> Mir'at al-jinān, <sup>(115)</sup> Durr an-nazīm, <sup>(116)</sup> al-Kāmil by Ibn al-Athīr,\* Tatimmat by Ibn al-Wardī,\*\* Yatīmat <sup>(117)</sup> and Tārīkh al-Yaman. <sup>(118)</sup>

## 2. Manhaj al-Thuḡāt fī Tarājīm al-Qudāt (MANH.) <sup>(119)</sup>

This is a biographical work totally concerned with Qādīs of Islam. This work is as yet unedited. The original MS, which is written by the author Yāsīn himself, is preserved in (Maktabat al-Auḡāf al-'Āmma) of Mosul, number (Khayāt 5/14). The manuscript contains 143 folios. There is another copy of this manuscript kept in the private Library of 'Abbās al-'Azzāwī in Baghdad, number 3261; also, a modern copy of MANH. appears to have been copied from the original manuscript in 1939 A.D. This third copy is kept in the private library of Professor Maḥmūd al-Jalīlī in Mosul. In his introduction to this manuscript, Professor al-Jalīlī says that this copy has been copied by Nūrī Efendī al-Qaṣṣāb Bāshī, and added that this copyist had made another copy of MANH. for Dr. D. al-Chalabī who gave it to one of the German orientalists. In this copy, Professor al-Jalīlī had organised two indices, the first index contains all qādīs who were mentioned in MANH.; the second index, at the front of the book, contains the names of the Mawṣilī qādīs. <sup>(120)</sup>

The author, Yāsīn, completed this work on Friday, 24th Jumād al-Ākhir

---

\* See n.32.

\*\* See n.34.

1211 A.H. = 26th December, 1796 A.D., as he mentions in the last folio. <sup>(121)</sup> In his preface to this work, he tells us that he dedicated MANH. to the qādī of Mosul Sayyid 'Ubaidul lāh Efendi b. Sayyid Khalīl al-Baṣīrī al-Mawṣilī. <sup>(122)</sup> The author also wrote an introduction to MANH. explaining some traditions and quotations of the qādā'. <sup>(123)</sup> He ordered this work alphabetically and wrote a conclusion. The text contains 385 biographies of qādīs, but most of them are not Mawṣilīs and were not contemporaries of the author. This work also seems to have been saturated with poetical quotations. In fact, most of these biographies are short, but the author treated the biography of 'Alī al-'Umārī, qādī of Mosul at length. <sup>(124)</sup>

Actually, the conclusion of MANH. is not important to the reader. The author gave us various short stories about judicial cases, Nawādir, (as he calls them), which form a jocular conclusion to the book. <sup>(125)</sup> The reader may easily come under the impression that the author was a wit of his time.

In his writing this MANH. the author tells us the sources which he used, such as Yāfi'ī, Ibn al-Wardī, Ibn Khallikān, Ibn al-Athīr, Ta'rīkh al-Yaman, Hīmīyān and his DUR. In his text, he mentions some books which he quotes, such as al-Fuṣūṣ, <sup>(126)</sup> al-Bustān, <sup>(127)</sup> 'Uyūn al-Madhāhib, <sup>(128)</sup> Maṣābiḥ al-Sunna, <sup>(129)</sup> Niṣāb al-Ihtisāb <sup>(130)</sup> and Kitāb al-Sijillāt. <sup>(131)</sup>

### 3. al-Durr al-Muntathir fī Tarājīm Fudalā' al-Qarn al-Thālith 'Aṣhar. <sup>(132)</sup>

This is a biographical work dealing only with those poets and scholars who lived during the thirteenth century. We know little of this

book. In his preface to MANH. the author Yāsīn has mentioned it, as

he states: نَمِ جَمَعَت كِتَابًا آخِرًا  
وَذَكَرْتُ فِيهِ الْعِلْمَ الْعَصْرِي  
وَالشُّعْرَاءَ الْمُتَفَنِّينَ وَسَمِيتُهُ  
 (الروض المنتشر في تراجم فضلاء القرن الثالث عشر).<sup>(133)</sup>

It was probably written by the author himself in one original manuscript which appears to have been lost.<sup>(134)</sup>

#### 4. 'Unwān al-Sharaf (SHA.)<sup>(135)</sup>

It is a biographical work. There are three copies of this manuscript. The original copy of SHA. is preserved in the Bibliothèque Nationale of Paris, number Arabe 5792 in 284 numbered folios. The second copy of SHA. is also preserved in the Bibliothèque Nationale of Paris, number Arabe 5138, in 274 numbered folios.\* The third copy of SHA. is preserved in the library of the School of Oriental and African Studies in the University of London, number 49780, in 257 numbered folios.

These three copies of SHA. are incomplete; the last folios are missing. The original manuscript, and the two copies of SHA. are wrongly attributed to Yāsīn's brother, Muḥammad Amīn al-'Umarī.<sup>(136)</sup> But after examination of SHA., the style and the hand writing of the original copy of SHA. appear to have belonged to the author Yāsīn al-'Umarī. Furthermore, the author Yāsīn himself proves quite conclusively that his brother Muḥammad Amīn is not the author of SHA. In his SHA. Yāsīn states: "When my brother Muḥammad Amīn al-'Umarī read these verses ...".<sup>(137)</sup>

---

\* I was not able to read this copy of SHA. I have therefore limited myself to the first Paris manuscript, (Arabe 5792) and the third copy of SHA. in SOAS.

No doubt, this note proves that Yāsīn is the author of SHA.

because his father Khairullāh had left five sons; Muḥammad Amīn, Yāsīn, who were well-known Adībs; 'Abdul-Razzāq, who died in 1773 A.D.; Subghatullāh and Maḥmūd who were neither writers nor Adībs. (138)

This biographical work deals with Ṭabaqāt (classes). The original copy of SHA. appears as a rough copy written by Yāsīn. It is arranged alphabetically, and contains the names of prophets, companions, the learned men ('Udabā' and 'Ulamā'), rulers as Caliphs, Kings, Sultans and Wālīs. (139)

Many folios are missing or blank. Many chapters and sections are incomplete.

b. Dictionaries of names

4. al-Saif al-Muhannad fī Manāqib man Summiya Ahmad (SAIF.) (140)

This biographical work deals only with those whose first name is Aḥmad. A copy of this manuscript belonging to the al-'Umarī family is kept in Madrasat Yahyā Pasha in Mosul, number (٩٢٠ / ٤٤٤). This copy contains 100 folios. It was owned by 'Abdullāh Rif'at al-'Umarī.

In the preface, the author informs us that all the biographies in SAIF. were extracted from his DUR. (141) SAIF. itself was dedicated to Aḥmad Bey b. Sulaimān Pasha b. Amīn Pasha al-Jalīlī. (142) The author also wrote an introduction about the excellent qualities of the name Aḥmad. The body of the text comprises 397 biographies, the first of which deals with the prophet Muḥammad. Other biographies deal with Sultans, Wazīrs, Emīrs, Qādīs, poets, scholars ... etc., but the text of SAIF. does not

contain any original material. All the biographies can be found in DUR., for example. At the end of SAIF. he gives many biographies of names derived from Hamada, such as (Ḥamad, Ḥamid, and Ḥamīd).

5. Qurraṭ al-'Aīn fī Tarājīm al-Ḥasan wa al-Ḥusain (QUR.) <sup>(143)</sup>

A biographical work dealing with a number of celebrities who were named Ḥasan, Ḥusain and 'Alī. The original manuscript of QUR., written by the author, Yāsīn himself, is preserved in the private library of Dr. Ṣiddīq al-Jalīlī in Mosul. QUR. contains 86 folios, dedicated to Ḥusain Pasha. <sup>(144)</sup> The author completed this manuscript on 6th Rajab 1224 A.H. = 19th August 1809 A.D. <sup>(145)</sup> There is another copy of this manuscript dated 16th Sha'bān 1281 A.H. It is kept in the private library of 'Alī al-Jamīl in Mosul, and contains 73 folios.

This QUR. contains 245 biographies in two chapters and an annex. The first chapter comprises 72 different biographies on the name Ḥasan. It starts with Imām Ḥasan b. 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib. <sup>(146)</sup> The second chapter comprises 48 different biographies on the name Ḥusain. It starts with Imām Ḥusain b. 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib. <sup>(147)</sup> The annex comprises 125 various biographies on the name 'Alī, starts with Imām 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib. <sup>(148)</sup> The annex is much longer than chapters I and II.

On the other hand, the author, Yāsīn, gave various biographies of Imāms, Sultans, Wālīs, Vizirs, 'Udabā' and 'Ulamā'. In his QUR., the author appears to have based this work on his DUR. and other sources such as MUH., MAN. and ATH.



6. Ghāyat al-Bayān fī Manāqib Sulaimān (BAY.)<sup>(149)</sup>

This work is a biographical dictionary which comprises two chapters. There is only one copy of this work; it is preserved in Staatsbibliothek of Berlin, number 9901, contains 101 folios.<sup>(150)</sup> We have no idea to whom the author, Yāsīn, dedicated BAY., because the first two folios are illegible, and most of his damaged preface is missing. It also seems to us that BAY. was written around 1224 A.H. = 1809 A.D. This manuscript comprises 129 biographies. The first chapter is the main text of BAY. This chapter deals with celebrities named Sulaimān. The first biography was of the prophet Sulaimān,<sup>(151)</sup> while others following were of Sultans, Vizirs, Emirs, poets, Mosuli notables, as well as 'Udabā' and 'Ulamā'. The second chapter, as the author, Yāsīn, calls it (al-Maqāla al-Thāniya), deals with those named Salīm, but he gave us only one biography, of Sultan Salīm I the Grim.<sup>(152)</sup> This work seems to have been compiled with a great deal of interest and effort. It contains biographies of people during the Ottoman era. The author, Yāsīn, also gives us some original information about his contemporaries in Mosul, Baghdad and other regions in Iraq, such as the information in the biography of Sulaimān Pasha b. Muhammad Amīn Pasha al-Jalīlī,<sup>(153)</sup> and also the biography of Sulaimān Pasha the Little, Wālī of Baghdad which is the last biography of BAY. before the biography of Sultan Salīm I. So, it is probable that the author dedicated this work to him. Through the text of BAY. it seems to us that his DUR. was one of the main sources of this work.

7. Khulāsat al-Tawārīkh (KHU.)<sup>(154)</sup>

This is a biographical work which contains a large number of

biographies of various people. There is only one copy of this manuscript which is preserved in Staatsbibliothek of Berlin, number 9900.<sup>(155)</sup> It is made up of 122 folios. This manuscript appears to have been written by the author Yāsīn himself.

The book was probably dedicated to some celebrity named 'Abdullāh or 'Ubaidullāh, since the first chapter deals with those named 'Abdullāh or 'Ubaidallāh. This original copy of KHU. was completed after the official Islamic prayer of Friday, 1st Rajab 1204 A.H.<sup>(156)</sup>

In his preface, the author gives the structure of this work: eight chapters, the first chapter on the names of 'Abdullāh and 'Ubaidullāh - Chapters 2 - 6,<sup>(157)</sup> comprise names that start with 'Abdul -. The second chapter deals with 'Abdul-Raḥmān; the third chapter deals with 'Abdul-Malik, 'Abdul-Quddūs, 'Abdul-Salām, 'Abdul-Mu'min; chapter five deals with those whose name is 'Abdul-'Azīz, 'Abdul-Wahhāb, 'Abdul-Razzāq, 'Abdul-Fattāh, 'Abdul-Latīf, 'Abdul-Halīm; the sixth chapter deals with the names 'Abdul-Karīm, 'Abdul-Majīd, 'Abdul-Wahīd, 'Abdul-Ḥaqq, 'Abdul-Ḥamīd, 'Abdul-Ḥayy, 'Abdul-Qādir, 'Abdul-Ghanī, 'Abdul-Ḥafīz and 'Abdul-Bāqī, the seventh chapter deals with those whose names end with Allāh, such as Faḍlullā and 'Atā'ullāh; the last chapter, the eighth, deals with kings and others whose names are not Arabic.

Most of the material contained in the chapters 1 - 7<sup>\*</sup> can be found in other works of his, such as DUR. and ATH. The eighth chapter seems to be the longest chapter of KHU. The author, Yāsīn, tells us in his preface that the total number of biographies in KHU. is 395.

---

\* See above note 157.

In fact, the text of KHU. contains 394 biographies. Below is given a list of chapters and the number of biographies written on each name.

Chapter No. 1 (158)

'Abdullāh (98); 'Ubaidullāh (7).

Chapter No. 2. (159)

'Abdul-Rahmān (64).

Chapter No. 3 (160)

'Abdul-Rahīm (10).

Chapter No. 4 (161)

'Abdul-Malik (5); 'Abdul-Mu'min (2); 'Abdul-Salām (2); 'Abdul-Quddūs (2).

Chapter No. 5 (162)

'Abdul-'Azīz (12); 'Abdul-Wahhāb (3); 'Abdul-Laṭīf (8); 'Abdul-Ḥalīm (3); 'Abdul-Razzāq (4); 'Abdul-Fattāḥ (3).

Chapter No. 6 (163)

'Abdul-Majīd (1); 'Abdul-Karīm (7); 'Abdul-Wahīb (1); 'Abdul-Qādir (13); 'Abdul-Bāqī (4); 'Abdul-Ḥamīd (2); 'Abdul-Ḥayy (3); 'Abdul-Ḥaqq (2); 'Abdul-Ṣamad (1); 'Abdul-Ra'ūf (1); 'Abdul-Ghanī (3); 'Abdul-Jawād (2).

Chapter No. 7 (164)

Zeyādatullāh (2); Hibatullāh (5); Naṣrullāh (3); Faṭhullāh (6); Ṣubghatullāh (2); Faḍlullāh (5); Luṭfullāh (1); Ni'matullāh (1); Raḥmatullāh (1); Faīdullāh (1); 'Aṭā'ullāh (2); Khaīrullāh (1).

Chapter No. 8 (165)

Various non Arabic names of Kings and Emirs (101).

Total: (394) biographies.

The author, Yāsīn, adds at the beginning of KHU. two indices; the first one contains the chapters of KHU., while the second lists the names of persons with the page-number on which the name is to be found. This special style of indexing was not common in Arabic compilation during the author's period.

Tab. No. V. : Chronological table of works of Yāsīn al-'Umārī (see also note c)

No.	Title	Present state of work	No. of folios	No. of Copies	Historical Field	Date of the Book	Age of the Author in years	Period of Composition in years
1	DUR. (M) <sup>a</sup>	?	?	None	Annalistic	1200 A.H.	42	
2	NISA.	Ed.	149	3	Biographical	1204 A.H.	46	) 4
3	ZAH.	MS	?	None	Dynastic	1204 A.H.	46	)
4	UMD.	MS	124	1	Annalistic	1205 A.H.	47	1
5	DUR. (S) <sup>b</sup>	?	?	None	Annalistic	1206 A.H.	48	1
6	ATH.	MS	273	1	Annalistic	1210 A.H.	52	4
7	MANH.	MS	143	1	Biographical	1211 A.H.	53	1
8	UMM.	(MS (part) )	63	1	Annalistic	1213 A.H.	55	2
	..... <sup>c</sup>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
9	DUR. 1	present thesis	468	2	Annalistic	1218 A.H.	60	5
10	GHA.	publ.	217	3	Local history	1220 A.H.	62	2
11	MUN.	Ed.	55	1	Local history	1222 A.H. <sup>d</sup>	64-	2
12	KHU.	MS	122	1	Biographical	1224 A.H.	66	)
13	QUR.	MS	86	2	Biographical	1224 A.H.	66	) 2
14	BAY.	MS	101	1	Biographical	1224 A.H.	66	)
15	SAIF.	MS	100	2	Biographical	After DUR. 1	-	)
16	DUR. 2	present thesis	435	3	Annalistic	1226 A.H.	68	13 <sup>e</sup>
17	G HAR.	publ.	123	3	Chronicle	1226 A.H.	68	2

Notes to Tab. No. V

- a - DUR. (M) is the mislaid DUR., details in Chap. No. 3.
- b - DUR. (S) is the copy of DUR. sold by the author, details in Chap. No. 3.
- c - We do not know the date of compilation of three other historical works; UNW., SHA. and ad-Durr al-Muntathir ...; they were probably compiled after DUR. (M) and before DUR. 1.
- d - We do not know the exact date of MUN., it is probably 1222 A.H., because the author mentions that he compiled MUN. after GHA., therefore MUN. is compiled between GHA. and KHU.
- e - The author appears to have started writing his major historical book (DUR. 2) in 1213 A.H.

# NOTES

- (1) This work is mentioned by Brock., S11/781-2; Catalogus Codicum Orientalium qui in Museo Britannico Asservantur, Pars Secunda Codices Arabicos, Amplectens II, pp.577-8; Helen Loebenstein, Katlog Der Arabischen Handschriften der Österreichischen Nationalbibliothek, Neuerwerbungen 1868-1968, Teil I, Wien 1970, pp.202-3; E. Blochet, Catalogue des Manuscrits Arabs des Nouvelles Acquisitions 1884-1924, Paris 1925, p.44; W. Ahlwardt, Die Handschriften - Verzeichnisse der Königlichen Bibliothek Zu Berlin, Neunter Band, Berlin 1897, p.93; D. al-Chalabī, Makhtūtāt al-Mawṣil, Baghdad 1927, p.141; Ṣ. al-Jalīlī in his introduction to G HAR., p.4; S. Daiwachī in his introduction to MUN., p.16; L. Sheikhū al-Yasū'ī, op.cit., p.31; Baghdādī, Hadīyat al-'Ārifīn ..., Istanbul 1952, 2/512; Zirkilī, op.cit., 9/155; M. Jawād in his commentaries to the Arabic translation of Longrigg's book: "Four Centuries of Modern Iraq" - 'Arba'at Qurūn min Tārīkh al-'Irāq al-Hadīth', Tran. by J. Khaliyāt, Baghdad 1963, p.336 f.n. 1; R.M. Sāmarrā'ī in his introduction to NISA., pp.13-14; I.A. Ra'ūf in his introduction to ZUB., p.23 and P. Kemp, op.cit., pp.231-36.
- (2) This work is mentioned by Brock., loc. cit.; Ṣ. al-Jalīlī, loc. cit.; D. al-Chalabī in his preface to ZUB., pp.34-5; S. Daiwachī in MUN., p.15; D. Chalabī, Makhtūtāt ..., p.268; Zirkilī, loc. cit.; Sāmarrā'ī in NISA., p.13; Ra'ūf in ZUB., pp.7-11, and Kemp, op.cit., pp.225-31.
- (3) This work is mentioned by Brock., loc. cit.; al-Chalabī, Makhtūtāt ..., p.141; al-Yasū'ī, op.cit., pp.31-2; Zirkilī, loc. cit.; Kaḥḥāla, Mu'jam al-Mu'allifīn ..., Damascus 1961, 13/177; Ra'ūf in ZUB., p.23; Sāmarrā'ī in NISA., p.17 and Kemp, op.cit., pp.219-24.
- (4) This work is mentioned by Brock., loc. cit.; al-Chalabī, Makhtūtāt ..., p.261; Longrigg, op.cit., p.329; Daiwachī, in MUN.,

- pp.19-20; Zirkilī, loc. cit.; Gūrgīs 'Awwād, A dictionary of Iraqi authors . . , Baghdad 1969, 3/436; Sāmarrā'ī in NISA., pp.17-18; Ra'ūf in ZUB., pp.26-7 and Kemp, op.cit., pp.248-50.
- (5) This work is mentioned by Brock., loc. cit.; Ṣ. al-Jalīlī, loc. cit.; Daiwachī in MUN., pp.11-28; Zirkilī, loc. cit.; al-Yasū'ī, loc. cit.; Sāmarrā'ī in NISA., p.21; Ra'ūf in ZUB., pp.24-5; G. 'Awwād, loc. cit. and Kemp, op.cit., pp.250-2.
  - (6) This work is mentioned by Ahlwardt, loc. cit. and Kemp, op.cit., p.237.
  - (7) This work is mentioned by Brock., loc. cit.; al-Chalabī, Makhtūtāt . . , p.142; Daiwachī in MUN., pp.20-1; Zirkilī, loc. cit.; Longrigg, op.cit., p.329; SUMER, vol. 13, 1957, p.66; M.M.M., 1/45; Samarrā'ī in NISA., p.18; Ra'ūf in ZUB., p.25 and Kemp, op.cit., pp.253-5.
  - (8) This work is mentioned by Daiwachī in MUN., p.18; Zirkilī, loc. cit.; Ra'ūf in ZUB., p.24, and Kemp, op.cit., pp.236-7.
  - (9) This work is mentioned by al-Chalabī, op. cit., pp.141-2; Daiwachī in MUN., p.17; Zirkilī, loc. cit.; Kaḥḥāla, loc. cit.; M.M.M., loc. cit.; Ra'ūf in ZUB., p.25 and Kemp, op.cit., pp.238-9.
  - (10) This work is mentioned by Ahlwardt, op. cit., Bd LX/367-8; Samarrā'ī in NISA., p.23; Ra'ūf in ZUB., p.24 and Kemp, op.cit., pp.245-6.
  - (11) This work is mentioned by Ahlwardt, op.cit., Bd LX/366-7; Samarrā'ī in NISA., p.22; Ra'ūf in ZUB., p.24 and Kemp, op.cit., pp.244-5.
  - (12) This work is mentioned by Brock., loc. cit.; al-Chalabī, loc. cit.; Ṣ. al-Jalīlī, loc. cit.; Daiwachī in MUN., p.21; Samarrā'ī in NISA., p.19; Ra'ūf in ZUB., p.26 and Kemp, op.cit., pp.343-4.
  - (13) This work is mentioned by Brock., loc. cit.; al-Chalabī, op. cit., p.292; Ṣ. al-Jalīlī, loc. cit.; Daiwachī in MUN., pp.17-18; Zirkilī, loc. cit.; Samarrā'ī in NISA., pp.15-16; Ra'ūf in ZUB., p.24 and Kemp, op.cit., pp.242-3.

- (14) This work is mentioned by Brock., loc. cit.; al-Chalabī, op. cit., pp.141-2; Daiwachī in MUN., p.22; Zirkilī, loc. cit.; Samarrā'ī in NISA., p.20; Ra'ūf in ZUB., p.26; Kemp, op. cit., pp.241-2 and see, S.A. Ahmad, A Descriptive Catalogue of Manuscripts in the Awqāf Library of Mosul, vol. 5, Mosul 1977, pp.84-5.
- (15) This work is mentioned by Daiwachī in MUN., p.16; Zirkilī, loc. cit.; al-Chalabī's article in M.L.A., vol. 5, p.236; Sā'igh, Tārīkh al-Mawsil, 2/208; Baghdādī, Hadīyyat al-'Ārifīn ..., Istanbul 1952, 2/512; Samarrā'ī in NISA., p.14; Ra'ūf in ZUB., pp.23-4; Kemp, op. cit., pp.217-18.
- (16) This work is mentioned by E. Blocket, Catalogue des Manuscrits Arabes de Nouvelles Acquisitions 1884-1924, Paris 1925, p.68, 114; Daiwachī in MUN., pp.18-19 and Kemp, op. cit., pp.247-8.
- (17) This work is only mentioned by Daiwachī in MUN., p.19. It is an unknown book.
- (18) This monograph is mentioned by Brock., loc. cit. as: "Maqāsid Ta'bīr - Manẓūma -"; see also Daiwachī in MUN., p.23; al-Chalabī, Makhtūtāt ..., p.141; Samarrā'ī, op. cit., p.20; Ra'ūf in ZUB., p.28 and Kemp, op. cit., p.218. There is a copy of this work, preserved in Cairo, No. VI/128. See, Brock, loc. cit.
- (19) This work is mentioned by the author Yāsīn al-'Umarī himself, cf. his preface to MANH., fol. 2a. There appears however to be no extant manuscript.
- (20) This book contains a large number of Arabic words which have been arranged alphabetically. The work aims at assisting the poets technically in their craft. There is a copy of this work preserved in Mosul (Maktabat al-Awqāf al-'Āmma), No. 64/9 -majmū'-. See, S.A. Ahmad, op. cit., 6/262. This MS appears to have been written by the author himself in 1225 A.H. The work has been mentioned by al-Chalabī, op. cit., p.275; Daiwachī in MUN., p.23; Zirkilī, loc. cit.; Kaḥḥāla, loc. cit.; Samarrā'ī in NISA., pp.16-17; Ra'ūf in ZUB., p.27 and Kemp, op. cit., p.218.



- (21) Of these 'Adabiyāt works, the fourth, the fifth, the sixth and the seventh have been mentioned by the author himself in his preface to MANH.; cf. MANH., fol. 2a. They appear to be no longer extant.
- (22) These ḡaṣā'id seem to have been written by the author himself, and preserved in Mosul (Maktabat al-Auqāf al-'Āmma), No. 31/17 - Majmū' - and No. 71/24 - Majmū' - Subject No. 5, Manzūma fī Hawādith al-Mawṣil 'Ām 1170 A.H. See, S.A. Aḥmad, op.cit., 7/199 and 5/325. This work is mentioned by Brock., loc. cit.; Daiwachī in MUN., p.23 and Kemp, op.cit., p.218.
- (23) This work is mentioned only by Baghdādī, loc. cit. In his short note, he states: خطيب العمري - ياسين بن خير الله بن محمود الفاروقي الوصلي الاديب الحنفي المعروف بالخطيب العمري توفي بالوصل سنة ١٢٢٤، ومن تصانيفه... صفوة الادباء في محاسن الشعراء، فرغ منها سنة ١٢١٢. The author Yāsīn himself does not mention this work in his Adabiyāt, and we do not know whence Baghdādī obtained this title nor his source of information.
- (24) It is a small monograph on syntax, preserved in Mosul (The private Library of Nāẓim al-'Umarī). This manuscript seems to be dated 14th Dhul-Hijja 1205 A.H. It is mentioned only by 'Abbās al-'Azzāwī, Tārīkh al-Adab al-'Arabī fī-l 'Irāq, vol. 2, Baghdad 1962, p.46.
- (25) These Naskhiyāt are mentioned by al-Chalabī, Makhtūṭāt al-Mawṣil, p.152, 261, 232 and 264; also see, S.A. Aḥmad, op.cit., 7/199. - Majmū' No. 31/17 -, and ibid., 6/262 - Majmū' No. 64/9.
- (26) See the description of the MSS of DUR. 1 and DUR. 2; Chap. No. 3, section C.
- (27) ATH. still exists in manuscript form. See, above n. 2.
- (28) ZUB. has been edited by I.A. Ra'ūf, titled "Min Tārīkh al-'Irāq: Zubdat al-Āthār al-Jaliya fī al-Hawādith al-Ardiya" Najaf 1974.
- (29) There is a photocopy of this original MS, in two volumes, preserved in The Library of the Iraqi Academy in Baghdad, vol. I, No. ١٢١, vol. II No. ١٢٢.

- (30) For further details, see the following n. 44.
- (31) Ibid., pp. 39-40.
- (32) Diyā' al-Dīn Ibn al-Athīr in his famous historical book, "al-Kāmil fī al-Tārīkh", ed. by C.J. Thornbery, 12 vols., Beirut 1966.
- (33) Aḥmad Ibn Khalikān, Wafiyāt al-A'yān, ed. by I. 'Abbās, 8 vols., Beirut, 1977.
- (34) Zain al-Dīn 'Umar Ibn al-Wardī (d. 749 A.H. = 1349 A.D.), in his historical book "Tattimmat al-Mukhtasar fī Akhbār al-Bashar", 2 vols., Cairo 1868. See also his other book "Kharīdat al-'Ajā'ib wa-Farīdat al-Gharā'ib", Cairo 1899.
- (35) al-Ghurar fī Siyar al-Mulūk wa-Akhbārihim, compiled by al-Hasan Ibn Muḥammad al-Mur'ashī al-Marghanī al-Tha'ālībī (d. 431 A.H. = 1039 A.D.).
- (36) The full title of this book is "Nakt al-Himyan fī Nukt al-'Imyan", compiled by Ṣalaḥ al-Dīn Khalīl b. Aḥbuk al-Ṣafadī (d. 764 A.H. = 1362 A.D.).
- (37) See, ZUB., p. 39.
- (38) Kemp, op.cit., p. 225.
- (39) The British copy of ATH., fol. 124b; see also Kemp, loc. cit.
- (40) Details about him can be found in MAN., 1/247-9; and GHA., pp. 361-2. The date of his death is not known.
- (41) Cf. the British copy of ATH. and the photocopy of the original MS, see also Kemp, loc. cit.
- (42) It is the 12th article, fols. 220a - 265b, in the Baghdadi photocopy of ATH.
- (43) Loc. cit.
- (44) The original MS of ZUB., is written by Dr. D. al-Chalabī himself. It is entitled : فقرات تخص الوصول وحواليها مستلة من كتاب الآثار الجلية في الحوادث الارضية. dated 1926 A.D. = 1345 A.H., 34 folios. It is preserved in Mosul

(Maktabat al-Auqāf al-'Āmma fī al-Mawṣil), No. 13/7. There is another copy of ZUB. which is typewritten, entitled "زبدة الآثار الجلية - فقرات تخص الموصل وتمس تاريخ البلاد العربية". date of typing 1939 A.D. = 1358 A.H., 51 folios. It is preserved in the same Library in Mosul, No. 10/7.

- (45) Cf. ZUB., pp.43-178.
- (46) Cf. ibid., pp.181-249.
- (47) Ibid., pp.34-5.
- (48) His book "Makhtūṭāt al-Mawṣil" has been published in Baghdad 1927.
- (49) This work (UMD) still exists in manuscript form. See, above n.8.
- (50) Ra'ūf mentions that the Baghdādī UMD. was owned by 'Abbās al-'Azzāwī, cf. ZUB., p.24.
- (51) Cf. the Mosulī UMD., fol. 2a.
- (52) See, Tab. No. V.
- (53) See the author's sources of DUR. in Chap. No. 3.
- (54) This work (UMM) still exists in manuscript form. See above n.6.
- (55) Ahlwardt, op.cit., Neumer Band, p.93.
- (56) Cf. UMM., fol. 64a.
- (57) Ibid., fol. 63b.
- (58) This work (UNW.) still exists in manuscript form. See above n.3.
- (59) Ahlwardt, op.cit., Bd IX / 91-2.
- (60) Aḥmad Abū al-'Abbās al-Qarmānī, Akhbār al-Duwal wa Āthār al-Uwal, Baghdad 1282 A.H. = 1869 A.D.
- (61) See, above n.34.
- (62) 'Abdullāh b. As'ad al-Yāfi'ī, Mir'āt al-Jinān wa 'Ibrat al-Yaqzān, 4 vols., Haidar-Abād 1338 A.H. = 1918 A.D.
- (63) See above n.32.

- (64) Najm al-Dīn 'Umāra al-Makkī, Tārīkh al-Yaman, ed. by Henry Cassels Kay, London, 1892.
- (65) Muḥammad Amīn b. Faḍlulāh al-Muḥibbī, Khulāṣat al-Athar fī A'yān al-Qarn al-Hādī 'Ashar, 4 vols., Cairo 1868 A.D.
- (66) UNW., fol. 2b.
- (67) Daiwachī's introduction, MUN., p.19.
- (68) Cf. MANH., fols. 1b-2a, and NISA., p.36.
- (69) No copy of this work has been traced.
- (70) MANH., fol. 2a.
- (71) This book (GHA.) has been published by Dār al-Baṣrī, Baghdad 1968, but it is not a scholarly edition. See also, above n.4.
- (72) Cf. Yāqūt, in his description Baghdad, 1/677.
- (73) GHA., p.386.
- (74) Ibid., p.11. Yahyā Pasha al-Jalīlī ruled Mosul twice as a Wālī. The first period was 1238 - 1242 A.H. = 1822 - 1827 A.D., the second period 1248 -1249 A.H. = 1832 - 1834 A.D. See, App. No.5.
- (75) GHA., p.12. This is Yāqūt's statement, cf. Yāqūt, loc. cit.
- (76) GHA., pp.12-22.
- (77) Ibid., pp.22-31.
- (78) Murtada Nazmī-Zādeh, Tarjamat Auliya' Baghdād, Tran. by A. Fakhrī, MS of Maktabat al-Auqāf in Mosul, No. 4/22 - Ḥasanīyya -.
- (79) GHA., pp.45-101.
- (80) Ibid., pp.113-209.
- (81) Ibid., pp.306-322.
- (82) Ibid., pp.322-386.
- (83) This statement is written by S.H. Longrigg, op.cit., p.329.
- (84) This work (MUN.) has been edited by S. Daiwachī, Mosul 1955; see also above n.5.

- (85) MUN., p. 30.
- (86) Catalogus Codicum Orientalium qui in Museo Britannica Asservantur, Pars Secunda Codices Arabicos, Amplectens II, p. 578.
- (87) MUN., loc. cit.
- (88) Muḥammad Amīn al-Khaṭīb al-'Umārī, Manḥal al-Auliya' wa Mashrab al-Aṣfiya' min Sādāt al-Mawṣil al-Ḥadbā', ed. by S. Daiwachī, 2 vols., Mosul 1967, 1968.
- (89) MUN., pp. 31-6.
- (90) Ibid., pp. 36-7.
- (91) Ibid., pp. 37-71.
- (92) Ibid., pp. 71-88.
- (93) Ibid., pp. 89-126.
- (94) Ibid., pp. 127-168.
- (95) Ibid., pp. 169-193.
- (96) Ibid., pp. 194-198.
- (97) This book (GHAR.) has been published by Dr. Ṣ. al-Jalīlī in Mosul 1940, but it is not a scholarly edition. See also above n. 7.
- (98) Brock., loc. cit., and GHAR., p. 3.
- (99) GHAR., p. 3.
- (100) Cf. ibid., pp. 5-6.
- (101) Kemp, op. cit., p. 253.
- (102) Sa'dallāh Pasha b. Ḥājj Ḥusain Pasha al-Jalīlī, ruled Mosul as a Wālī 1225-1227 A.H. = 1810-1812 A.D., see Tab. No. 5 .
- (103) GHAR., pp. 6-13.
- (104) Ibid., pp. 13-123.
- (105) Ibid., p. 32.

- (106) This work, NISA., has been edited by Rajā' Maḥmūd as-Sāmarra'ī in Baghdad 1966, entitled "Muhadhdhab al-Rawḍa al-Faiḥā' fī Tawārīkh al-Nisā'". See also, above n.9.
- (107) Ahlwardt, op. cit., Bd LX/368.
- (108) In his Index, Zirkilī mentions that there is a copy of NISA. preserved in Taimūriya Library of Egypt. (cf. Zirkilī, loc. cit.). I have not been able to consult this.
- (109) NISA., pp.35-42.
- (110) Ibid., pp.43-255.
- (111) Ibid., pp.257-300.
- (112) Ibid., pp.301-305.
- (113) The full title of this work is "Masrah al-Wafā' wa Manhal al-Safā' fī Sharḥ dhāt al-Shafā'", compiled by Muḥammad Amīn al-Khatīb al-'Umarī. It is a Sīra of the prophet, MS of the Iraqi museum Library in Baghdad, No. 797.
- (114) al-Sīra al-Halabiya, compiled by 'Alī Ibrāhīm al-Ḥalabī (d. 1044 A.H. = 1635 A.D.), MS of the Maktabat al-Auqāf al-'Āmma in Mosul, No. 3/15.
- (115) The author of Mir'āt al-Jinān is 'Abdullāh al-Yāfi'ī. It has been published in Ḥaidar - Abād 1338 A.H.
- (116) al-Durr al-Nazīm fī Khawās al-Qur'ān al-Karīm, compiled by 'Abdullāh al-Yāfi'ī.
- (117) Abū Mansūr 'Abdul-Malik b. Muḥammad al-Tha'ālibī (d. 429 A.H.), Yatīmat ad-Dahr fī Maḥāsin Ahl al-'Asr, vols. 4, Cairo 1934.
- (118) Najm al-Dīn 'Imāra al-Makkī, Tārīkh al-Yaman, ed. by Hasan Sulaimān Maḥmūd, Egypt 1957. See also above n.64.
- (119) This work (MANH.), still exists in manuscript form. See above n.14.
- (120) Cf. M. al-Jalīlī's introduction in the third copy of MANH.
- (121) Cf. ibid., fol. 159a.

- (122) Ibid., fols. 1a-2b.
- (123) Ibid., fols. 2b-5b.
- (124) Ibid., fols. 83a-85b.
- (125) Ibid., fols. 153b-159a.
- (126) This book is "Fuṣūṣ al-Hukum", compiled by Muḥī al-Dīn Ibn 'Arabī (d. 638 A.H.), MS of Maktabat al-Auqāf al-'Āmma in Mosul, No. 58 - Madrasat Bakr Efendi - .
- (127) This book is "Bustān al-'Ārifīn" compiled by Abū al-Laith Naṣr b. Muḥammad al-Samarqandī (d. 375 A.H.), MS of Maktabat al-Auqāf al-'Āmma in Mosul, No. 1/4 - Madrasat Ḥājj Husaīn Baig - .
- (128) This book is " 'Uyūn al-Madhāhib al-Kāmilī'" compiled by Qīwān al-Dīn b. Muḥammad b. Muḥammad b. Aḥmad al-Kākī (d. 749 A.H. = 1348 A.D.), MS of Maktabat al-Auqāf al-'Āmma in Mosul, No. 18/8 - Madrasat al-Muḥammadiya - .
- (129) Maṣābīḥ al-Sunna compiled by Muḥammad al-Husain b. Mas'ūd al-Baghawī, (d. 510 A.H.), MS of Maktabat al-Auqāf al-'Āmma in Mosul, No. 21/2 - Ṣā'igh and Chalabī - .
- (130) Niṣāb al-Ihtisāb compiled by 'Umar b. Muḥammad b. 'Awad al-Shāmī al-Hanafī (d. 696 A.H.), MS of Maktabat al-Auqāf al-'Āmma in Mosul, No. 37/6 - Madrasat Ḥājj Husaīn Pasha - .
- (131) Kitāb al-Sijillāt is probably the Law court documents.
- (132) See above n.15.
- (133) MANH., fol. 2b.
- (134) In his introduction to ZUB., I.A. Ra'ūf mentions that there is an incomplete copy of this work preserved in the Iraqi museum Library, No. 2175. ZUB., pp.23-4, which I was unable to obtain.
- (135) This work (KHU.) still exists in manuscript form. See above n.16.
- (136) Cf. E. Blochet, op.cit., p.14.

- (137) See the biography of Sharaf ad-Dīn ad-Dimashqī in SHA., fol. 121a.
- (138) Kemp, op.cit., p. 248.
- (139) See the internal structure of this MS in ibid., App. No. X, pp. 352-6.
- (140) This work (SAIF.) still exists in manuscript form. See above n. 13.
- (141) Cf. SAIF., fols. 1b-2a.
- (142) Loc. cit.
- (143) This work (QUR.) still exists in manuscript form. See above n. 12.
- (144) Cf. QUR., fol. 1b. I was unable to identify Husain Pasha.  
P. Kemp wrongly states that QUR. was dedicated to Hasan Bey (later Pasha) b. Husain Pasha al-Jalīlī. cf. Kemp, op.cit., p. 243.
- (145) QUR., fol. 86a.
- (146) Ibid., fols. 2b-25b.
- (147) Ibid., fols. 25a-40b.
- (148) Ibid., fols. 41a-86a.
- (149) This work (BAY.) still exists in manuscript form. See above n. 10.
- (150) Ahlwardt, op.cit., Band IX, pp. 367-8.
- (151) Cf. BAY., fol. 3a.
- (152) Ibid., fol. 98a.
- (153) Ibid., fol. 93b.
- (154) This work (KHU.) still exists in manuscript form. See above n. 11.
- (155) Ahlwardt, op.cit., Band IX, pp. 366-7.
- (156) Cf. KHU., fol. 122a.
- (157) Cf. ibid., fols. 3b-79b.
- (158) Ibid., fols. 3b-37a.
- (159) Ibid., fols. 37b-50b.
- (160) Ibid., fols. 51a-53a.



- (161) Ibid., fols. 53a-57a.
- (162) Ibid., fols. 57a-65a.
- (163) Ibid., fols. 65a-72b.
- (164) Ibid., fols. 73a-79b.
- (165) Ibid., fols. 79b-122b.

## CHAPTER THREE

### A STUDY OF DUR. MSS

## A STUDY OF DUR. MSS

### The MSS of DUR.

#### Section a)

##### 1. Introduction

The author of DUR., Yāsīn Efendi al-Khaṭīb al-'Umārī, has without any doubt, presented us with a valuable book entitled "al-Durr al-Maknūn fī al-Ma'āthir al-Mādiya min al-Qurūn".

It is essential to bear in mind, firstly, that this work has been written four times by the author himself, secondly, that it has had a vivid and effective influence on all the historical works written by the same author, and thirdly, that it covers twelve centuries of Islamic history, chronicling events by year dealing with many historical fields, such as, annalistic history, biographical material, local history, and chronicles relating many unknown notable and important events during the age of the author. \*

DUR. is the most treasured of the author's historical works for the following substantial reasons:

- (1) It was written by the author himself four times.
- (2) It is the author's largest historical work.
- (3) The mislaid MS of DUR. is the first historical work written by the author.
- (4) Either DUR. itself or its drafts, constituted the author's sources in compiling his other historical works, such as NISA., QUR., SAIF., UMM., MUN., and KHU. \*\*

---

\* The text of DUR. will be examined at length in the following pages. See, Chap. No. 4.

\*\* For details, see our study of the author's historical works above, Chap. No. 2.

- (5) The author spent five years compiling his DUR. 1 (see Tab. No. V, Chap. No. 2), while he only spent one or two years in compiling any of his other works.

## 2. The problem of DUR. MSS.

As far as we know DUR. 1, was written in 1218 A.H., but the author tells us in his work (MANH.), that DUR. was one of his sources in his compiling MANH.<sup>(1)</sup> which had been written in 1211 A.H., that is 7 years before DUR. 1 (see Tab. No. V, Chap. No. 2). In his other work (NISA.) which had been compiled by the author in 1204 A.H. (see, loc. cit.), 14 years before DUR. 1, the author says:

(2). وفي كتابي الدر المكنون ....

(3). وذكر في كتاب الدر المكنون ....

These two samples from MANH. and NISA. are of considerable importance because of the light they shed on unknown MSS of DUR. which appear to have been written by the author before 1211 A.H. in MANH. and 1204 A.H. in NISA.

Biographies of the author do not supply us with much detail of how and when DUR. was compiled. Many biographers, indexers, and historians have only mentioned the title of DUR. such as Dr. D. al-Chalabī,<sup>(4)</sup> Dr. Brockelman,<sup>(5)</sup> Dr. Š. al-Jalīlī,<sup>(6)</sup> Baghdādī,<sup>(7)</sup> Zirkilī<sup>(8)</sup> and Yasū'ī,<sup>(9)</sup> while others such as, Nāẓim al-'Umarī,<sup>(10)</sup> S. Daiwachī,<sup>(11)</sup> Dr. M. Jawād,<sup>(12)</sup> R. Sāmarra'ī<sup>(13)</sup> and I. Ra'ūf<sup>(14)</sup> briefly about DUR., without in any way distinguishing it from other works because they obtained only the photocopy of Paris MS. of DUR.\* Lately, Dr. P. Kemp used only three

---

\* For full details, see the description of Paris MS in the following pages.

copies of DUR., the Paris MS, the second MS of the British Museum Library, and the Berlin MS,<sup>(15)</sup> but even so, he did not give us a solution to the problem, because, he did not use the first British copy of DUR. 2, which includes the complete preface of DUR. 2 (missing in the Berlin MS).

One of the aims of this research is to elucidate the history of DUR. by means of showing the structure and composition of DUR. through work by the author himself such as the preface of DUR. 1 and DUR. 2; also through showing the major and interesting differences between the MSS of DUR.

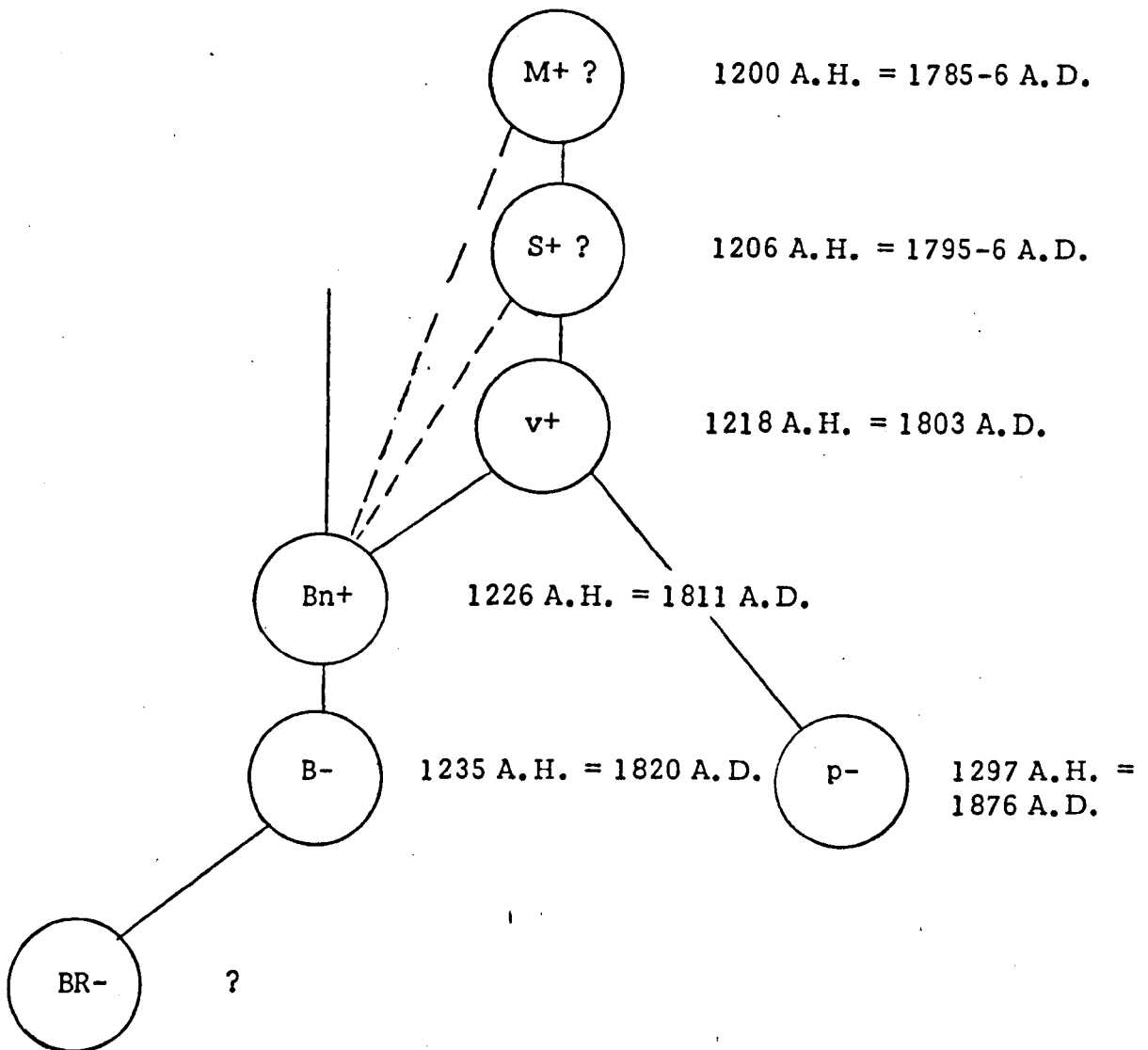
### 3. The Stemma of the DUR. MSS

The author wrote DUR. four times. He compiled the first version of DUR. in 1200 A.H.; his second version of DUR. in 1206 A.H.; the third version of DUR. (DUR. 1) in 1218 A.H., and the fourth version of DUR. (DUR. 2) in 1226 A.H.

The author gave these works all the same title which is "al-Durr al-Maknūn fī al-Ma'āthir al-Mādiyā min al-Qurūn".

The diagram drawn below simply shows the stemma of the DUR. MSS, the unknown original MSS and the available MSS. It shows all the original MSS which appear to have been written by the author himself (MS+), and all the copies which appear to have been written by copyists (MS-).

Indeed, there are five copies of this work available to us, two of which are original, written by the author himself. But before we embark on the examination of these five available MSS, we must study the stemma of the DUR. MSS, distinguishing between the original MSS and their copies.

Tab. No. VI : The Stemma of the DUR. MSS

The five available MSS (v, p, Bn, B and BR) will be examined critically and studied at length in the following pages, while two MSS (M and S) have remained beyond my reach, and appear to have been lost.

#### 4. The missing original MSS of DUR.

There are two missing and unknown original MSS of DUR. which I have designated (MS M) and (MS S).

##### (1) The mislaid DUR. (M)

The author tells us that he had originally composed a book in history entitled "al-Durr al-Maknūn fī al-Ma'āthir al-Māḍiya min al-Qurūn", beginning from the first year of Hījra and ending in the year 1200 A.H. His brother Muḥammad Amīn al-Khaṭīb al-'Umarī supports that when he writes the following statement in his MAN.:

وله تاريخ على سني  
الهجرة الى عامنا هذا ، جمعه من  
تواريخ متعددة مثل الكامل لابن الاثير (16)  
وتاريخ الملك المؤيد ، وتاريخ الياقسي (17)  
والمجبي ، وغير ذلك ، وصار كتابا جامعا يحتاج الى (18)  
تنقيح وتهذيب ، فلا يكون له نظير في قومه . (19)  
(20)

In the above quote, Muḥammad Amīn does not give us the title of that book, but says: الى عامنا هذا which was 1201 A.H. By examining the dates of composition of DUR. M. and the MAN. of Muḥammad Amīn, we find that Muḥammad Amīn is talking about DUR. M. in the above quotation, because Muḥammad Amīn composed his MAN. in 1201 A.H. (21) Yāsīn

لم ازل  
منذ نشأت وترعرعت متولعا في كتب التواريخ ، وأول ما ألقت  
كتابا مشيت به على طريق تاريخ الياقسي \*  
وابن الوردي ، ابتدأت به من سنة الهجرة الى (22)  
سنة الف ومائتين ، ثم انعمت مني الكتاب  
فقلت لفقدته وحزنت حيث لم اخرج له للبيض ولازلت  
على ذلك اعوام حتى سهل الله  
لبي جمعه هذا الكتاب . (23)

It seems to us that M MS was a draft of DUR. which is also mentioned in three places by the author himself in NISA. which was composed in 1204 A.H. (see, Tab. No. V , Chap. 2). The author says:

وفي كتابي الدر المكنون . (24)

\* See above note 18.

In another place in NISA, he says: <sup>(25)</sup> "وفي كتابي الدر المكنون انه"  
 In a third place in NISA, he says: <sup>(26)</sup> "وذكر في كتاب الدر المكنون"

This MS, DUR. M, is still missing.

(2) The sold DUR. (S)

In the preface of DUR. 2 (B MS), the author tells us that he had composed another book of history, but briefly, and gave it the same title: "al-Durr al-Maknūn fī al-Ma'āthir al-Mādiya min al-Qurūn", beginning from the first year of the Hijra, and ending in the year 1206 A.H. But this book was sold by the author himself when he was in need of money, as he states: "فجمعت كتاب فريد (sic) في فئه مختصر ابتدأت به من سنة الهجرة الى سنة الف ومائتين وستة فاحوجني المال الى بيعه وصرف ثمنه وعزمت على ترك مطالعة كتب التواريخ فحملني بعض الاصدقاء على جمع كتاب التواريخ آخر سنة الف ومائتين وثلاثة عشر فجمعت هذا الكتاب وسميت به باسم ذاك وهو الدر المكنون في مآثر الماضي من القرون ، وهذا اوان الشروع <sup>(27)</sup>

This statement mentioned above is very important. It is a key to the understanding of the stemma of the DUR. MSS. It also shows that the author was upset at having sold this MS of DUR. and decided to give up the idea of composing a substitute for DUR., until the year 1213 A.H. when he was pushed by some of his friends to compose another book to which he gave the same title. From the above, we can derive that the author started composing his DUR. 2 (Bn MS) some time during 1213 A.H.



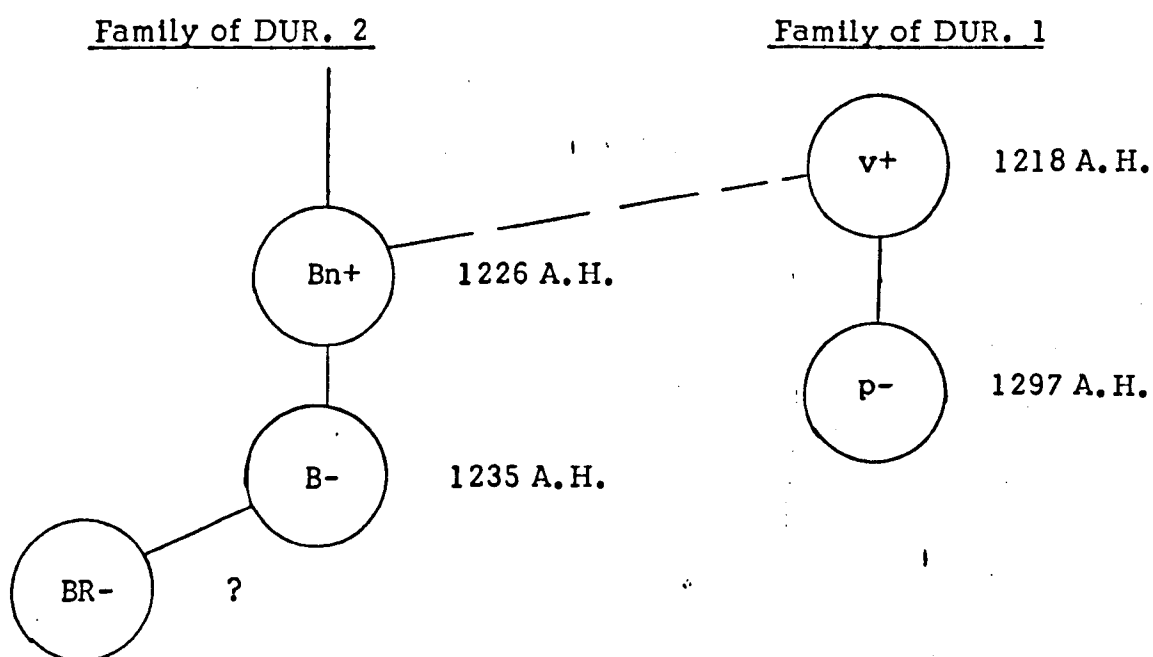
## 5. The available MSS of DUR.

There are five available MSS of DUR. which I have designated as follows:

- (1) The Vienna MS (v)
- (2) The Berlin MS (Bn)
- (3) The first British MS (B)
- (4) The Paris MS (p)
- (5) The second British MS (BR)

The provenance of these five available MSS is illustrated in the following diagram:

Tab. No. VII : The two families of DUR.



After examination of the five available MSS, the relationship of DUR. 1 and DUR. 2 becomes clear. The diagram drawn above, shows that there are two families of two versions of DUR. It consists of our five MSS.

Family No. 1 contains MS v and MS p, while family No. 2 contains MSS Bn, B and BR. Secondly, MS v seems to be the head of family No. 1 (i.e. the original); while MS Bn seems to be the head of family No. 2. Both are written by the author himself. We considered MS v as a mother of all MSS because it is an old MS dated 1218 A.H., and it was possibly the original root of MS Bn, the head of family No. 2. We base our present work on MS v.

In family No. 1, MS p appears to be based on MS v. In family No. 2, MS Bn was composed by the author himself who based it indirectly on MS v. MS B is directly based on MS Bn. The MS BR is an enigmatic copy.\*

#### 6. General variations between DUR. 1 and DUR. 2.

There is a great deal of difference between DUR. 1 and DUR. 2. There is also many differences in the family of DUR. 2 itself. The general variations appear as follows:

- (1) DUR. 1 is dated 1218 A.H., whereas DUR. 2 is not dated at all but the author stopped writing suddenly in the year 1226 A.H.
- (2) Although the author Yāsīn commenced the compilation of both DUR. 1 and DUR. 2 in the same year, 1213 A.H., he seems to have completed DUR. 1 in 5 years until 1218 A.H. while DUR. 2 took him 13 years until 1226 A.H.
- (3) DUR. 1 is dedicated to the Wazīr 'Alī Pāshā, Wālī of Baghdad. There is no dedication in DUR. 2

---

\* For full details, see the following pages.

- (4) The preface of DUR. 1, differs from that of DUR. 2. The preface of DUR. 1 is long, written in a literary style, while the preface of DUR. 2 is shorter.
- (5) DUR. 1 has been written with care and in good handwriting, probably because it is dedicated to the Wālī of Baghdad, while DUR. 2 has been written with less care, and the handwriting is not as good.
- (6) It is clear that DUR. 2 is not the exact replica of DUR. 1. In his DUR. 2, the author does not mention DUR. 1. He also does not suggest that he used DUR. 1 in the production of DUR. 2 but the preface of DUR. 2 shows that the author compiled his DUR. 2 separately. He does, however, appear to have used DUR. 1 as his main source.
- (7) The layout of the texts is similar. In addition, the wording of the material in DUR. 1 and DUR. 2 is similar. In both, the structure of material has been arranged in paragraphs under each year. Each paragraph is introduced by the words ( في ).
- (8) The margins in DUR. 1 appear clean, whereas the margins in DUR. 2 appear full of additional material, used by the author himself.
- (9) The style in DUR. 1 and DUR. 2 is similar, but the material in DUR. 1 appears to have been written concisely. But DUR. 2 is different; much explanatory material and poetry appears in the biographical sections, as well as additional biographies. It also contains much detail and additional material relating to the local history of Mosul and Iraq.
- (10) The account of the period 1212-1218 A.H. is markedly different in DUR. 1 from that in DUR. 2, (see Apparatus Criticus, pp.1162-1188). The end of DUR. 1 and its annex have been omitted in DUR. 2 by the author himself.
- (11) Indeed, only DUR. 1 became famous in the 20th century through some

scholars and historians who used the photocopy of p MS, the late copy of DUR. 1, while by contrast, DUR. 2 is still an unknown book. It has not been used by any scholar or historian in the West or the East.

(12) The orthographical differences between DUR. 1 and DUR. 2 are very great. In dealing with MSS of these two families, it is straightforward to make a comparison between the MSS of DUR. 1 (MSS v and p), because MS p is an exact replica of the original MS v, but it is hard to find congruity in any two paragraphs or lines written of DUR. 1 and DUR. 2 (i.e. v, Bn MSS).

(13) Amongst the family of DUR. 2 itself, the MS B is based on MS Bn; the differences between them are clear and numerous, while the MS BR differs from MS Bn in almost every line. The differences here in default of any evidence to the contrary appears to have been the responsibility of the copyist of MS BR.

### The Style of DUR.

#### Section b)

The author's contemporaries, unlike present scholars and historians, did not consider Yāsīn al-Khaṭīb al-'Umārī as an important recorder of history.\* He did not seem to take much care about his writing style, when compiling his works, including DUR.

Many scholars and historians found his style poor, particularly in Arabic grammar, because he was not skilled in the Arabic language. In

---

\* For full details, see Chap. No. 1.

his preface to ZUB. Dr. D. al-Chalabī states: "ان المؤلف لم يكن من المتعلمين في اللغة وعلومها، فجاء كلامه غير خال من السقاة وضعف التركيب، عدا الاغلاط النحوية الفظيعة". (28)

In his preface to MANH. which still exists in MS form, Professor M. al-Jalīlī says the following: "لم يكن المؤلف عالما بالعربية وقواعدها وآدابها، فجاء كلامه كثير اللحن، سقيم التركيب، كثير الخطأ في الاملاء". (29)

The following points distinguish the author from other contemporary writers:

1. The author of DUR. has made many mistakes in language, grammar and dictation, for example, has taken little care about orthographic signs (i.e. Hamza, Sukūn, Waṣla and Madda), nor does he use vowels. In his prose, the author has not employed the methods of Arabic grammar, for example, his mistakes in (1) demonstrative adjectives (e.g. اولئك، تلك، هذه etc.), (2) Relatives (e.g. الذين، اللذان، الذي etc.), (3) Interrogative pronouns (e.g. كم، كيف، ما، من etc.), and (4) The forms of the cardinal numbers (e.g. اثنا عشرة، احد عشر، احدى عشرة etc.).
2. The author's style also appears poor when compared with the works of his Arab contemporaries in 18th century Mosul, such as RAW. and SHAM. These two famous biographical works for example were written in poetical style and eloquent Arabic.
3. The repetitions in DUR., of many paragraphs, phrases, events; e.g. in particular: details of the 'Umari's, the author's family in Mosul.

4. The author uses dialect typical of Mosul, his home city. Many local words are found and these are indicated in the Apparatus Criticus and notes to the text, e.g. the following words used in DUR. 2:

( for الرديئة ) ; ( الاوائل for الأوئل ) ; ( بهم for بهم ) ;  
 ( رائناء for رناء ) ; ( الطعام for الزاد ) ; ( الرديئة  
 ( قنصل for قنصر ) ; ( العربات for العرباين or العربانات ) ;  
 ( for الشب ) ; ( الدناير for الدناير ) ; ( عائشه for عيشه ) ;  
 البطبخ for الشوى ) ; ( الجواميس for الجمس ) ; ( الشاب  
 ( القطط for البزازين ) ; ( انفجرت for طقت ) ; ( الاحمر  
 ... etc. ( الذى يلمع for اليلمع ) ; ( يلبايلها for لبايلها )

5. On the other hand, the author Yāsīn used many Turkish and Persian words and terms which are indicated in the notes to the text, such as:

( سفر ) ; ( الصالیانجی ) ; ( ایلجی ) ; ( اقبہ ) ;  
 ( الکیخیا or الکتخدا ) ; ( کپری or کوری ) ;  
 ( مہترخانہ ) ; ( طوغ ) ; ( قول ) ; ( طنبجہ ) ;  
 ... etc. ( پینکجری ) ; ( الدفترخانہ ) ; ( مہردار ) ;

All the Turkish-Persian terms which were used by the author were employed by the people in Arab society during the 16th-19th centuries of the Ottoman period.

6. The author does not use the rhymed prose ( سجع = Saj' ), which was common in Mosul during his era. In his MAN. the author's brother Muhammad Amīn also does not use Saj'.

7. In his DUR. 1 and DUR. 2, the author includes much poetry. He included the text of many qaṣā'id and maqāṭi' of poems, and verses and hemistichs of poetic-history. Some of these qaṣā'id and maqāṭi' were composed by the author himself.

8. In both DUR. 1 and DUR. 2, the author sometimes seems to be fond of mockery, and records some events in a jocular, flippant manner.

### The Description of MSS

#### Section c)

##### a. MSS of DUR. 1

##### 1. The Vienna MS (v)

This MS is preserved in Österreichische Nationalbibliothek of Vienna, (MS 2412, Mixt. 1607).<sup>(30)</sup> It is in one volume which is entitled "al-Durr al-Maknūn fī al-Ma'āthir al-Mādiya min al-Qurūn". This work was finished on 25 Muharram 1218 A.H. = 18 May 1803 A.D.<sup>(31)</sup> It is in one volume, in 469 folios. "The size of this MS is 315 x 237, 222 x 138 mm, 232 - Occidental paper, white, slightly greyish, medium thick, rough, black and red ink. Titles, numbers, important individual words and underlinings are in red ink. The volume has an occidental red leather binding with a golden stripe at the edge of the spine, a rich gold decoration on the spine and two golden lines as margins".<sup>(32)</sup>

This MS is in the author's own handwriting. The title and his name are mentioned in the heading and on the spine in golden letters. The title and the name of the author are in the foreword in full.

This MS v, the master copy, is the MS on which my edition is based, for the following reasons:

- (1) This MS is the oldest MS of the five MSS of DUR., written by the author himself.
- (2) It was consistently written in good readable naskhī.

(3) The author Yāsīn wrote it for the Wālī of Baghdad, Wazīr 'Alī Pasha as is obvious from the preface,<sup>(33)</sup> and the annex<sup>(34)</sup> which contains the *qasida* presented to this Wālī.<sup>(35)</sup> Also the author writes in his QUR. the following statement: *نم قدم علي باشا - والي بغداد - الى الموصل ، ونزل غربيها واقام ستة ايام ، وفي يوم السبت اول صفر رحل علي باشا من الموصل وتوجه الى بغداد ، وكنت قبل رحيله اهديت له كتابي الدر المكنون في اثار الماضية من القرون ، فدخل في القبول وارسل لي مائتين قرش فرحمة (sic) الله تعالى ودخل بغداد.*<sup>(36)</sup>

(4) MS v is a complete work; no material appears to be missing, whereas the other copies have many omissions.

(5) The condition of this MS is very good; it is beautifully laid out and is also well bound.

(6) It is written largely without vowel signs or diacritics. Each line contains about 17-19 words while each page contains about 23 lines.

(7) There are numerous orthographical errors. The author made a lot of grammatical mistakes, and MS p has therefore on occasion been preferred; all instances are noted in the Apparatus Criticus.\*

## 2. The Paris MS (p)

This MS is preserved in the Biblotheque Nationale in Paris, and bears the number 4949 in the section Arabe. It is copied in naskhī, and its size is 37, 5 x 24 centimetres.<sup>(37)</sup> It consists of 670 pages which appear to have been numbered in Arabic by the copyist; i.e. 335 folios

---

\* This point will be discussed at length in the following pages. (See Supplement on Methods and Conventions used in the editing DUR. 1 and DUR. 2).



which appear to have been numbered later in Roman numbers, with 31 lines in each page, about 20-22 words to the line. It was copied by the hand of Muḥammad b. Mallā As'ad al-Shahīr bi Nainawī, who dated this MS on Monday, 18 Rabī' II 1297 A.H. (38)

This copy is based on an original MS which was completed on 25 Muḥarram 1218 A.H. = 18 May 1803 A.D., as the copyist describes in his transcription of his annex written on the last page of the MS. (39)

Despite some smudging on three pages (ff. 21b, 89b, 142a), this MS is generally well preserved. The handwriting of MS p is of a normal type, but is neither Naskhī nor proper Ruq'a. The writing is small and the words are closely juxtaposed so that the whole text of MS p appears to be a continuum; the verses of the text however are differentiated from the prose as we have already seen in MS v. The text of MS p is written without vowel signs. In general, this MS is written with care and the copyist has corrected several grammatical errors of the author.

In the margins, the copyist has written the years, mentioned verbally in the text, as numerals.

In this MS, we also see some words split between two lines:

e.g. **فيها** , the wāw appears at the end of one line, while **فيها** appears at the beginning of the next line. We find words starting at the bottom of one page and finishing at the top of the next page, such as: **و/كان** (cf. p MS, pp.517-8); **و/طالت** (cf. ibid., pp.521-2); **و/غرق** (cf. ibid., pp.524-5); **و/تقدم** (cf. ibid., pp.586-7).

On the other hand, this MS is the only copy known to have been used regularly by scholars and historians this century. It seems that

this copy was purchased by the Biblotheque Nationale of Paris from the French Vice-Consul in Mosul, Mr. N. Siouffī. <sup>(40)</sup> This copy was one of his main sources in compiling his book: "Notes historiques et explicatives sur les inscriptions de la ville de Mossoul". <sup>(41)</sup> Its title in Arabic is: "Maǧmū' al-Kitābāt al-Muharrara 'alā Abniyat Madīnat al-Mawsil". <sup>(42)</sup>

(In Iraq, at present, historians have used photocopies of this Paris MS in Mosul and Baghdad).

b. MSS of DUR 11.

(3) The Berlin MS (Bn)

This MS is preserved in the Staatsbibliothek of Berlin, and bears the number 9485. <sup>(43)</sup> The beginning of this MS is missing. How much is missing of the beginning before folio No. 1, we can not be sure. Probably 10-20 folios.

This MS seems to be without a title; it is referred to as Tārīkh and attributed to Yāsīn Efendi al-'Umārī. <sup>(44)</sup> It is an incomplete copy in 434 folios, with 25-44 lines in each page, and about 10-20 words to the line.

This MS Bn seems to have been written by the author himself. The condition of the MS is not good and many pages are smudged; also several paragraphs, verses, passages and notes were written in the margins of Bn by the author himself. In addition to that a considerable number of lines, words and names are illegible in the later pages of Bn.

There are numerous errors, mainly grammatical mistakes made by the author himself. At the end of this MS, three pages were slightly damaged. <sup>(45)</sup> In the text of Bn, some paragraphs have been moved forward. — Material, prose and verse, has been added to the main text of Bn in the

margins by the author Yāsīn. It is important to note here that the author frequently either corrected or made numerous additions to the MS Bn. Both corrections and additions can be seen in the margins of Bn itself. The corrected portion was assigned a letter which had a corresponding letter in the margin indexing the correction, such as ط or ح or ه etc. The additions and corrections always ended with ص or صح (correct). The verses in the text are differentiated from prose as we have already seen in MSS v, p.

The additions and comments in the MS Bn are genuine annotations of the author of DUR. There is also much original information, poetry and events ... etc., in particular during the eighteenth century which is the last period covered by DUR. It appears that a relative of the author Yāsīn, named Muḥammad al-'Umarī used this MS and worked through it, making notes in its margins.<sup>(46)</sup> It seems that MS Bn was probably owned by Muḥammad al-'Umarī.

As we have already mentioned, some folios are missing from the beginning of Bn. Some other folios are missing too. They are as follows: The folios are missing following folio 10 (years 176-188 A.H.); one folio following fol. 14 (years 209-213 A.H.); two folios following fol. 33 (years 308-316 A.H.). The rest of MS Bn is complete. The author suddenly stops in the year 1226 A.H. = 1811 A.D., without a real conclusion to Bn or annex.

It was clear that the title of MS Bn, owing to the fact that the MS is loose and the first folios are missing, has been erroneously named on the first additional fly-leaf of the MS as ( تاريخ ياسين اندى العبرى ), which is obviously given by the Staatsbibliothek.<sup>(47)</sup>

The pages of MS Bn concerned with the years 1114-1196 A. H. were left with spaces intended by the author himself, for possible additions which indeed can be found in some earlier years. The spaces vary in length as is shown in the table below:

Tab. No. VIII : The spaces left in MS Bn

No.	The Year	No. of Spaces	No. of fol.
(1)	1144 A. H.	1	364b
(2)	1142 A. H.	1	366b
(3)	1148 A. H.	2	367 a-b
(4)	1150 A. H.	1	368b
(5)	1151 A. H.	1	369a
(6)	1152 A. H.	1	369b
(7)	1153 A. H.	1	369b-70a
(8)	1154 A. H.	1	370a
(9)	1158 A. H.	1	373b
(10)	1162 A. H.	1	375b
(11)	1163 A. H.	1	376b
(12)	1164 A. H.	1 big	377b
(13)	1165 A. H.	1 "	378a
(14)	1166 A. H.	1	379a
(15)	1169 A. H.	1	380b
(16)	1174 A. H.	1	384a
(17)	1175 A. H.	1 small	385b
(18)	1176 A. H.	1 "	386b
(19)	1177 A. H.	1 "	387a
(20)	1178 A. H.	1 "	387b
(21)	1179 A. H.	1	388a
(22)	1190 A. H.	1 "	399a
(23)	1196 A. H.	1	403b

The MS Bn contains a large number of errors mainly grammatical. The MS is written in bold letters at the beginning, but the letters are small at the ends of the pages. Vocalisation is not used. There are many local colloquial and Turkish words; many words appear illegible and other words and phrases appear to be crossed out or omitted.

MS Bn appears to be an original MS of DUR. 2, for the following reasons:

- (1) Examination of MS Bn makes it clear that it is written by the author Yāsīn himself.
- (2) MS Bn appears older than the other two MSS in the family of DUR. 2. All the additional material which appears written in the margins of MS Bn are found in the texts of MSS B and BR.
- (3) The text and title of MS Bn led me to recognise the hitherto unidentified MS Bn as the second original MS of DUR. 2 written by Yāsīn al-'Umarī himself eight years after his DUR. 1.
- (4) Comparison of MS Bn with the original MS of DUR. 1, and also with other works of Yāsīn, makes it clear that the text of MS Bn is an original text of DUR. 2.
- (5) The roots of the style, structure and subjects in this MS are related to the original MS of DUR. 1.

#### 4. The First British MS (B)

This MS is preserved in the British Museum Library<sup>(48)</sup> and bears the number MCCLXIV = (Add. 23.313).<sup>(49)</sup> It contains 468 folios, with 27-34 lines to the page; about 10-15 words to the line. MS B was transcribed by 'Abdul-Rahmān al-'Umarī b. Aḥmad al-Khaṭīb al-'Umarī b.

Khairullāh al-Khaṭīb al-'Umarī b. Maḥmūd al-Khaṭīb al-'Umarī b. al-Shaikh Mūsā al-Khaṭīb al-'Umarī b. al-Hāj 'Alī b. al-Hāj Qāsim al-'Umarī al-Hanafī al-Mawṣilī, <sup>(50)</sup> who dated this MS the afternoon of Friday 23 Dhul-Qa'da 1235 A.H. = 1820 A.D. in Mosul. <sup>(51)</sup> It seems clear that the copyist of MS B started his transcription directly after Yāsīn's death. <sup>(52)</sup> The copyist spent one year finished the copying of MS B. He started his work on Friday Dhul-Qa'da 1234 A.H., as he relates in the following statement: *تم الكتاب . . . . يوم الجمعة بعد الظهر في ثلاث وعشرون من شهر ذى القعدة المبارك من شهر سنة خمس وثلاثون ومائتين والـف من الهجرة النبوية . . . وكان الابتداء به في مثل هذا الشهر المبارك ايضا يوم الجمعة من سنة اربعة وثلاثون ومائتين والـف فكان بين الابتداء والختم مدة سنة كاملة لكن عوائق عاقبتنا بها مدة ثلاثة اشهر* <sup>(53)</sup>.

The catalogue of Oriental Manuscripts in the British Museum wrongly records that this codex was written by the grandson of the author <sup>(54)</sup> whereas we know from the Nisba mentioned above that the copyist was the grandson of Muḥammad Amīn, a brother of Yāsīn. At the end of MS B there is an addition which tells us about the creation of the world, taking up the final six pages; <sup>(55)</sup> it is possibly the work of the transcriber himself. It must be mentioned here that this additional fragment is not included in the present edition of DUR.

Throughout MS B the handwriting is poor, and it is clear that the copyist was no calligrapher. The words in MS B were written in a large hand, gradually becoming smaller and more compressed. It seems that the text of MS B was written in stages. It is devoid of vowel signs throughout. It also appears that the text of MS B was written without care,

and the copyist has made a lot of mistakes in Arabic grammar, orthography and idiom. The verses of the text are not distinguished from the prose, as is in the case in MS BR.

MS B is definitely based on an original MS of DUR 2 (Bn). The copyist did not mention that, but after examining MS B, we discovered that this copy was transcribed literally from MS Bn with some variations in orthography. A careful examination of the text of MS B leads us to see that all the additional material, prose and poems which appear in the margins of MS Bn are found in the text of MS B, but with some errors such as the misplacing in the text of such passages. (see Apparatus Criticus).

The text of MS B, also enables us to read many words which appear illegible or omitted at the end of MS Bn. On the other hand, the preface of MS B is very important to us. It forms the key of this research. It enables us to work out the basic structure of all the DUR. MSS. It also confirms that MS Bn is the original MS of DUR. 2, despite the fact that the beginning of MS Bn is missing. In this MS, we see many words split between two lines (i.e. الوالي); الوا appears at the end of one line, while لي appears at the beginning of the next.

The variations of MS B and the different readings are together given in the Apparatus Criticus, but in general, it is necessary to mention that the copyist of MS B has his own orthographical grammatical and stylistic peculiarities in writing. We shall explain that at length in the following pages.

It is evident that the copyist of MS B transcribed DUR. 2 faithfully, but was deficient in his Arabic grammar, orthography and idiom.

## 5. The Second British MS (BR)

This MS is preserved in the British Museum Library.<sup>(56)</sup> It bears the number MCCLXIII = (Add. 23.312).<sup>(57)</sup> MS BR contains 398 folios, with 20 lines in each page; about 18-20 words to the line.

This MS is somewhat enigmatic. It bears neither date of copying, nor the name of its copyist. It was written in the nineteenth century.<sup>(58)</sup> Half of the last page of the colophon of this copy appears to have been torn away and replaced with plain paper.<sup>(59)</sup> MS BR is in very good condition. It seems that it was beautifully transcribed during the second half of the last century, by a copyist who was also a calligrapher. The words are small but clear. It appears that the aim of the copyist was not to produce a faithful copy of DUR. 2, and the result is a distorted work which has been labelled DUR. 2. This copy is a MS of the family of DUR. 2; the copyist does not mention on which MS of DUR. 2 he based his transcription, but it seems clear that MS B was the basis of this malformed copy.

After examining the text of this copy, we discover that MS BR possesses the following distinguishing qualities in writing:

- (1) Distortion
- (2) Conciseness
- (3) Omission
- (4) Bias against the author
- (5) Unfaithful copying
- (6) Additional comment

The analysis of these critical points means that MS BR differs from the other two sisters of DUR. 2, MSS Bn and B. It means also that



MS BR is not a real copy of DUR. MS BR was found, after examination, to be a distorted form of the original as it contradicts events recorded in DUR. 2.

The structure of MS BR is similar to that of other MSS of DUR. 2, insofar as it contains a multiplicity of events, poems, and biographies under each year, a phenomenon already observed in the comparison of the structures of DUR. 1 and DUR. 2.

From the Apparatus Criticus, it becomes obvious that MS BR is very different from the original DUR. 2. The copyist of MS BR deliberately alters facts, events, years, dates, numbers ... etc. in many paragraphs and passages of DUR. 2. He has also transposed many phrases and omitted many words, phrases and verses. Some paragraphs have been abridged, and there are many inaccuracies in his use of numbers.

The text of MS BR is unreliable. It contains a large number of historical errors. Any critical appreciation of this MS must conclude that it lacks objectivity, and in any study involving the use of MS BR should necessarily involve reference to the two other MSS of DUR. 2. The inaccuracies and distortions then in MS BR are such that the material therein canvassed should be used with caution.

The nature of the inaccuracies indicate that the copyist was a Mosuli Adīb, related to one of the Ashrāf families who had been opposing the 'Umari's in Mosul since the sixteenth century. A common distortion of names is represented by the copyist's replacing e.g. Rafāda or Rawāfiḍ by Shī'i's, or by omitting the word Rafḍ completely. The copyist himself also intrudes his own comments on individuals mentioned in the text.

Furthermore, the historical records which are contained in DUR., concerning the conflict between the Ottoman and Persians have been abridged. (cf. the historical accounts of the siege of Mosul by Nādir Shah, in MS Bn and MS BR; see Apparatus Criticus, pp. 889-897). The local conflict between the 'Umari's and Ashrāf in Mosul appears to have been totally ignored by the copyist of MS BR.

MS BR itself has a large number of errors, mainly grammatical mistakes made by the copyist. Also, many lines in this MS appear to have been omitted - by haplography, or deliberate omission. Many numerals referring to weights, finances, years, etc. have been changed. The copyist of MS BR writes the years numerically above the written numbers, such as:

<sup>٢١</sup> ( سنة تسعمائة واحد ~~ى~~ وعشرين )      <sup>٩٤</sup> ( سنة الف ومائة واربع وتسعين )

(omitting the hundreds and thousands in his figures).

The copyist of MS BR sometimes replaces the actual year writing ( سنة تسعمائة واثنين وخمسين ) and ( سنة تسعمائة وخم ~~س~~ وخمسين ) , instead of, e.g. ( سنة تسعمائة واثنين وخمسين ) and ( سنة تسعمائة وخم ~~س~~ وخمسين ). Thus the events and material of the year 952 A.H. are confused with the events and material of the year 951 A.H. The same happens with the events and material of the year 955 A.H. They appear to be written under the year 954 A.H.

When recording events of the year 950 A.H., for example, the copyist would record some events and then mention the year, rather than mention the year at the beginning. Hence some events of the year 950 A.H. were wrongly included under events of the year 949 A.H.

Orthographical and Grammatical Peculiarities of the DUR. MSS.

Section d)

DUR. and its MSS, like all those of the author's works, have the following peculiarities in spelling:

1. MSS of DUR. are not vocalised.
2. The letter alif is not always marked with hamza or madda.
3. The letter alif is nearly always omitted from words, such as ثنائية and ثنائية . The alif has been supplied in the present text and the Apparatus Criticus.
4. The letter alif in the word ابن , is often omitted from proper names.
5. In the MSS of DUR. alif tawīla is always used where alif maqṣūra should be used; compare الوزارة العظمى with الوزارة العظما , and وافتى with وافتى , and واستدعى with واستدعى ... etc.; MSS Bn, B sometimes have الى for الى .
6. In the MS B superfluous alifs are found passim; e.g. بالعساكر instead of بالعساكر , بالموصل instead of بالموصل , استولى instead of استولى . ذلك instead of ذلك ... etc.
7. MSS Bn, B, there is regular omission of alif in such cases as خذوا for خذوا , اخبروا for اخبروا ... etc.
8. alif is omitted from some words in MS B, e.g. اوئل for اوئل ... etc.
9. In MSS v, Bn, B, القرايا or القراى occurs regularly for القرى , whereas in MS p القرا occurs instead of القرى .
10. In the DUR. MSS, alif is regularly omitted from the first word in a two-word compound when the first normally ends with alif and the second begins with alif, e.g. ذا الحجة for ذا الحجة ... etc.

11. MSS v, Bn, B regularly omit alif from some words such as  
ثلاث for ثلاثين , ثلث for ثلاثين etc.
12. MSS v, Bn, B regularly have الصلاة for الطلوة .
13. Hamza in MSS is regularly either: a) replaced by Yā' as in the  
case of تسعائة for تسعماية , قائل for قائل ,  
النواى for النواي , especially in MSS v, Bn, B; or b)  
omitted after the alif of prolongation - الف المد - ,  
such as in the case of القضاء for القضا or القضا .
14. In the MSS Bn, B and BR, sometimes hamza is omitted where  
there should be one, e.g. فوادى for فو'ادى , رشا for  
رشا' ... etc.
15. The copyist of MS B regularly varies his placing of hamza in  
relation to alif as in the case of شيا' or شيا' or شيا'  
for امراة for امرة , فجاة for فجات ; شينا for  
شينا' .
16. The hamza which the copyist of MS B uses, is occasionally enlarged,  
e.g. the words سوا' for سوي . بدا' for بدو . This  
copyist sometimes arbitrarily adds hamza, e.g. القضاء for القضاء .
17. MSS Bn, B and Br regularly use Tā' Ṭawīlā ( ت ) for Tā' marbūṭa  
( ة ), such as قراة for قراة , القضا for القضا ... etc.
18. MSS v, Bn, B sometimes use Yā' Ṭawīlā ( ي ) for Tā' marbūṭa as  
in the case of الدولي for الدولة , الحالي for الحالة  
... etc. These differences are due to local dialect variations of  
the author and the copyists.
19. MSS v, p, Bn and B sometimes use the old Turkish scripts, as in  
the case of Tā' Ṭawīlā instead of Tā' marbūṭa. e.g. تربت for  
... etc. شوكنة for شوكت , حياة for حبات , غاية for غايت , ترنة

20. In MSS p, B, the letter Jīm ( ج ) is written uniformly for ch ( چ ) which is common in the other MSS.
21. MS BR sometimes uses the letter Ṣād ( ص ) instead of the letter ḍād ( ض ), e.g. القاضي for القاضي , الفاضل for الفاضل ... etc. It seems then that the copyist of MS BR does not spell the Arabic ḍād correctly (possibly indicating Kurdish origin).
22. MSS v, Bn, B often substitute the letter ḍād ( ض ) for the letter Zā' ( ظ ), e.g. الظاهرة for الظاهرة, نظم for نظم . ... etc.
23. MS Bn regularly omits Yā' mawṣūla ( يـ ) from some words, e.g. عظم for عظيم , سلم for سليم ... etc.
24. MS BR regularly omits the letter wāw ( و ) from the word وفيها which introduces the paragraphs in text. فيها is used as a paragraph marker in MS BR; on occasion, however, the copyist uses only the letter wāw instead of وفيها (omitting فيها ).
25. MS B sometimes makes an addition such as — in such words as عن for عن . Also in MS B the word بکریکی regularly appears as بکلریکی .

The grammatical and orthographical peculiarities of all MSS of DUR. have been mentioned in the Apparatus Criticus.

### Conclusion

#### Section e)

This concludes the study of the MSS upon which the present edition of DUR. by Yāsīn al-'Umārī is based. It can be seen then that there are two distinct versions of the work but that DUR. 2 is sufficiently close to DUR. 1 not to merit separate edition, DUR. 1 being found in MSS v and p and DUR. 2 in MSS Bn, B and BR. The text as presented in the edition is DUR. 1 and based on MS v.

NOTES

- (1) See MANH., fol. 2a.
- (2) See NISA., p.104.
- (3) Ibid., p.127, p.131.
- (4) D. al-Chalabī, Makhtūtāt ... , p.141.
- (5) Brock., loc. cit. (See Chap. II, n.1).
- (6) See Ṣ. al Jalīlī's preface to GHAR., p.4.
- (7) Baghdādī, op.cit., 2/512 (See Chap. II, n.1).
- (8) Zirkilī, op.cit., 9/155 (See Chap. I, n.5).
- (9) Yasū'ī, op.cit., p.31 (See Chap. I, n.4).
- (10) See Nāẓim al-'Umarī's preface to his photocopy of DUR., MS of Paris, p.2.
- (11) See S. Daiwachī's introduction to MUN., p.16.
- (12) See the Arabic translation of Longrigg, op.cit., p.336 n.1, (see Chap. II, n.1).
- (13) See R. al-Sāmārā'ī's introduction to NISA., p.13.
- (14) See I. Ra'ūf's introduction to ZUB., p.23.
- (15) See P. Kemp, op.cit., pp.235-6 (see Chap. I, n.6).
- (16) See Chap. 2, n.32 .
- (17) al-Malik al-Mu'ayyad Ismā'īl, al-Muskhtasar fī Akhbār al-Bashar, al-Maṭba'a al-Husainiyya , Miṣr (no date).
- (18) See Chap. 2, n.62.
- (19) See Chap. 2, n.65.

- (20) MAN., vol. 1, pp.308-9.
- (21) Cf. ibid., p.43.
- (22) See Chap. 2, n.34.
- (23) DUR. 1, MS v, fol. 1b.
- (24) NISA., p.104.
- (25) Ibid., p.127.
- (26) Ibid., p.131.
- (27) DUR. 2, MS B, fol. 2a.
- (28) See al-Chalabī's preface to ZUB., p.35.
- (29) See M. al-Jalīlī's preface to his copy of MANH., p. 1a.
- (30) This MS has only been mentioned by Helen Loebenstein, see her index, op.cit., pp.202-3 (see Chap. II, n.1).
- (31) See DUR. 1, MS v, fol. 468b; or present Text, p.510.
- (32) Helen Loebenstein, loc. cit.
- (33) See DUR. 1, MS v, fol. 3a.
- (34) See ibid., fol. 468a-b; or present Text, pp.509-10.
- (35) Text, loc. cit.
- (36) QUR., fol. 82a.
- (37) E. Blocket, op.cit., p.44 (see Chap. II, n.1).
- (38) See DUR. 1, MS p, fol. 335b; or Apparatus Criticus, p. 1188 .
- (39) Loc. cit.



- (40) Niqla Yusof Siouffi, the French Vice-Consul in Mosul (5 Dec. 1889 - 30 March 1893). He was born in Damascus 12 April 1829, and died in Ba'abda, the Lebanese village 20 Jan. 1901. See Mayer, Li. A., Bibliography of Muslim Numismatics, London, 1939, pp. 87-8.
- (41) E. Blochet, op.cit., p. 44.
- (42) See Majmu', ed. by S. Daiwachi, Baghdad, 1956.
- (43) See Alhwardt, op.cit., IX/92-3.
- (44) Loc. cit.
- (45) See DUR. 2, MS Bn, fols. 433b-434b.
- (46) Cf. Apparatus Criticus .
- (47) Cf. Alhwardt, op.cit., IX/92.
- (48) The MS carries the note 'Purchased of Mrs. Taylor April 1860'. It is suggested tentatively that this could have been the wife of a Major Taylor, a British Resident in Baghdad in the early part of the 19th century, mentioned by S.H. Longrigg, op.cit., p. 261, 270; see also H.A. Layard, Nineveh and its Remains, ed. by H.W.F. Saggs, London, 1970, p. 1, 18-19, 31, 35.
- (49) See "Catalogus Codicum Orientalium qui in Museo Britannico Asservantur, Pars Secunda Codices Arabicos", Amplectens II, pp. 577-8.
- (50) See DUR. 2, MS B, fol. 468b; or Apparatus Criticus, p. 1240 .
- (51) Loc. cit.
- (52) See above, Chap. No. I.
- (53) DUR. 2, MS B, fol. 468b; or Apparatus Criticus, p. 1240 .
- (54) Cf. "Catalogus Codicum Orientalium ...", II/578.

(55) See DUR. 2, MS B, fol. 469a-b.

(56) This MS was also purchased by Mrs. Taylor. See above note 43.

(57) "Catalogus Codicum Orientalium ..." , II/578.

(58) Loc. cit.

(59) See DUR. 2, MS BR, fol. 398b.

## CHAPTER FOUR

### THE TEXT OF DUR

## The Peculiarities of the Text

### A. The name of DUR

#### Section a)

1. The Latin translation of the Arabic title for al-Durr al-Maknūn fī al-Ma'āthir al-Mādiya min al-Qurūn, is: "Margarita recondita de Saeculorum Praeteritorum monumentis".<sup>(1)</sup>
2. The English translation of this title is: "Hidden pearl concerning the glorious deeds of past centuries".
3. The author Yāsīn presented this title in many forms; in the following quotation from DUR, he tells us why he named it DUR.: "الدر المكنون في المآثر الماضية من القرون ، لجمعه الغزير وما احتوى عليه من الفضل الكثير".<sup>(2)</sup>
4. In GHA. and MANH., the author omitted the ال from المآثر "الدر المكنون في مآثر الماضية من القرون".<sup>(3)</sup>
5. In QUR., the author named DUR.:
6. "الدر المكنون في آثار الماضية من القرون".<sup>(4)</sup>  
It seems that آثار is an error for مآثر because the meanings of the two words are different.
7. In NISA., the author only mentions "الدر المكنون".<sup>(5)</sup>
8. In MS B DUR. is entitled: "كتاب در المكنون تأليف ياسين ابن خير الله الموصلي".<sup>(6)</sup>
9. In MS BR, DUR. is entitled: "كتاب در المكنون في مآثر الماضية من القرون تأليف يس ابن خير الله ابن محمود العمري الحنفي الموصلي".<sup>(7)</sup>
10. In MS Bn, DUR. is entitled: "تأريخ ياسين افندي العمري".<sup>(8)</sup>

## B. The Sources of DUR.

In compiling DUR., the author appears to have based DUR. 1 and DUR. 2 on the following two main sources:

1. Historical and biographical books; and Contemporary chronicles and literary monographs.
2. Supplementary sources.
  - a) Oral traditions and verbal accounts.
  - b) Personal eye-witness accounts.
  - c) Personal experiences.

1. Historical and biographical books and Contemporary chronicles and Literary monographs

In his preface to DUR. 1,<sup>(9)</sup> the author enumerated the following historical and biographical sources which he used in compiling DUR. :

1 - Tārīkh al-Yāfi'i;<sup>(10)</sup> 2 - Tārīkh ibn al-Wardī;<sup>(11)</sup> 3 - Tārīkh ibn al-Athīr;<sup>(12)</sup> 4 - Wafiyāt al-A'yān by Ibn Khallikān;<sup>(13)</sup> 5 - Tārīkh ad-Duwal;<sup>(14)</sup> 6 - Tārīkh al-Yaman;<sup>(15)</sup> 7 - Tārīkh al-Haram;<sup>(16)</sup> 8 - The Himyān fī nukat al-'Umyān;<sup>(17)</sup> 9 - Kitāb al-Istī'āb;<sup>(18)</sup> 10 - al-Tabyān fī ansāb al-Qurashīyyīn;<sup>(19)</sup> 11 - Tārīkh al-Muhibbī;<sup>(20)</sup> 12 - Kitāb an-Nafha;<sup>(21)</sup> 13 - Kitāb al-Ṭabaqāt;<sup>(22)</sup> 14 - Kitāb al-Rawḍ al-Nadīr;<sup>(23)</sup> 15 - Kitāb Manhal al-Auliya';<sup>(24)</sup> 16 - Kitāb Marāṭi' al-Ahdāq;<sup>(25)</sup> 17 - Tārīkh Na'imā.<sup>(26)</sup>

The author follows this list by saying: "as well as other historical books."<sup>(27)</sup>

The contents of the first half of DUR., covering the first eight Islamic centuries, are taken from Ibn al-Athīr, Ibn al-Wardī and Yāfi'ī; while the contents of the ninth and tenth centuries (A.H.) which are marked by the presence of many biographies are taken from Tārīkh al-Muḥibbī (Khulāṣat al-Athar ...) . Other biographies of earlier centuries are taken from Ibn Khallikān. The Ansāb of the Qurashī's of the first century of Islam is taken from Kitāb al-Tabyān. The Akhbār of Yaman is taken from Tārīkh al-Yaman., while the Akhbār of Mecca is taken from Tārīkh al-Haram and Muḥibbi (= MUH.). Other biographies are taken from the Kitāb al-Tabaqāt and the Ḥimyan. Some events which took place in Mosul during the 16th century are taken from his brother Muḥammad Amīn in his MAN.

After examination of the present text, it appears that the author briefly recorded the historical material of MUH. In this case, MUH. is considered as the main source of Yāsīn's material which deals with the 16th and 17th centuries. Through comparison of DUR. with MUH. we find that Yāsīn sometimes alters some titles, names and material, for example, MUH. uses ( القسطنطينية ) as the name of Constantinople, whereas Yāsīn always substitutes for it ( اسلابول ). The historical material of the Ottomans is based on MUH. and Tārīkh Na'īmā. But the Akhbār relating to Iraq and Mosul during the 18th century which is rare and valuable, is original with exception of some biographical material and rare poetry taken from MAN. and RAW.

## 2. Supplementary sources

It appears that the sources mentioned by the author, do not cover

all the material contained in DUR. 1 and DUR. 2. Yāsīn lived to be 76 years, from the second half of the 18th century, until early in the 19th century. In DUR. he provides invaluable information about his period and about preceding periods. His supplementary sources can be divided into 3 elements: a) the oral traditions and verbal accounts; b) personal eye-witness accounts; and c) his personal experiences.

#### a) The Oral traditions and verbal accounts

The author relied on stories of men who witnessed the earlier events during the first half of the 18th century, and was also an avid inquirer after information from his immediate acquaintance. The following phrases from DUR. illustrate the oral nature of much of his material.

1. He says: <sup>(28)</sup> " ذكر بعض تلامذته قال ..... "
2. He says: <sup>(29)</sup> " ذكر لي والدي ، انه كان في ذلك الغلاء وعمره عشر سنين "
3. He says: <sup>(30)</sup> " ذكر لي من ائق به .... "
4. He says: <sup>(31)</sup> " ذكر لي شـيـخي .... "
5. He says: <sup>(32)</sup> " كذا ذكر لي ولده الصديق الفاضل .... "
6. He says: <sup>(33)</sup> " سمعت هذا من رجل من اهل الموصل ادرك بناؤه وقد كان عمره عشرة اعوام "
7. He says: <sup>(34)</sup> " على ما ذكر لي من ائق به .... "
8. He says: <sup>(35)</sup> " على ما ذكر لي رجل من اهل اليمين من حضر الواقعة وسلم .. "
9. He says: <sup>(36)</sup> " هذا الذي سمعته ممن كان في ذلك الوقت موجودا وكان عمر الراوى (sic) القصة قريبا من المائة وكان اسمه موسى الهواجر اصله من العرب وهو بستاني في الموصل "

The author's account of the siege of Mosul by Nādir Shah

1156 A.H. = 1743 A.D., which is one of the most important events recorded

in this part of DUR., <sup>(37)</sup> is based on accounts of eye-witnesses. The author states: وفيها على ما قيل اذ لم اكن في الدنيا موجودا بل كان مولدي بعد رحيل طهماز بسنتين. <sup>(38)</sup>

#### b) Personal eye-witness accounts

The author tells us about many events which he himself witnessed, especially during the late years of the 18th century and early years of the 19th century. Instances of this are found in DUR.

For example:

1. <sup>(39)</sup> " وفيها ما شاهدته بعيني ..... "
2. <sup>(40)</sup> " فهرب الى الموصل واقام اياما ورايته يوما ..... "
3. <sup>(41)</sup> " خرجت من باب الطوب فرأيت ..... فسالت عنهم ف قيل ..... "

#### c) Personal experiences

It appears that Yāsīn had obtained a wide range of facts essential to local history, celebrities and events of which he wrote. In his text, the author frequently refers to some events in which he himself was involved, as he says:

- (1) <sup>(42)</sup> " وكنت في سوق الكبير ولما عدت الى داري ..... "
- (2) <sup>(43)</sup> " وكنت مرة حضرت معه ..... فسمعت منه هذا الحديث ..... "
- (3) <sup>(44)</sup> " وحال كتابتي لهذا التاريخ صار المتقال ..... "
- (4) " ورأيت ذلك الدقيق بعيني ، كنت في مجلس الامير  
مسعد الله بين الجليلي فجاء اليه  
الشمس التتار ومعه  
شمسي من ذلك الدقيق " <sup>(45)</sup>



### C. DUR. as History

The present text of DUR. in general is one of the most significant historical texts because of the light it sheds on an unknown period in the history of the Near-Middle East.

DUR. is an annalistic chronological work. It contains much material covering the 16th, 17th and 18th centuries. This work contains various literary forms, which reflect the variety of its contents. It is structured chronologically by individual years. The method of arrangement of the material of DUR. is systematic. The book in its two versions DUR. 1 and DUR. 2 is not divided into chapters or main chapters. It is effectively a book of chronicles, in which events are recorded in order of time. The material of each year is divided into paragraphs. There are a number of paragraphs under each year. Each paragraph begins under the heading **فيها**, which is written in red ink in all copies of DUR. Some paragraphs are small, consisting of one or two lines, but other paragraphs are larger, consisting of many lines with subsections of poetry. Each paragraph deals with a particular subject, but the subjects dealt with each year vary, as do names, titles, etc.

DUR. is distinctive as a work throughout, in that Yāsīn deals with a wider variety of subjects than any of his contemporaries among Arab historians. Unlike his contemporaries he showed a comprehensive interest in annalistic history, biographical material, chronicles and local history. For example, one of the most important chronicles appears in his record of fundamental events in modern history such as, the French Revolution and its impact on the Middle East, particularly the city of Mosul

as a trade centre between West and East. The author also presents the Akhbar of Napoleon Bonaparte in Egypt and Southern Syria. It appears that the author as an annalistic historian was not satisfied by collecting material merely to write a local history of Mosul and Iraq, or to record Arab chronicles, indeed his interest stretched beyond Iraq to the Ottomans and beyond.

The Ottoman expansions towards West Asia, East Europe and North Africa drew the author's attention and stimulated him to record economical, social and geographical information valuable to historians and researchers.

In fact, some historical ideas, novels and information in the biographical or chronicle fields of DUR. appear to be inferior in an intellectual sense to contemporary biographical works.

But the author seems to have obtained a wide knowledge of the personalities and events of which he wrote. He indicates the sources drawn upon. Also he shows to the reader the importance of being knowledgeable in history and why he is fond of it. He presents in ATH.

the following statement: اني لم ازل اطالع كتب  
(46) . التواريخ اذ هي عبرة للعالمين ونزهة للناظرين

In GHA., he states: ما زلت متولعا بجمع التواريخ حتى الف  
(47) . كتابي الموسوم بالدر المكنون في مآثر الماضية من القرون

In DUR. 1, he states: اني كتب التواريخ  
(48) . منذ نشأت

In NISA. he states: اني كتب التواريخ المتقدمة  
(49) . اطالع كتب

The above quotations simply show his background and his appreciation of history while the qualities of his works show the readers his knowledge of history.

On the other hand, the author unlike many other Iraqi historians, gives not only the year of the event, but frequently the month and sometimes the day as well.

The author Yāsīn was not an official writer or historian of the Mosul government, but was part of Mosul culture under the Jalīlī's during the 18th century; also he is considered as one of the important figures of Arab Culture in the Ottoman Middle East.

#### D. The literary forms

DUR., as a literary work, is also important because it shows the development of the Arabic language, poetry and style in the period with which it deals. This work seems to consist of various subjects and literary forms which consisted of a mixture of contents. The author preserves for us a great variety of forms of Arabic poetry composed during the 16th, 17th and 18th centuries.

In his DUR. the author compares and quotes many ḡaṣā'id and maḡāṭī' which often appear to be written as samples of biographical works. The subjects of the poetry are: madḥ, ghazal, ṣūfī poetry, Rithā', Fakhr, Tawāshīh, Hija' and poetic-history ... etc.

The author himself as a poet, composed various poems, mostly madḥ and poetic-history, which was very common in the literary life of

Mosul during the age of Yāsīn. The events, whether significant or trivial, were always recorded in historical poetry of which the author was a master. Most of his poetry was scattered throughout DUR. and his other works and monographs.

### E. The Geographical Elements

In DUR., the plentiful regional information gives a good geographical and social picture of the Ottomans.

The author Yāsīn had not travelled at all, but in DUR. he recorded important geographical accounts. For example, he describes the Ottoman capital Istanbul. <sup>(50)</sup> Other information concerns cities, castles, towns, rivers, villages ... etc. most of which are known. A few of them are still unknown, particularly those relating to the European part of the Ottoman Empire, which forms a considerable proportion of the geographical material.

In DUR. there are many instances in which attention is drawn to the capricious weather, for example: rain, snow, hail, wind, ... etc., all of which bear on farming, cultivation of land, the state of the Tigris, etc., flooding during spring, and freezing over during winter, and such climatic changes as lead to famine, plagues and storms of locusts.

DUR. shows the effect of the above mentioned on the social and economical life of the regions around Mosul, and other regions of Iraq.

The author not only deals with Arabs and Turks, but also treats the affairs and events of many other peoples in modern history. The following table shows the names of peoples as they appear given by the author in DUR. :

Tab. No. IX : Peoples and Countries

<u>No.</u>	<u>The name given by the author</u>	<u>The people</u>	<u>Country or Area</u>
1.	الاردل al-Ardal	Transylvanians	Transylvania
2.	الارنوؤوت al-Arna'ūt ) or الارناؤوط al-Arnā'ūt ) or الارنود al-Arnūd ) or الازنور al-Aznūr ) or العونوط al-'Arnūt	Albanians	Albania
3.	الاغوان al-Aghwān	Afghans	Afghanistan
4.	الافرنج al-Ifranġ ) or الفرنج al-Firanġ ) or الفرنسه al-Firansa )	French	France
5.	الافلاق al-Aflāq	Walachians	Walachia
6.	الانكروس al-Ankrūs	Hungarians	Hungary
7.	الانكريز al-Angarīz ) or الانكريس al-Angarīs )	English	England
8.	اهل القرم Ahl al-Qarm	Crimeatians	Crimea
9.	الاوزبك al-Ūzbik	Uzbeks	Uzbekistan
10.	البابا al-Bābā ) or البيبا al-Babā ) or الببيه al-Baba )	Bābān-Kurds	N. Iraq
11.	البغدان al-Bughdān	Moldavians	Moldavia
12.	البوسنه al-Būsna	Bosnians	Bosnia
13.	البهدينان al-Bahdīnān	Bahdīnān Kurds	N. Iraq
14.	الترك al-Turk ) or الاتراك al-Atrāk ) or الروم al-Rūm )	Turks	Turkey
15.	الجراكسه al-Charakisa) or الجركس al-Chīrkas )	Circassians	Caucasia
16.	العجم al-'Ajam ) or الفرس al-Furs )	Persians	Persia-Iran

<u>No.</u>	<u>The name given by the author</u>		<u>The people</u>	<u>Country or Area</u>
17.	الكرد or الاكراد or الكراد	al-Kurd ) al-Akrād ) al-Karad) (=Ldv)	Kurds	N. Iraq
18.	الكرج	al-Kurj	Georgians	Georgia
19.	الليبه	al-Liyya	Polish	Poland
20.	المان	al-Mān	(probably Spanish)	Spain
21.	المسقوف or بنو الاصفر	al-Musqūf ) Banu al-Aṣfar)	Russians	Russia
22.	البيان	al-Miyan	German	Germany
23.	النمجه or النمسه	al-Nimcha (T.) al-Namsa (A.)	Austrian	Austria
24.	الهرسك	al-Harsik	Herzegovinians.	Herzegovina

F. Economic Information

DUR. contains many accounts of the varying economic circumstances of the Ottoman Empire in the capital Istanbul and the eastern provinces. But economic details recorded of the city of Mosul and the province occupy an important place in the text, and in the additional material supplied in the Apparatus.

The author of DUR. gives a full description of the economic crises, their outcome, and the way in which they influenced society. As a historian, the author does not treat of the economic approaches of the Ottomans, but deals for example with the fluctuation of prices in markets and the causes, such as natural disasters, insofar as they influenced agriculture and thus lead to undernourishment, famine, disease and many deaths. Natural disasters meant scarcity of food, hence a sharp rise in food prices and consequent malnutrition and disease, or starvation, both of which lead to death which in turn reduced the availability of manual labour, which in its turn reduced revenue.

In DUR. there are many examples of events and economic circumstances in which the author took special interest, as can be seen from his description of the conditions of markets, especially in Mosul. It seems that the author followed the changes in prices in the markets year after year, such as, the prices of meat, wheat, raisins ... etc. Moreover the author recorded the wages using contemporary Ottoman currency.\* e.g. dirham, qirsh, aqchah, masriyyah ... etc.

---

\* See n. 112.

The local economic events in DUR., especially aims at showing how the economy in Iraq and Mosul was linked to some other Ottoman-provinces in Anatolia, Syria and Iran, through the strategic routes by land and river. Mosul was the centre of these routes; it was regarded as the northern natural gate of Iraq, by virtue of its links with Iran in the East through Kurdistan, with Anatolia in the North, and with Syria and the Mediterranean Sea in the West through Jabal Sinjār; its links with Baghdad and the Arabian Sea in the South afforded by the Tigris completed a convergence of trade routes which assured Mosul's pre-eminence as a cosmopolitan trading city.

This strategic location of Mosul attracted merchants to settle in it, while the farmers settled on the outskirts.



## A Study of the Historical Contents

### Section b)

#### Introduction

After examination of historical material of the text of DUR., we can divide it into two parts:

- 1) The first part which is beyond the scope of this present edition, and covers the years 1-919 A.H. It is an annalistic work, and the material is not original. The author does not deal with the classical history, the creation, the early prophets, and pre-Islamic periods. In DUR., the author only deals with Islamic history. He writes of the early centuries of Islam briefly, and directly bases this part of his work on sources, such as Ibn al-Athīr. <sup>(51)</sup>
- 2) The second part of DUR., which is presented here, covers the years 920-1226 A.H. = 1514-1811 A.D. This part is more informative, in that it is more comprehensive in its contents. The author here deals with the more recent centuries of the Near-Middle Eastern and Eastern European Ottoman history.

The contents of DUR. as embodied in this thesis can be categorised under the following headings:

- a. Biographical material.
- b. Annals.
- c. Contemporary chronicles.
- d. Local history.

a. Biographical material

In this field, the author compiled many detailed biographies of the prominent people who lived during the Ottoman period. DUR. 1, (the present text) and the additional material in the apparatus taken from DUR. 2, contain a great number of biographies, particularly of those Arabs who lived during the 17th century. But dealing with the 18th century, the text of DUR. (and the apparatus) contain many biographies of Mosuli's. In this case, DUR. is distinguished as the first book to record such a great number of Mosuli biographies, especially contemporaneous with the author.

The biographies in general, appear short in DUR. 1, whereas they are much longer in DUR. 2. Some biographies are brief while others are long, and much more detailed. Whereas the brief biographies confine themselves to names and deaths, the more detailed biographies present an interesting variety of information on their subjects. The biographies, particularly of 16th and 17th century subjects are usually arranged in alphabetical order by year.

In writing these biographies, the author did not limit himself to one particular stratum - *Ṭabaqa* - of Society, by confining himself to the intellectual or wealthy. His biographies contain: Sultans, Shahs, Grand-Vizirs, Vizirs, Wālīs, Ashrāfs, Katkhudāhs, Qādīs, Muftīs, Khaṭībīs, landowners, merchants, A'yān, historians, 'Udabā', 'Ulamā', poets, Sūfī's, singers, ... etc. He also took a special interest in describing the contemporary role of women, especially in Mosul .

The author did not limit himself to presenting biographies of Iraqi personalities alone. His biographies include Turks, Persians, Shāmī's, Hijāzī's Egyptians, Kurds, Yamanīs, et al. The author also deals with several dynasties including the Ottomans, and the Shahs of Persia; Safavids, Afsharids, Zends and Qājārīs;<sup>(52)</sup> of whom the Ottomans and the Safavids primarily claimed his attention.

By comparing DUR. with the author's other works, it becomes obvious that DUR. was the main source of KHU., QUR., and SAIF. Yāsīn simply quotes the biographies, the qualities of the subjects and their background; he gives the reader examples of the activities of these subjects, mentioning their books, poetry, official works ... etc. In DUR., the main source of the biographical material of the 17th century, is al-Muḥibbī. The two secondary sources of the biographical material of the 18th century are: MAN. and RAW.; most of the biographical information of this century and the beginning of the 19th century are based on the author's own knowledge, attitudes and personal connections.

#### b. Annals

DUR. as an annalistic work, contains material for a historical study of the Ottoman period of the Near-Middle East, Eastern Europe and North Africa during the 16th, 17th and 18th centuries.

The present text of DUR. as well as passages in the Apparatus, describes in detail the events of the years 920-1226 A.H. = 1514-1818 A.D., the middle age of the Ottoman Empire. The author records events of the 16th century when the Ottoman Empire reached the summit of its power,

and was then capable of sustaining wars with the Europeans and Persians even during the 17th and 18th centuries.

The annalistic material of DUR. is useful to historians and orientalist who are studying politics, economics, the social life of the Ottomans, the Arab lands in principle, and the neighbours of the Ottomans in Europe and Asia in war and peace, the more so in that it seems that the author's annalistic historical accounts of Ottoman affairs, internal and external, have remained ignored by the historians in the West and East during the 20th century. The contents of DUR. are predominantly Ottoman in nature.

Study of the annalistic material of DUR. clearly reveals the author's attitude towards the Ottomans; for example, he attacks and criticizes those who were against al-Islām (= against the Ottomans), the enemies of the Empire, such as Russians, Persians, Hungarians, Austrians, Germans, French ... et al., and also those enemies who were living inside the Empire such as Wahhābīs, Yazīdīs and some Arab and Kurdish tribes.

In DUR., the author not only deals with the Ottoman dynasty and peoples such as Arabs and Turks, but also treats of the affairs of many dynasties and peoples outside the Empire such as Persians, Georgians, Crimeans ... etc.\* His work also covers other peoples inside the Empire who were living in separate societies in West Asia, East Europe and North Africa, such as the Durūz, Yazīdīs, ... etc.

---

\* See Tab. No. IX.

The annalistic history of DUR. is important in that it takes into account, the political relations and ideological-economical conflicts between the Ottomans, and the nations they dominated as well as neighbouring states in Asia and Europe.

### 1. The conflict with Iran

The author gives important historical material on Iran during the 16th, 17th and 18th centuries, and its foreign political relations with the Ottomans in Iraq, Eastern Anatolia, Azerbaijan, Armenia, Turkistan and Caucasia.

In DUR., the author describes the skirmishes, battles and the cold war between the Shi'ite Safavids and the Ottomans since the rule of Shah Ismā'īl I. In dealing with the Ottoman-Persians conflict which covers four centuries of the modern period, the author Yāsīn mainly presents important events during the reigns of Shah Ismā'īl I, 907-930 A.H. = 1501-1524 A.D.; Shah Tahmāsp I, 930-984 A.H. = 1524-1576 A.D.; Shah Muḥammad Khudābanda, 985-996 A.H. = 1578-1588 A.D.; Shah 'Abbās I, 996-1038 A.H. = 1588-1629 A.D.; Nādir Shah, 1148-1160 A.H. = 1736-1747 A.D. ... etc.

The strategic wars between the Ottomans and Persians took place in Iraq. \*

During the 16th century, Sultan Salīm I, the Grim defeated Shah Ismā'īl I at Chāldīrān in 920 A.H. = 1514 A.D., and went on to take Tabrīz the Safavid capital; his son Sultan Sulaimān I, the Magnificent also passed through Tabrīz to conquer the whole of Iraq. (53)

---

\* See S.K. al-Jamīl, article No. 2, pp.16-21.

During the 17th century, Shah 'Abbās I of Persia, wrested away Baghdad as well as the Armenian border provinces from the Ottomans. (54)

One year prior to his death, Sultan Murād IV led his armies against the Persians and restored Baghdad to Ottoman rule in 1049 A.H. = 1640 A.D. (55)

During the 18th century, Nādīr Shah harassed the Eastern front, and attempted to occupy Iraq and many other eastern provinces on many occasions.

## 2. Eastern Europe

In his DUR., the author notes several important events of the long conflict between the Ottomans and the Eastern-European powers.

The author presents an account of Ottoman military movements when the Empire was at the peak of its power in the 16th century. After the 16th century, the Ottoman Empire entered a period of defeat and decline. (56) The only exception was the Ottoman campaign against the Hapsburgs, when the grand-vizīr Qara Muṣṭafā Pasha led his armies and besieged Vienna, the Austrian capital in 1683 A.D. (57)

One of the more remarkable facts is that Eastern-Europe, including the Balkans, Hungary, the Greek Islands and Albania managed to remain under Ottoman rule for such a long period. The administration imposed by the Ottomans on the provinces and tributary states was political, and economical. The European Ottoman provinces were: Rumeli, Silistre, Timshivar, Eğri, Budin, Kanije, Cezayir (= Greek Islands), and Bosna. The tributary states were: Bogdan, Erdel, Eflak and Ragusa.\*

---

\* See Map No. II , also Tab. No. IX.

DUR. is a main source in Arabic for the history of the Ottoman Europe and the material presented by the author is of two types, namely the history of events by year, and the biographies of leading figures. The Arab historians have made limited use of this material.

The author of DUR. gives furthermore much information of the capitals in Eastern Europe such as Belgrade, Budapest (Būd̄n or Badūn in DUR.)\* and Vienna (Bīch in DUR.).\*\* The Eastern European castles and settlements ... etc. that were, under Ottoman rule, with the exception of Vienna, and which have been mentioned by Yāsīn in DUR., provide a promising field for future research.

The historical background: The Balkans, being part of Eastern Europe, came under Ottoman rule, in the 14th century. During the 15th century, Sultan Muḥammad I, the conqueror, had conquered Constantinople in 1453 A.D. <sup>(58)</sup> After the fall of the Byzantium Empire, the Ottomans quickly overran most of the regions lying to the south of the Danube. Then, during their golden age in the 16th century, the Ottomans subjugated Hungary under the leadership of the Sultan Sulaimān I, the Magnificent, who attacked the Austrian capital Vienna for the first time in 1529 A.D. <sup>(59)</sup>

The author of DUR. describes all the campaigns of this Sultan who conquered Belgrade in 1521 A.D., <sup>(60)</sup> Rhodes, in 1523 A.D., <sup>(61)</sup> Budapest - the Hungarian capital in 1526 A.D. <sup>(62)</sup> (after the great battle of Mohacs 29th August, 1526), and besieged Vienna in 1529 A.D. <sup>(63)</sup> Also, he

---

\* See App. No. I, n.p. 9, ll. 7-8.

\*\* See App. No. I, n.p. 15, L. 9.

conquered Corfu (Kūrfus in DUR.)\* the Greek Island in 1537 A.D. (64)

Sultan Sulaimān I died during the siege of Szigetuar (Sigetwār in DUR.)\*\* on the night of 6/7 September, 1566 A.D. (65)

In DUR., the author describes other important events of the Ottoman expansions in Eastern Europe, and presents an account of the conflicts and the treaties with the European powers such as Austria, Hungary and Poland. Those events took place during the reigns of Sultan Murād III, 1524-1595 A.D.; Sultan Muḥammad III, 1595-1603 A.D.; Sultan Aḥmad I, 1603-1617 A.D.; Sultan 'Uthmān II, 1618-1622 A.D.; Sultan Muḥammad IV, 1648-1687 A.D.; Sultan Muṣṭafā II, 1695-1703 A.D.; Sultan Aḥmad, 1703-1730 A.D.

### 3. The Mediterranean

In DUR. the author presents historical information about Ottoman naval affairs in the Mediterranean. He records several events and describes the Ottoman conquest of Cyprus, Crete, the Greek Islands and North Africa during the 16th century.

### 4. Russia and Poland

In DUR. the author records several items of interest concerning Ottoman relations with Russia and Poland during the 17th and 18th centuries. DUR. is a good source of information about the conflicts with the Russians (the Musqūf in DUR.)\* while the topic of Poland (Bilād al-Liyya in DUR.)\* is less accessible.

\* See App. No. I, n.p. 42, L.11; see also, ibid., n.p. 20, para. 1.

\*\* See ibid., n.p. 36, L.2.



### c. Contemporary Chronicles

The last part of DUR. contains much information presented in the form of contemporary chronicles. Some of these events are described at length while others receive only a brief mention. The events recorded range from anecdotes about relatives and friends (and the author writes in a personal and intimate manner of these), to famine, earthquakes, fires and plagues affecting the author, as well as astrological curiosities.

Most of the events reported in DUR. concern political groupings, military matters, changes of official personnel, news from the capital Istanbul ... etc. Much of this information is geographically extended through the cities and provinces, such as Cairo, Damascus, 'Akkā, Baghdād, Mecca, Mosul, Alexandria, Beirut, Tehran ... and even in Eastern Europe and Anatolia.

#### 1. The French Revolution

The most important chronological events were recorded by the author, as indicated by the following account of the French Revolution and its impact on the Mosul economy: وفيها مبدأ ظهور

الفرنسيه قتلوا ملكهم وجعلوا الملك بين ستة رجال وخالفوا دينهم فهرب ملكهم والتجأ الى قرال الانكروم\* وجرت لهم حروب وانقطع الجوخ عن بلاد الاسلام وغلا حتى بيع الذراع الفرنسي بستين درهما ولما رأوا الفرنسيه ان الانكروم والنمسه يحاربوهم فخافوا الغلا فقتلوا كل عجموز وشيخ كبير واعلى ومريض (66).

Yāsīn appears to be the only contemporary Arab historian who makes reference to the French Revolution. Later on in DUR., he describes the French campaign led by Napoleon Bonaparte against the Ottomans Egypt in 1213 A.H. = 1789 A.D.

---

\* See Tab. No. IX.

## 2. Napoleon Bonaparte

The author calls him ( برنہ بول ).<sup>(67)</sup> According to DUR., the author gives the important historical narrative dealing with how Napoleon Bonaparte entered Egypt,<sup>(68)</sup> and records the conflict between the French army and Ottoman Mamlūks of Egypt,<sup>(69)</sup> and shows how the French army expanded its operations to the East, and how the conflict spread to include Palestine and Southern Syria, by giving a detailed account of this period.<sup>(70)</sup> The author Yāsīn gives us further information which outlines the results of the important events determining the new political relations between the Ottoman Empire and other European powers, for example, the alliance between Britain, Russia and the Ottomans against France.<sup>(71)</sup>

## 3. The Ashrāf of Mecca\*

In his chronicle, the author adequately covers contemporary events, movements, and provincial forces in the eastern Arab region, the Syrian and Iraqi provinces, also al-Hijāz, Yaman and other parts of Arabia. He talks about the Ashrāf of Mecca, their effect on the whole of al-Hijāz, their relationships among themselves, their relations with the central Ottoman government in Istanbul, also their central Sharifian religious administration of al-Haram in Mecca.<sup>(72)</sup> The author's attitude to them was one of acceptance.

## 4. The Syrian provinces

In his chronicle, the author gives rich material for the history of the contemporary powers in Syria. His main historical material is covering the period of Ahmad Pasha al-Jazzār. Some other information can be found

---

\* See App. No. III, Gerald de Gaury, Rulers of Mecca, pp.288-293.

about the situation in the Syrian provinces, and Lebanon. The author gives some information about the Ma'anids and Shihābīs of Lebanon. But he includes other valuable historical information about Damascus, Tripoli, Adana, Aleppo, Gaza and Jerusalem. (73)

##### 5. Salafiyya and Wahhābiyya

The accounts dealing with the Wahhābīs describe them as a rival religious movement in the modern history of Islam. In DUR. the author presents a spread of little-known information. He recorded views, ideas and events concerning the external challenges the Wahhābīs in Southern Iraq and Northern Arabia. The most important elements of the author's reports concerning the Wahhābīs are to do with the roots of the movement which go back to the Salafiyya as a religious - intellectual movement in Mosul. When Muḥammad Ibn 'Abdul-Wahhāb, the founder of the Wahhābīs came to Mosul, he was a young student and remained a student throughout his stay in Mosul. (74) He witnessed the ideological skirmishes between the Mosuli Salafīs as a liberal and the Ṣūfīs as a conservative grouping. The Salafiyya religious-intellectual movement was founded by Mallā Aḥmad Ibn al-Kūlā. (75) Muḥammad Ibn 'Abdul-Wahhāb was definitely influenced by Ibn al-Kūlā and his new ideas. The author as a conservative ṣūfī, was against the ideas of the Mosuli Salafiyya, and later on against the ideas of the Wahhabīs. The Wahhābiyya movement was disseminated by tribal influences, while the Salafiyya movement remained secluded inside the walls of Mosul. The author explains the Wahhābī external relations with the Ashrāf of Mecca, and describes in detail the Wahhābī tribal raids in Southern Iraq, and the Baghdādī military operations against them. (76)

## 6. Istanbul

According to the contemporary chronicles presented in DUR., the author gives several reports of many foreign and internal affairs concerning the capital Istanbul, as for example the policy of the Porte, the power of Sultans, Vizirs and government rivals, struggles between the military forces and the Janissaries ... etc. which abounded in the Ottoman Empire during the 18th century. There are several accounts in DUR. of events concerning the city of Istanbul. For example, the author gives several pieces of information about the fires of Istanbul. Each fire broke out in the central part of the city, after which hundreds of deaths occurred. Most of the fires were the result of accidents or carelessness.

## 7. Iraq

In DUR., the author presents rich historical material of the contemporary powers in Iraq. His main historical material covers the period of the Jalīlīs in Mosul during the 18th century, and much important information can be found about the Mamlūks of Baghdad and rulers of other parts of Iraq. He lists all those who ruled the Iraqi provinces, and we gain an appreciation from his chronicle of the nature of Iraqi society, of the city-dwellers and their social classes of the Arab tribes, of the Kurds in the north, and of other minorities such as Turkumāns and Yazīdīs.\*

## d. Local History

In DUR. the subject of the Jalīlī dynasty is vital if one is to fully

---

\* For details about "Iraq", see the following pages, pp.128-157.

appreciate the local history of Mosul, the history of Iraq and the history of local powers in the Middle East during the 18th century. The author traces events from the early rise of the Jalīlīs, and describes the city of Mosul and its regions. He furnishes a detailed account of its economy and social life, and he tells of the Turkish rulers who governed Mosul from time to time during or before the Jalīlī era.

### 1. Local Powers in the Middle East during the 18th century

The Jalīlī house was not the only focus of local administrative power nor did it represent the only policy in the Arab Middle East. Other examples of such concentration of power were the local governors of many provinces. Examples of these are: the short rule of 'Abdullāh Chatachī in Diyar-Bakr;<sup>(77)</sup> the rule of A'yān's in other southern and eastern parts of Anatolia.<sup>(78)</sup> The Dey's and Bey's in Ottoman North Africa.<sup>(79)</sup> The Mamlūk Beys in Egypt.<sup>(80)</sup> The Zīdāniya and Aḥmad Pasha al-Jazzār in Southern Syria and Palestine.<sup>(81)</sup> The Mamlūk Pashas of Baghdad after the rule of Ḥasan Pasha and his son Aḥmad Pasha.<sup>(82)</sup> The 'Azam's in Damascus.<sup>(83)</sup> The Bābān Kurds of Qara-Julān.<sup>(84)</sup> The Shihābī's of Mount Lebanon.<sup>(85)</sup> The Bahdīnān Kurds of 'Amādiyya<sup>(86)</sup> ... all of whom had greatly limited the Ottomans dominion by weakening the structure of Ottoman provincial administration.

These centrifugal forces had three sources on which all the Arab provinces of the Ottoman Empire relied, and which they cultivated in order to strengthen their own position during the 18th century.

The three sources common to the Arab provinces of the Ottoman Empire were:

- (1) Family bonds (Dynastic houses), such as: Ashrāf of Mecca; 'Azams

in Damascus; the Jalīlīs in Mosul; and Zīdāniyya in Galilee.

(2) The Mamlūk household, such as: the Beys of Egypt; the Pashas of Baghdad; and Aḥmad Pasha al-Jazzār in Palestine.

(3) Religious and ethnic factions, such as: the Bābān's in Qara-Julān; the Bahdīnān's in 'Amādiyya; and the Shihābī's in Lebanon. (87)

## 2. Iraq

The final stages of DUR. are very important for the local historians. It contains a fair amount of records of rarely recorded events, subjects, names, and information all of which are useful for those studying the modern history of Iraq.

The text of DUR. and the additional material in the Apparatus on the historian's purpose, is the most useful and best source for the local history of Mosul during the Jalīlī's. For the historian of 18th and early 19th century in Iraq, the local history of Iraq in the 18th century to be found in DUR. is more important than any other historical source hitherto discovered. By virtue of the sheer size and content of DUR. the author Yāsīn is considered the only Iraqi historian to have written comprehensively in Arabic on his period of modern Iraqi history.

In DUR., there are several accounts of the political history of Iraq under direct Ottoman rule, and indirect Ottoman rule through the local governments during the 18th century, such as: the political rule of Ḥasan Pasha and his son Aḥmad Pasha, and the Wālīs of Baghdad, followed by the rule of eleven Mamlūk Wālīs;\* also, the Jalīlī's in Mosul and the Bābān family in Qara-Julān, (= al-Sulaimāniyya province today).

In addition to such local political history, there is a considerable amount of information on a whole range of topics in social affairs and the

---

\* See Tab. No. X.

Tab. No. X : The Wālīs of Baghdād during the Mamlūk's era

<u>Name of the Wālī</u>	<u>Status</u>	<u>Period of the rule</u>	<u>End of the rule</u>
1. Ḥasan Pasha	Ṣipāhī <sup>(a)</sup>	1116-1136 A.H. = 1704-1723 A.D.	(died)
2. Aḥmad Pasha Ibn Ḥasan Pasha	Ṣipāhī	1136-1147 A.H. = 1723-1734 A.D. 1149-1160 A.H. = 1736-1748 A.D.	1st Reign (died)
3. Sulaimān Pasha Abū Laīlā <sup>(b)</sup>	Mamlūk	1162-1175 A.H. = 1748-1762 A.D.	(died)
4. 'Alī Pasha Ibn al-'Ajamī	Mamlūk	1176-1178 A.H. = 1762-1764 A.D.	(killed)
5. 'Umar Pasha	Mamlūk	1178-1189 A.H. = 1764-1775 A.D.	(killed)
6. Muṣṭafā Pasha al-Ispīnakhcī	-	1189 A.H. = 1775 A.D.	(executed)
7. 'Abdullāh Pasha	Mamlūk	1189-1192 A.H. = 1775-1778 A.D.	(died)
8. Ḥasan Pasha	Mamlūk	1192-1194 A.H. = 1778-1779 A.D.	(escaped) <sup>(c)</sup>
9. Sulaimān Pasha the Great	Mamlūk	1194-1217 A.H. = 1779-1802 A.D.	(died) <sup>(d)</sup>
10. 'Alī Pasha Abāṭa	Mamlūk	1217-1223 A.H. = 1802-1808 A.D.	(killed)
11. Sulaimān Pasha the Little	Mamlūk	1223-1225 A.H. = 1808-1810 A.D.	(killed)
12. 'Abdullāh Pasha	-	1225-1228 A.H. = 1810-1813 A.D.	(killed)
13. Sa'id Pasha Ibn Sulaimān Pasha <sup>(e)</sup>	Mamlūk	1228-1234 A.H. = 1813-1818 A.D.	(killed)
14. Da'ūd Pasha	Mamlūk	1234-1247 A.H. = 1818-1831 A.D.	(deposed)
15. Qāsim Pasha al-'Umarī <sup>(f)</sup>	(Mosuli)	1237 A.H. = 1831 A.D.	(killed)
16. 'Alī Rīdā Pasha al-Lāz <sup>(g)</sup>	(Georgian)	1247-1258 A.H. = 1831-1842 A.D.	

Notes to the Tab. No. X.

- (a) He was from the European origin.
- (b) He was a son-in-law of Aḥmad Pasha Ibn Ḥasan Pasha.
- (c) He escaped from Baghdad, and died in Diyār-Bakr.
- (d) His Ketkhudā Aḥmad Pasha (Mamlūk) was killed.
- (e) He was son of Sulaimān Pasha the great.
- (f) He was Qā'im-Maqām of the Wālī. His full name is:  
 Qāsim Pasha Ibn Ḥasan Ibn Aḥmad Ibn 'Alī Abū - al-Faḍā'il  
 Ibn Murād Ibn 'Uthmān Ibn 'Alī Ibn Qāsim al-'Umarī al-Mawṣilī,  
 see Chap. 1, Tab. No. II.
- (g) He was appointed as Wālī of Baghdad, Baṣra Shahrāzūr, as well  
 as Aleppo; see Sulaimān Fā'iḳ, Tārīkh Baghdād, Baghdad 1962,  
 p.181. (اللاظ) or (اللاز) al-Lāz (T.): Name of a tribe, of  
 Georgian origin, inhabiting the country at the south-east corner  
 of the Black Sea; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1618.



economic life of Iraq during the same period.

By comparison with Baghdad and other Iraqi counties, DUR. offers more information about Mosul. In DUR. the author's records of local history during the 18th century cover the following topics:

- (1) The administration of the local governments.
- (2) The political relations with the central government in Istanbul.
- (3) The political relations among the Iraqi local powers, particularly the stronger two powers of Mosul and Baghdad.
- (4) The administration of Iraqi tribes by the two greater powers in Mosul and Baghdad.
- (5) Wars with Iran as a large part of the Ottoman-Persian conflict.
- (6) The social, cultural and economic life of Iraq.

### 3. The Local History of Mosul (The Jalīlī house)

#### (1) Introduction

The local Ottoman history of Mosul has generally been considered by modern academics to occupy a great position culturally, politically and militarily in the Ottoman history of the 18th century.

DUR. contains full details of the local history of Mosul during the rule of the Jalīlī dynasty under which the author lived. The historical material or the literary forms of this local history is completely independent as far as other local sources are concerned. The author does not base any local information of Mosul on any written sources except MAN. and RAW. He used only these two books and quoted only some biographical material from them. The remaining chronicles and biographical material appear to have been written by himself.

In his recording the local history of Mosul, he either was himself an eye-witness of the events or he had heard about them from other eye-witnesses.

## (2) Establishment

Although the Jalīlī's had lived in Mosul since the first half of the 17th century, they had been living before in Diyār-Bakr or Ḥiṣn-Kaifa. <sup>(88)</sup> The author of DUR. does not mention their origin, but through the Jalīlī's themselves we know that they belonged to the Taghlib, one of the famous Arab tribes who lived in the Jazīra of northern Iraq. The Jalīlī's only rose to power in 1726 A.D. = 1139 A.H., when Ismā'īl Pasha b. 'Abdul-Jalīl was appointed as Wālī of Mosul. <sup>(89)</sup> The author Yāsīn begins the history of the Jalīlī's with the period of Ismā'īl Pasha, but gives very little information about him and his period. <sup>(90)</sup> Ismā'īl Pasha ruled Mosul for only one year, and the Jalīlī's gradually gained more power and prestige. <sup>(91)</sup>

DUR. as one of the earliest sources to the period, gives the most complete accounts of the establishment of this dynasty in Mosul, their administrative role in many provinces in the eastern side of the Ottoman Empire, and their military efforts in campaigns against the Persians through Ḥāj Ḥusain Pasha b. Ismā'īl Pasha as Wālī of Mosul. The most important event recorded was when Ḥāj Ḥusain Pasha succeeded in his resistance against Nādir Shah and his armies, 300,000 troops, during the siege of Mosul 1156 A.H. = 1743 A.D. <sup>(92)</sup>

## (3) Ḥāj Ḥusain Pasha

This is the most recurrent name in DUR. Ḥāj Ḥusain Pasha was born in Mosul 1108 A.H. = 1696 A.D., <sup>(93)</sup> and performed the pilgrimage to

Mecca in 1132 A.H. = 1720 A.D. He was appointed as Wālī of Mosul for the first time in 1143 A.H. = 1730 A.D., when he was a Beylerbeyi when he was thirty five years old.<sup>(94)</sup> After about six months, he was appointed as Wālī of Amasiya. He returned to Mosul in 1144 A.H. = 1731 A.D. where he spent four years as Wālī (until 1148 A.H. = 1735 A.D.), during which period he obtained the Ottoman rank of Wazīr, given to him by the Wazīr 'Abdullāh Pasha Köprülü from the porte, when the latter was going through Mosul in 1147 A.H., to attack Nādir Shah near Erivan of Armenia, he bestowed upon Hāj Husain Pasha a robe of Wizāra.<sup>(95)</sup>

Hāj Husain Pasha did not rule Mosul continuously. He was appointed as Wālī of Mosul eight times, and only ruled Mosul for 13 years out of the total of 28 years between 1143 A.H. - 1171 A.H.,<sup>(96)</sup> and during the remaining 15 years, he ruled many other provinces, such as: Amasiya, Van, Erzurum, Kars, Adana, Sivas, Kutahya, Baṣra and Aleppo.<sup>(97)</sup>

Hāj Husain Pasha al-Jalīlī died in Mosul on 19 Dhul-Qa'da 1171 A.H. = 25 July, 1758 A.D.<sup>(98)</sup>

#### (4) Mosul and the conflict with Iran

The Jalīlī's of Mosul were in the centre of the Ottoman conflict against the Persians during the first half of the 18th century. They were acting the role of the Ottomans in Northern Iraq and Eastern Anatolia.

##### a. Role of Hāj Husain Pasha

(1) Hāj Husain Pasha, Wālī of Mosul and Aḥmad Pasha Ibn Hasan Pasha Wālī of Baghdad became allies. Their united armies occupied the city of Hamadān in Iran, 1136 A.H. = 1724 A.D.<sup>(99)</sup>

(2) Ḥāj Ḥusain Pasha participated with Aḥmad Pasha Ibn Ḥasan Pasha Wālī of Baghdad in the war against Shah Tahmāsp in 1144 A.H. = 1731 A.D. (100)

(3) Ḥāj Ḥusain Pasha defeated the Persians in their assaults against Mosul, under the leadership of Nargis Khan in 1145 A.H. = 1732 A.D., near Mosul. (101)

(4) Ḥāj Ḥusain Pasha and his local military force helped the Grand-Vizīr Ṭupāl 'Uthmān Pasha against the Persian campaign under the leadership of Tahmasp Qulī (Nādir Shah later); the second battle in which Ṭupāl was unsuccessful took place near Kerkuk, Northern Iraq in 1146 A.H. = 1733 A.D. (102)

(5) Ḥāj Ḥusain Pasha defeated Nādir Shah and his 300,000 troops during a great siege of Mosul, which resulted in a bloody battle between Mosul and the Persians in 1156 A.H. = 1743 A.D. (103)

(6) Ḥāj Ḥusain Pasha took part with the Wālī of Diyār-Bakr and the leader of Crimea in an attack on Nādir Shah and his Persian troops in 1158 A.H. = 1745 A.D. (104)

b. The Siege of Mosul as given in DUR.\*

The author of DUR. describes in detail, the rise to power of Ḥāj Ḥusain Pasha al-Jalīlī, and his conflict with the Persians, especially his role as Wālī of Mosul during the hard days of the siege of Mosul by Nādir Shah in 1156 A.H. = 1743 A.D. (105)

In his detailed account of the events of this siege, the author of

---

\* In his book, R. Olson did not use this account of the siege.

DUR. has presented very rich material. He describes Nādir Shah's military forces and the steps taken by the national local Mosul army in defence, his expedition through Northern Iraq, the number of soldiers, the political attitudes of the masses and the government, and the social conditions in Mosul which was facing one of the great powers in the East. The author Yāsīn explains the operations of defence in Mosul and the role of the Mosul people and their government. He also gave daily descriptions of the siege and the war between Mosul and Nādir Shah whose forces expended about 50,000 explosive missiles; also the role of the Wālī Ḥāj Husain Pasha, his brother 'Abdul-Fattāḥ, and his two sons Murād and Muḥammad Amīn; also the role of Husain Pasha al-Qāzūqchī Wālī of Aleppo and his 15,000 troops as well as the role of the 500 Sūrān Kurds with their leader Qūch Pasha, and the role of the whole Mosul people. Husain Pasha al-Qāzūqchī was appointed as Muḥāfiz of Mosul by the Porte. (106)

Nādir Shah's great attempts to occupy Mosul failed. Nādir Shah asked the victor Ḥāj Husain Pasha to send a diplomatic mission bearing the pact of surrender which was signed later between the two conflicting sides. (107)

After analysis of this account in DUR., it is clear that the author records in DUR. 2 the accounts of the siege in much more detail than he does in DUR. 1.

In DUR. 1 and DUR. 2, the author sheds light on the following important aspects of the siege: the local policy; the attitude of Aḥmad Pasha Ibn Hasan Pasha Wālī of Baghdad<sup>(108)</sup> ... and the outcome of the

siege and the violent and bloody battle; while the story of the siege by the author's brother Muḥammad Amīn in MAN. gives a record of the complete military operations of the war between the Mosuli's and the Persians. (109)

Mosul's victory against the Persians in the siege has particularly confirmed the prestige of the house of Ḥaj Ḥusain Pasha al-Jalīlī, whose descendants almost monopolized the office of Wālī of Mosul and other Ottoman provinces in general until the second decade of the 19th century.\*

### 5. Administration

This covers the nomination of the Wālīs in Mosul, Baghdad, Qara-Julān and Baṣra, as Iraqi provinces, as well as other Ottoman provinces; their names and the period of governing, also their political relations with the central government in Istanbul, and their administrative relations among themselves. The author Yāsīn gives full details of the administration in Iraq, he also deals with the rebellion against the Mamlūks of Baghdad by some Iraqi tribes in Southern Iraq. He describes the Wālīs of Mosul and their dealings with the Mamlūks of Baghdad, who were a strong power in Iraq; with the Kurds in Northern Iraq; with Yazīdīs in their province and with the people of the city of Mosul. (110)

In DUR. the author gives information about the administrative system and the military forces in Mosul.\*\* Also, he describes in detail each of the following Jalīlī rulers and their role in local and Ottoman history:

\* See App. No. 5.

\*\* See Tab. No. XI.

- (1) Ḥāj Ḥusain Pasha Ibn Ismā'īl Pasha al-Jalīlī.
- (2) Muḥammad Amīn Pasha Ibn Ḥāj Ḥusain Pasha al-Jalīlī. (Ghāzī).
- (3) 'Abdul-Fattāḥ Pasha Ibn Ismā'īl Pasha al-Jalīlī.
- (4) Sulaimān Pasha Ibn Muḥammad Amīn Pasha al-Jalīlī.
- (5) 'Abdul-Bāqī Pasha Ibn 'Ubaid Aghā al-Jalīlī.
- (6) Muḥammad Pasha Ibn Muḥammad Amīn Pasha al-Jalīlī.
- (7) Nu'mān Pasha Ibn Sulaimān Pasha al-Jalīlī.
- (8) Maḥmūd Pasha Ibn Muḥammad Pasha al-Jalīlī.
- (9) Sa'dallāh Pasha Ibn Ḥāj Ḥusain Pasha al-Jalīlī.

The author also presents many other Jalīlī figures famous in other fields, amongst them were: princes, administrators, landowners, literary men ... etc. Beside the Jalīlīs, the author describes other aristocratic families, officials and administrators in Mosul, together with their social, political and official roles in administration. It is necessary to mention here that the official language in Mosul was Arabic.

Tab. No. XI : The administrative and military structure of the Government of Mosul  
during the Jalīlī era

Qādī Anadolu

The Wali (Pasha) of Mosul

Khazandar

al-Mutasallim

Katkhudā

Dīwān al-Inshā'

Naqīb al-Ashraf

Muftī of Hanafī s  
Muftī of Shafī'ī s

Qādī

Ich Mihtir - Bāshi

Mihirkhāneh

Tātār - Aghāsī

Qunāq-Tātār

Akhūr-Aghāsī

Amīn of Jīzya

Agha of Kharaḥ

(The army)

Salhidār

Chukhadār Aghāsī

Ich aghāsī s

Bāsh-Dillī

Dālātiyyā

Tufangachī - Bāshi

Tufangachī s

Alāy-Bigī

Sibahī s

Aghā of Janissaries

(The Janissaries in Mosul)

Onunju (= Urta No. 10)

Yiyirmi-Yedi (= Urta No. 27)

Otuz-Bir (= Urta No. 31)

Ellī-Iki (= Urta No. 52)

Ellī-Sekiz (= Urta No. 58)



Glossary to Tab. No. XI

- Aghā of Janissaris (Yenigeri Ağāsī) : The chief officer of the Janissary corps.
- Alāy-Begī : A Colonel of the army.
- Ākhūr-Ağāsī : Lord of the stable.
- Bāsh - Dillī : The head of Dalatliyya group.
- Chūkhadār Ağāsī (Choqadar Ağāsī) : A special kind of foot equerry to the Sultan.
- İich - Ağāsī : Footman bearing a kind of iron rake with a long handle.
- İch Mihtir - Bāshī : The leader of a band of music.
- Ketkhudā : A steward agent representative of an organization to the government — (1) the deputy of a beylerbeyi or provincial governor; (2) the senior officer of a craft guild, representing the guild to the government.
- Khazandār : A treasurer.
- Mihtir-Khāneh : A military band in the suite of a prince.
- al-Mutasallim : The deputy lieutenant governor and tax collector for the Wālī.
- Qūnāq - Tatar : An official house of the government courier.
- Sibāhī : A cavalryman.
- Tufingachī (Tufengji or Tufekji) : A musketeer or a policeman.
- Tufingachī-Bāshī : The chief of the police attached to a Pasha.
- Tatār or Tātār (Tatār - Ağhasī) : The superintendent of government couriers.
- Urta : A regiment among the Janissaries.

## 6. The Economy

DUR. also deals with the economic and social life in Mosul during the Jalīlī era. The author mentions several economical events and information, summarized in the following points:

- (1) DUR. shows the origins of economic activity in several provinces, areas and cities which were linked with Mosul by the geographical trade routes.
- (2) It records comprehensively fluctuation and changes, (e.g. prices of commodities, or types of agricultural produce) year by year. Sometimes it deals with the causes of these fluctuations.
- (3) DUR. presents through local events in Mosul the formation of businesses among groups of local working people and the establishment of trade-unions. It goes into the effect of politics on the lives of trade-unionists. For example, the author Yāsīn mentions carnivals organised by trade-unions on political local or Ottoman occasions. (111)
- (4) The author of DUR. recorded all the famines and diseases in Mosul during the 18th century. He gave many examples and details of disasters he witnessed with his own eyes, through which he appeared to be vaguely critical of the rich who sometimes did not lend a helping hand to the suffering and afflicted poor, especially when the economy was in bad shape.
- (5) The author also took interest in recording natural events, such as, unaccountable phenomena, strange sidereal conjunctions and natural phenomena such as; fires, heavy rains, floods, violent winds, ice in the Tigris, droughts, earthquakes and thunderbolts.
- (6) The numerous epidemics which struck Mosul during the author's

lifetime are thus recorded here, detailed accounts are given about their effect on trade, markets, local financial policy in Mosul, and the role played by the rich in such policy.

(7) There is also detailed information given of food prices, victuals and sources of supply.

(8) The author gives some information about the city of Mosul, its buildings, bridge gates, walls, markets and its countryside.

(9) In DUR., the author mentions the weights which were used in Mosul during his life, such as: Qantār, Wazna Maṣlāwiyya, Wazna Baghdādiyya, Ardab, Huḡa and Waḡiyya. Also he mentions several kinds of Ottoman coin such as: Pāra, Qırsh, Ṣāgha, Miṣriyya and Aḡche.<sup>(112)</sup>

The above information gives us a vivid view of the economic life of Mosul during the 18th century.

#### 7. The Society<sup>(113)</sup>

In DUR. the author gives several important facts about the society of Mosul, the city and the province. He recorded useful material of social life in Mosul.

The society of the city of Mosul was made up of a mixture of Arabs, Kurds and Turks. The majority were Arabs. For trading reasons, several people from Syria, Jazīrat Ibn 'Umar, Diyār-Bakr, Sinjār, Mārdīn, Kurdistān and Takrīt had settled in Mosul during the 16th, 17th and 18th centuries. The old Arab society in Mosul contained all those emigrations. The language of Mosuli society was Arabic containing several Turkish, Kurdish and Aramaic words.

The old social classes in the city of Mosul appear clearly in  
DUR. There were:

- (1) The aristocratic families (rulers and landowners).
- (2) The merchants.
- (3) The 'Ulamā'.
- (4) The army.
- (5) The people of business, such as (Dabbāghūn, Sarrajūn, Saffārūn, Bannā'ūn, Haddādūn, Saqqā'ūn, Khayyātūn, ... etc).
- (6) The workers and poor people.

The majority of the people were Muslims. The Muslims were divided into Hanafīs and Shāfi'īs, but the majority were Hanafīs.

The minority of Christians were divided into Chaldaeans, Orthodox and Catholics. There were a minority of Jews in Mosul, but the author Yāsīn does not mention that.

The various people of the province of Mosul were settled in villages and small towns. They were divided into:

- (1) The Arabs
  - a. The Arabs of rivers.
  - b. The Arabs of al-Jazīra and deserts.
  - c. The Arabs of grassland.
- (2) The Chaldaeans.
- (3) The Kurds.
- (4) The Turkumans.
- (5) The Shabaks (Persian origin).
- (6) The Yazīdīs.

## 8. The Interior Affairs <sup>(114)</sup>

DUR. looks into the internal affairs of Mosul during the Ottoman period, such as the local conflict between the 'Umarī and Ashraf families since the 16th century.

The author seeks to explain the local conflicts and their events in the light of the confrontation of divergent political and military forces operating in Mosul province.

The author considers the local conflicts in Mosul during the Jalīlī era were an outcome of the problems of the Turkish Walī's in dealing with Mosul as well as the political divisions in the Jalīlī family itself and its relationship with the following:

- (1) The Turkish Wālīs.
- (2) The Janissary military forces.
- (3) The internal relationships within the Jalīlī family.
- (4) The Mosuli people.

Mosul during the Jalīlī era had witnessed many local conflicts which blazed against the Turkish Wālīs or the Janissaries on two fronts:

- (1) Madan which is situated in Eastern Mosul near the Maḍān quarter.
- (2) 'Irāq which is situated in Southern Mosul near the Bāb al-'Irāq quarter.\*

## 9. The Culture of Mosul <sup>(115)</sup>

DUR. contains useful material of the origins and history of culture and education in Mosul during the Jalīlī era. The author gives much detail on this subject. The author describes the old schools and mosques, schools and libraries founded by those engaged in private enterprise and their teachers and scholars.

---

\* See map No. III.

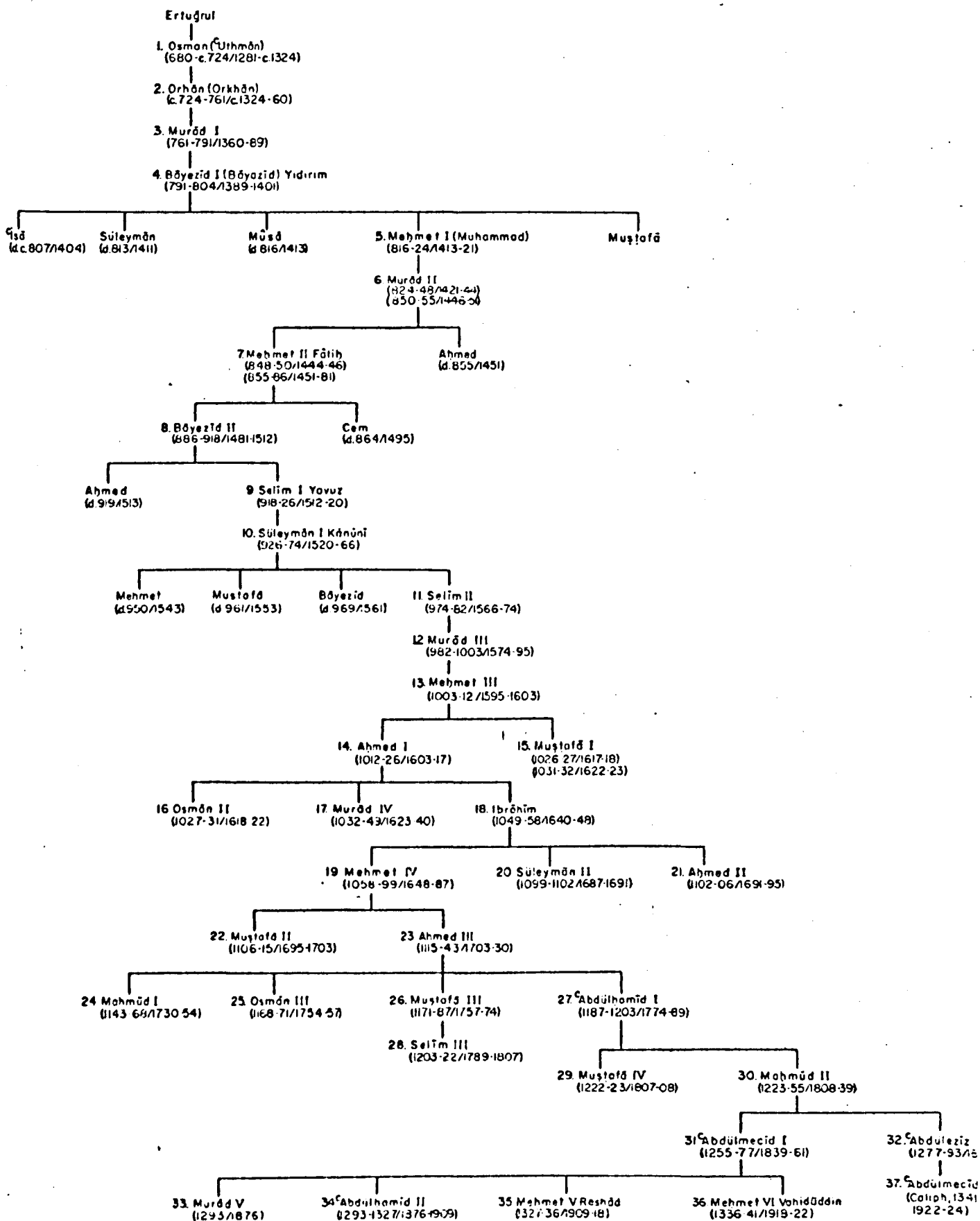
DUR. gives details of subjects that were taught and sources that were used by teachers. The authors, contemporary scholars (and near contemporaries), include some Baghdādī's, Halabī's and Kurds.

In his biographical material, the author presents many paragraphs of each personality of his own 'Umarī family, Jalīlī family and other representatives of 'Ulamā' and the 'Udabā' from other families.

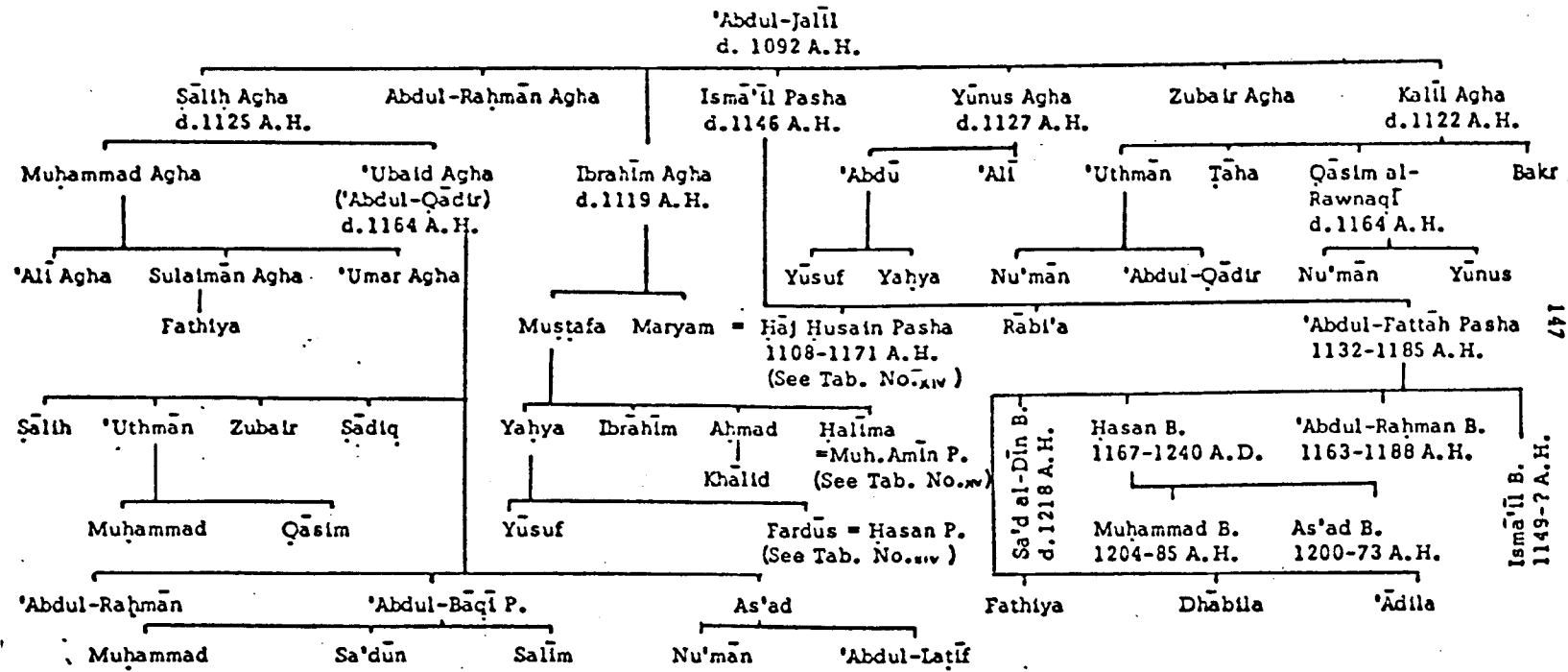
The poetry of Mosul during the 18th century contained in DUR. is original and genuine, produced by virtue of the high level of the literary life in Mosul under the Jalīlī's.

DUR. is considered as a main source of many samples, literary pictures and sketches, which may help the researchers and critics to clarify the popularity of poetry and prose in Mosul during the Ottoman period of Arab culture. It seems that Mosul was the main centre of that literary life and Arab culture in the Middle East.

Tab. XII : The Tree of the Ottoman Sultans



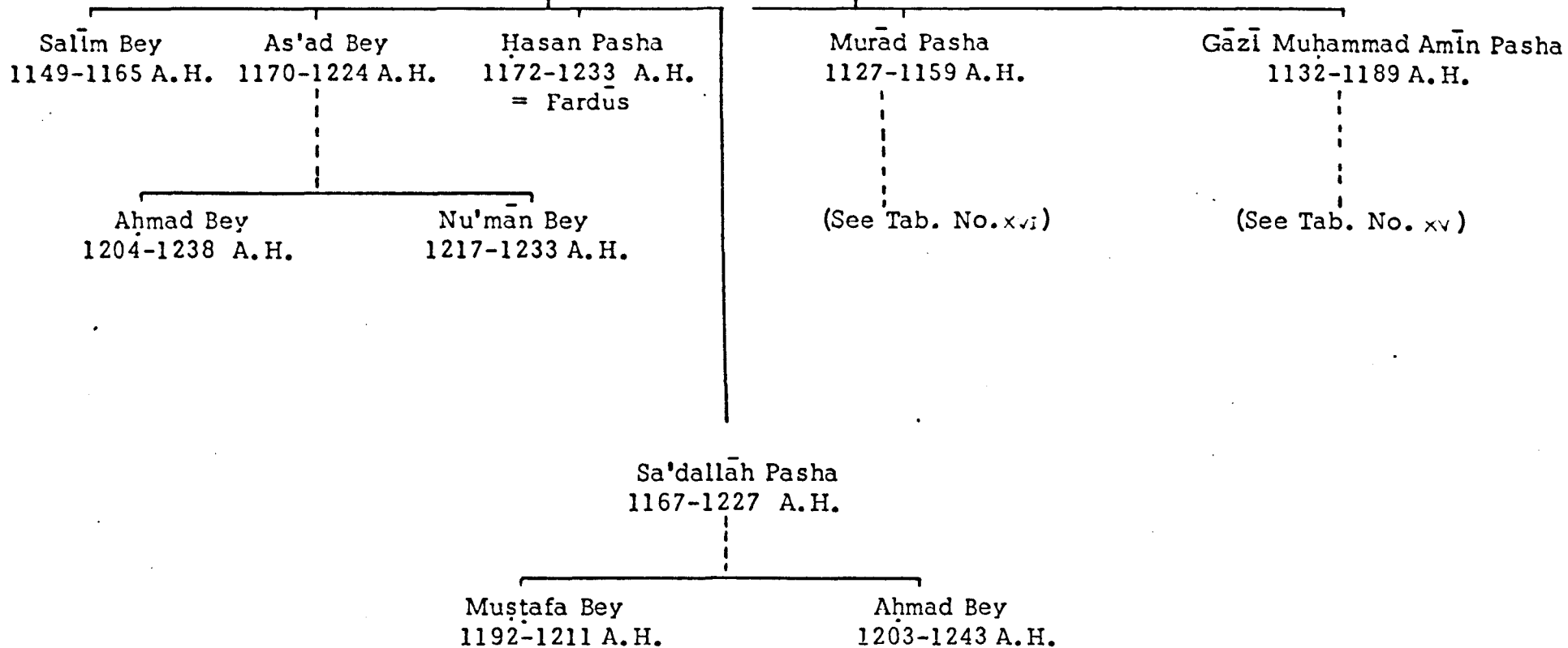
Tab. No. XIII : The Jalīlī Family



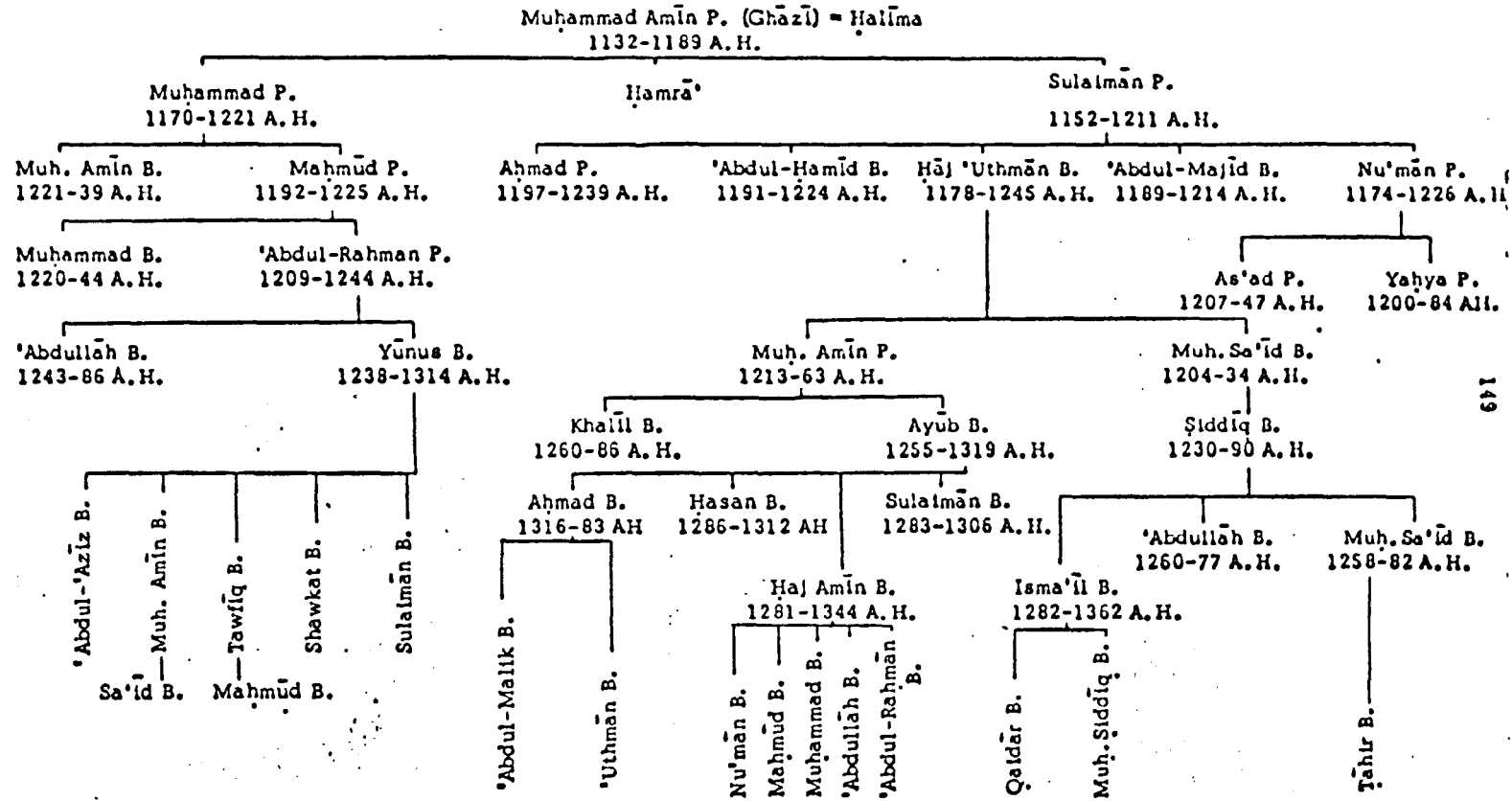


Tab. No. XIV : The House of Hāj Husain Pasha

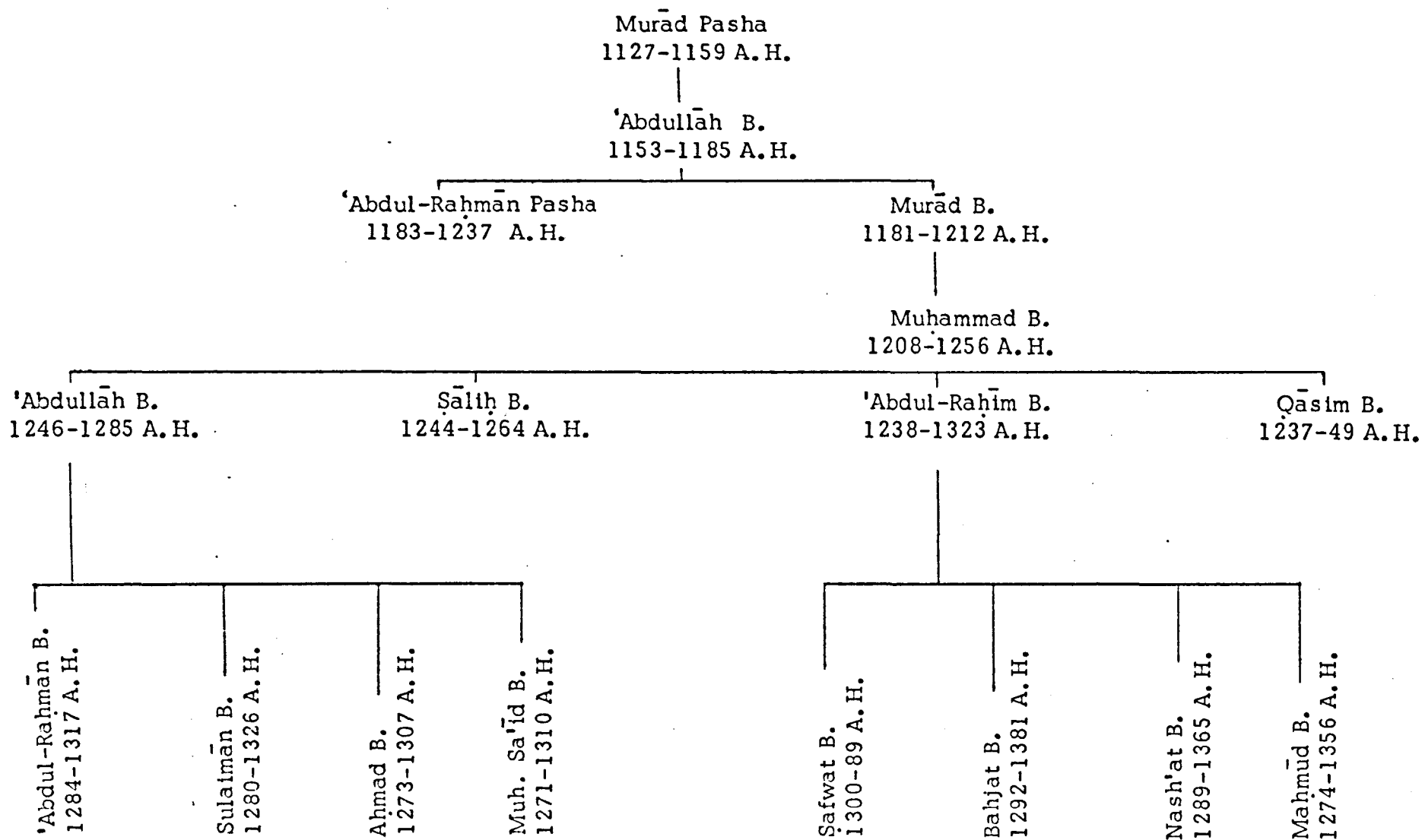
Hamrā' = Hāj Husain Pasha = Maryam  
1108-1171 A.H.



Tab. No. XV : The House of Muhammad Amīn Pasha (Ghāzī)



Tab. No. XVI : The House of Murād Pasha



Tab. No.XVII:Contemporary Monarchs of the Ottoman Empire and Persia

THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE		PERSIA		
Date	Name of Sultan	Date	Name of Shah	Remarks
1512	Salīm I	1500	Isma'īl I	) Safawis.
1520	Sulaimān I			
1566	Salīm II	1524	Tahmāsp I	
1574	Murād III			
		1576	Isma'īl II	
		1578	Muhammad Khud- abanda	
1595	Muhammad III			
1603	Ahmad I	1587	'Abbas the Great	
1617	Mustafā I			
1618	'Uthmān II			
1622	Mustafā I(2nd time)			
1623	Murād IV	1629	Safī	
1640	Ibrāhīm	1642	'Abbās II	
1648	Muhammad IV	1667	Sulaimān	
1687	Sulaimān II			) Both claiming the throne.
1691	Ahmad II			
1695	Mustafā II	1694	Husain	
1703	Ahmad III			
		1722	Mahmūd Khan	
		1723	Ashraf Khan	
1730	Mahmūd I	1730	Tahmāsp II(Safawī)	
		1736	Nādir	
		1747	'Adil	
		1749	Shah Rukh and other: anarchy	
1754	'Uthmān III			) Zand: Regent.
1757	Mustafā III	1757	Karīm Khan	
1773	'Abdul-Hamīd I	1779	Anarchy	) Qājars.
1789	Salīm III	1796	Agha Muhammad	
1807	Mustafā IV	1797	Fath 'Alī	
1808	Mahmūd II			
1839	'Abdul-Majīd	1834	Muhammad	

NOTES

- (1) Catalogus Codicum Orientalium .. , loc. cit. .
- (2) DUR. 1, MS v, fol. 2a.
- (3) Cf. GHA. , p.9 and see MANH. , fol. 1b.
- (4) Cf. QUR. , fol. 82a.
- (5) Cf. NISA. , p.104, p.127, p.131.
- (6) DUR. 2, MS B, fol. 1a.
- (7) DUR. 2, MS BR, fol. 1a.
- (8) DUR. 2, MS Bn, "The title".
- (9) DUR. 1, MS v, fols. 1a-2a.
- (10) See Chap. 2, n.62.
- (11) See ibid. , n.34.
- (12) See ibid. , n.32.
- (13) See ibid. , n.33.
- (14) See ibid. , n.60.
- (15) See ibid. , n.64, n.118.
- (16) Tārīkh al-Ḥaram; it has proved impossible to identify this work.
- (17) See Chap. 2, n.34.
- (18) Abū 'Umar Yūsuf Ibn 'Abdullāh Ibn Muḥammad Ibn 'Abdul-Bar al-Nimrī al-Qurtubī (d. 463 A.H.), al-Istī'āb fī Ma'rifat al-Aṣḥāb, MS of Maktabat al-Auqāf al-'Āmma in Mosul, No. 1/21 Aḥmadiyya.
- (19) Muwaffaq al-Dīn Abū Muḥammad Ibn 'Abdullāh Ibn Aḥmad Ibn Muḥammad Ibn Qudāma al-Maqdisī (d. 620 A.H.), al-Tabyīn fī Ansāb al-Qurashiyīn, MS of Maktabat al-Auqāf al-'Āmma in Mosul No. 2/15 Madrasat al-Ḥaj Zakar.
- (20) See Chap. 2, n.65.

- (21) Jalāl al-Dīn al-Suyūṭī, al-Nafḥa al-Muskiyya wa al-Tuhfa al-Makkiyya, MS of Maktabat al-Auqāf al-'Āmma in Mosul, No. 23/19 Nabī Shīth.
- (22) al-Tabaqāt, the following five titles are known as: al-Tabaqāt; Tabaqāt al-Hanafīyya; Tabaqāt al-Shāfi'iyya; Tabaqāt al-Subkī; Tabaqāt al-Shu'arā' and Tabaqāt al-Mujtahidīn. It has proved impossible to establish to which of these Yāsīn refers.
- (23) It is RAW.
- (24) It is MAN.
- (25) Marāṭī' al-Aḥdāq; this work cannot, it appears, be traced, nor can its author be established.
- (26) Muṣṭafā Na'īma, Tārīkh ... , 6 vols., Istanbul, 1280 A.H. = 1863-4 A.D.
- (27) DUR. 1, MS v, fol. 16, see also Text, p. iii.
- (28) MS Bn, fol. 375b.
- (29) Ibid., fol. 350b.
- (30) Ibid., fol. 416a.
- (31) Ibid., fol. 372a.
- (32) Ibid., fol. 373b.
- (33) Ibid., fol. 348a.
- (34) Ibid., fol. 421a.
- (35) MS Bn, fol. 422b. The French campaign under the leadership of Napoleon Bonaparte against Yāfā in 1213 A.H. = 1798-9 A.D.
- (36) Ibid., fol. 350a.
- (37) Text, pp. 361-6, and Apparatus Criticus, pp. 889-898.
- (38) MS Bn, fol. 372a; and see Apparatus Criticus, p. 895.
- (39) Ibid., fol. 377b.
- (40) Ibid., fol. 404a.

- (41) Ibid., fol. 387b.
- (42) Loc. cit.
- (43) Ibid., fol. 388b.
- (44) Ibid., fol. 410a.
- (45) Ibid., fol. 415a.
- (46) ZUB., p.39.
- (47) GHA., p.9.
- (48) DUR. 1, MS v, fol.
- (49) NISA., pp.35-6.
- (50) See Text, p.58 and Apparatus Criticus, p.552.
- (51) See Chap. 2, n.32.
- (52) See App. 3.
- (53) Text, p.18 and Apparatus Criticus, pp.522-3.
- (54) Text, p.167, 172; and cf. Shaw, op.cit., 1/194-5.
- (55) Text, p.199, and Apparatus Criticus, pp.675-6.
- (56) For historical details, see S. Shaw, History of the Ottoman Empire, vol. 1, pp.186-219.
- (57) For historical details, see J. Stoye, The Siege of Vienna, London 1964.
- (58) See Shaw, op.cit., vol. 1, pp.56-7.
- (59) Text, p.15 and see App. 1.
- (60) Ibid., p.9.
- (61) Ibid., p.10.
- (62) Ibid., p.13, 15.
- (63) Ibid., p.15.
- (64) Ibid., p.20, and see Pitcher, An Historical Geography of the Ottoman Empire, Leiden - Brill, 1972, p.112.

- (65) Ibid., pp.35 and 36.
- (66) Ibid., p.463.
- (67) Apparatus Criticus, p.1169 and GHAR., p.58.
- (68) Ibid., p.484 and Apparatus Criticus, pp.1138-1142.
- (69) Ibid., p.492 and Apparatus Criticus, loc. cit.
- (70) Ibid., p.484, 486 and Apparatus Criticus, loc. cit.
- (71) Ibid., p.486 and Apparatus Criticus, pp.1145, 1167.
- (72) For historical details, see Gerald de Gaury, Rulers of Mecca, London 1951.
- (73) For historical details about Syria and Lebanon, see Philip K. Hitti, History of the Arabs, Tenth ed., Hong Kong 1980, p.731.
- (74) Text, p.466, and Apparatus Criticus, pp.1101-2; and see GHAR., p.34.
- (75) Ibid., p.386 and Apparatus Criticus, p.942, and see SAIF., fol. 11b.
- (76) For historical details, see Longrigg, Four Centuries of Modern Iraq, pp.212-217.
- (77) 'Alī Amīrī, Tadhkirat Shu'rā' Āmid, Matba'at Āmidī, 1327 A.H., p.265.
- (78) Ahmet Cevdet, Tarih, vol. 2, Istanbul, 1302 A.H., p.161.
- (79) For historical details, see "Algeria" article in En 2, 1/368-9.
- (80) See Philip K. Hitti, History of the Arabs, pp.704-5.
- (81) For historical details, see Philip K. Hitti, History of Syria including Lebanon and Palestine, London, 1951, pp.661-696.
- (82) For historical details, see S.H. Longrigg, op.cit., pp.123-249.
- (83) For historical details, see K.K. Barbir, Ottoman Rule in Damascus 1708-1758, Princeton, 1980.



- (84) See Longrigg, op.cit., p.179.
- (85) See Philip K. Hitti, loc. cit.
- (86) For historical details, see S. al-Damlūchī, Imārat Bahdīnān Aw Imārat al-'Amādiyya, Mosul, 1952.
- (87) See Kemp, op.cit., p.75.
- (88) For historical details, see Šā'igh, op.cit., 1/273, Olson, The Siege of Mosul and Ottoman - Persians Relations 1718 - 1743, Indiana, 1975, pp.179-180, n.17, n.26, Ra'ūf, Tārīkh al-Mawsil fī al-'Ahd al-'Uthmānī: Fatrat al-Hukm al-Mahallī 1726-1834, Najaf 1975, pp.41-4. See also Amīrī, op.cit., p.60-5.
- (89) Text, p.342.
- (90) Loc. cit.
- (91) Kemp, op.cit., p.136.
- (92) Text, pp.361-5, and Apparatus Criticus, pp.889-896; also MAN., 1/149-162.
- (93) Text, p.320.
- (94) See S. al-Jalīlī's supplement No. 1, entitled "al-Hāj Husain Pasha al-Jalīlī" in Dīwān Hasan Abdul-Bāqī al-Mawsilī, Mosul, 1967, p.103.
- (95) Cf. loc. cit., and Text, p.351, and see SHAM., pp.88-91, n.2.
- (96) See MUN., pp.81-8, SAL., pp.60-8, and App. No. 5.
- (97) See SHAM., loc. cit., and Olson, op.cit., p.170.
- (98) Cf. S. al-Jalīlī in his supplement No. 1, loc. cit.
- (99) Cf. IBL., 5/212.
- (100) See Muḥammad Ṣubḥī, Tārīkh Ṣubḥī, Istanbul 1196 A.H., p.167.
- (101) Text, p.349, see also MAN., 1/147, ZUB., p.88, Šā'igh, op.cit., 1/277, Amīrī, op.cit., p.64, Ra'ūf, op.cit., p.100, Kemp, op.cit., p.122, and Olson, op.cit., p.166.

- (102) Text, p.350 , and Ṣ. al-Jalīlī, op.cit., p.110.
- (103) Text, pp.361-5, and cf. MAN., 1/149-166, and Olson, op.cit., pp.165-183.
- (104) See Ṣ. al-Jalīlī, op.cit., p.115.
- (105) Text, loc. cit., and Apparatus Criticus, pp.889-897.
- (106) Loc. cit., and cf. MAN., 1/loc. cit., D. Lanza, al-Mawṣil fī al Jīl al-Thāmin 'Ashar Hasab Mudhakkarāt Domenico Lanza, Tran. R. Bidawid, Mosul, 1951, p.30.
- (107) Text, p.363 , and cf. MAN., 1/ pp.159-160.
- (108) Text, p.361-3.
- (109) Cf. MAN., 1/151-158.
- (110) For historical details, see Ra'ūf, op.cit., pp.213-263, and Kemp, op.cit., pp.104-165.
- (111) See Apparatus Criticus, p.939.
- (112) For economic details, see Nuri Prer, Osmanlılarda Madeni Paralar, Istanbul, 1968.
- (113) For historical details, see Kemp, op.cit., pp.26-38.
- (114) For historical details, see Lanza, op.cit., pp.42-45, and MUN., p.183.
- (115) For further details, see Sā'igh, op.cit., 2/56-91, and S. Datwachī, "Madāris al-Mawṣil fī al-'Ahd al-'Uthmānī", in SUMER, vol. 18, Baghdad, 1962, and see Ra'ūf, op.cit., pp.361-427, also Kemp, op.cit., pp.168-191.

## SUPPLEMENT

The methods and conventions used in the  
edition of DUR. 1 and DUR. 2.

Methods employed in the edition of DUR. 1 and DUR. 2

Below are given the methods which I have used in the edition of MSS DUR. 1 and DUR. 2.

a. The Text

The present edited text is based on the Vienna MS, in order to preserve the author's original DUR. 1. Secondly, because DUR. 2 differs so widely from DUR. 1, it is of no use for the establishment of the Text of DUR. 1. Thirdly, the two texts are not produced separately because both DUR. 1 and DUR. 2 overlap in some areas, such as: having the same title and structure. Fourthly, DUR. 1 is the older version.

There is no doubt that the author used DUR. 1 to compile DUR. 2. Therefore, the present text contains the material of DUR. 1, while the material of DUR. 2 is partly found in the text and partly in the Apparatus Criticus.

The text of DUR. 1, the present text of this research, is a universal work written in an annalistic style and the textual material of the present text covers the period 920-1218 A.H. = 1514 1803 A.D., each year dealing a variety of material, such that the reader could obtain an annual picture of events. Structurally, each year contains several individual paragraphs, so that the reader of the present text can readily find any particular paragraph of interest. Each paragraph is introduced with the word . The year of any section, the word **نبا**, introducing a paragraph, and some other words or phrases are written in red ink. To represent this

differentiation, parentheses are used.

Also, in the present text, the years are written in the middle of the page, whereas the paragraphs, main sections and poetry are usually written on a new line. For the sake of clarity, other brackets, dashes and marks, such as < >, @....@, "....", and -....-\* have also been used.

Some standardisation of grammar and orthography has been established; wherever this has caused divergence from the MSS, the divergence has been noted. Notes to the text are collected in a separate section, and the numbers and letters which appear on each page as superscripts refer the reader to Apparatus Criticus.

b. Apparatus Criticus and the system of Integrated Comparison of all DUR. MSS.

The Apparatus Criticus contains all the different readings of DUR. 1 and DUR. 2. It also contains all the additional material occurring in DUR. 2 and other MSS. It deals with distortions, additions and omissions found through comparative criticism between the MSS of DUR. This critical section cannot be read without the text.

Below are given the steps used in the critical comparison of the MSS of DUR. :

- (1) Transcription of the text of the original MS of DUR. 1 (v), and its comparison with the other MS of DUR. 1 (p).
- (2) Transcription of the text of the original MS of DUR. 2 (Bn), and its

---

\* For explanations, see list of Marks and Signs.

comparison with the other MSS of DUR. 2, B, BR.

(3) Comparative study of the text of DUR. 2, and its textual variants with the main text of DUR. 1.

(4) Integrated comparison of all MSS of DUR. 1 and DUR. 2.

e.g. The methods mentioned above applied to the first paragraph of the present text \*\* yield (b) as the result of the following steps.

(1) The first paragraph from DUR. 1 (MS v):

" سنة تسعمائة وعشرين توفي اوحـد الادباء واكمل الفضلاء ميرزا  
الشهير في بديع الزمان له نظم بالتركي توفي بمدينة اسلامبول ".  
is compared with MS p.

As there are no variations, no comment is necessary.

(2) The first paragraph of DUR. 2 (MS Bn):

" سنة تسعمائة وعشرين<sup>1</sup> توفي الأديب الفاضل<sup>2</sup> والحبر الكامل<sup>2</sup> ميرزا  
الشهير في بديع الزمان توفي بمدينة<sup>3</sup> اسلامبول ".  
is compared with MSS B, BR.

There are no variations in B and the variations in BR yield the following apparatus.

1 وعشرون : BR وعشرين<sup>1</sup>

2 ... 2 : om. BR.

3 بمدينة : om. BR.

(3) The paragraph of DUR. 2 is compared with the paragraph of DUR. 1 archetype.

(4) Integrated comparison of all MSS of DUR. 1 and DUR. 2 yields the following:

a) Text (DUR. 1 (v) )

" سنة تسعمائة وعشرين<sup>1</sup> توفي اوحـد الادباء واكمل الفضلاء<sup>2</sup> ميرزا  
الشهير في بديع الزمان<sup>3</sup> له نظم بالتركي<sup>3</sup> توفي بمدينة<sup>4</sup> اسلامبول ".  
is compared with MSS B, BR.

b) Apparatus

1. توفي : BR - 2...2 om. Bn, B, BR; but after Bn adds والحبر الكامل B, BR sic; but 1...1 om. BR - 3...3 om. Bn, B, BR - 4 بمدينة : om. BR.

The following points are made:

1. It has been necessary to present the Apparatus Criticus separately from the text.
2. The notes have been arranged according to the pages of the text to which they refer, i.e. notes concerning page 50 are arranged under a heading: page No. 50. In some cases the notes to up to four pages of the text have been gathered under one heading, e.g. pp. 50-3.
3. The material in Apparatus Criticus has been indicated by numbers or letters.
4. The European numerals and Roman alphabet are employed in Text and apparatus, while the Arabic numerals are employed in the Apparatus Criticus, for noting the variations in the MSS of DUR. 2.
5. For the use of brackets and other conventional marks, see list No. 4.
6. Additional paragraphs from DUR. 2, written in the margins or text of MS Bn, and introduced with وفيها, have been recorded in the Apparatus Criticus, marked by a line below وفيها, viz. وفيها.
7. In view of the considerable differences between DUR. 1 and DUR. 2, in dealing with the period 1212-1218 A.H., dual texts have been presented: the versions of DUR. 1 and DUR. 2 then, have not been integrated but the material of DUR. 2 (MS Bn) has been recorded and compared with MSS B, BR.

8. In view of the considerable differences between DUR. 2 (MS Bn) and MS BR, in dealing with events, literary material ... etc. paragraphs from MS Bn and BR have, on occasion, been presented separately.

9. The separate section of the additional material from DUR. 2 which covers the period 1219-1226 A.H. has been transcribed from MS Bn and compared with MSS B, BR.

10. For abbreviations see List of Abbreviations of Apparatus Criticus (p.xvii).

c. The Notes to the Text

1. These notes are presented as Appendix No. 1 and are limited to the material canvassed in DUR. 1.
2. The notes are numbered by paragraphs (which begin with ( وفيها ) ).
3. The material of the text is compared with many sources which were used by the author himself, such as MUH., MAN., and RAW. ... etc.
4. Presentation of the names of people and places, etc. are based on the author's works as well as the main contemporary works and references which are devoted to Ottoman history during 16th, 17th and 18th centuries.
5. A comparison of the various materials of DUR. with other works, i.e. books, documents, manuscripts, theses, maps, articles, tables and indices ... etc. dealing with the same subjects, show discrepancies between DUR. and other records. These discrepancies are mentioned in the notes.
6. Using numerical values of letters, the dates of certain pieces of "poetic-history" have been established, and certain Turkish words and terms are explained.



## APPENDICES

## APPENDIX 1

### NOTES TO THE TEXT

Page No. 1.

L.3 ( اسلامبول ) Islāmbūl, a name for Constantinople adopted by a few Sultans on their coins and by a few writers, in place of Istanbul, as if the name meant, "Islam abounds"; Redhouse, A Turkish and English Lexicon, Constantinople 1921, pp.112-3; Kemp, Mosul and Mosuli Historians of the Jalili era 1726-1834, pp.278-281, in this position, Istanbul was the third capital of the Ottoman Empire. L.4, ( خراسان ) Khurasān: "The vast province of Kurasān has for its boundaries the Oxus and Country of Bulkh to the N.E. and E., Cābul and Sīstān to the S., and to the W., the great provinces of Iraq, also the provinces of Asterabād and Dabistān; Kinneir, A Geographical Memoir of the Persian Empire, London 1813, p.169. He added that the meaning of Khurasān is the country of the sun," ibid., p.169n. Para. 3, See The Munshi'āt i Salātīn of Feridūn Bey, pp.374-9. LL.5-6, ( یونس باشا ) Yūnus Pasha, Grand Vizir of the Empire 923 A.H., appointed after Hadīm Sīnān Pasha; Spiridonakis, Empire Ottoman, Inventaire des Memoires et Documents aux Archives du Ministere des Affairs Etrangeres de France, Thessaloniki 1973, App. IV. Para. 4, This is the Chaldīrān war, August 23, 1514 A.D., fought between the Ottomans and Safavids and it is one of the most important historical events at the beginning of the sixteenth-century; Hammer, Geschichte der Osmanischen Reiches, Wien 1828, 2/416; Shaw, in his historical analysis "War with the Safavids", History of the Ottoman Empire and Modern Turkey, Cambridge 1978, vol. 1, pp.80-2; about the historical results of this war, Sayyār K. al-Jamīl, "The Ottoman Conquest of Mosul and Al-Jazira district in 1516 A.D., and the beginnings of the Ottoman-Safavid conflict during the reign of Sultan Salīm I," part 2 in MQJ, vol. 8, No. 30, 1980, pp.199-202. L.8, ( تبریز ) Tabrīz or Taurīz, the capital of Azerbaijan is situated on the frontiers of the contending empires. N.W. Iran has alternately been in the hands of the Turks, Tartars and Persians; Kinneir, op.cit., pp.150-51; about situation of Tabrīz,

Map XXXII-C1 in Pitcher, An Historical Geography of the Ottoman Empire from the earliest times to the end of the sixteenth century, Leiden - Brill, 1972. L.8, ( الشاه اسماعيل ) Shāh Ismā'īl I, Shah of Persia 907-930 A.H. = 1501-1524 A.D., and founder of the Safavid dynasty; En 2, vol. IV, pp.186-8; Savory "The principal offices of the Safawid state during the reign of Ismā'īl" in BSOAS, xxiii, 1960, pp.91-105; S. al-Jamīl, op.cit., part I, p.199. L.16, ( الغوري ) Gānsūh al-Ghūrī in Ibn Iyās, 3/15; Turkhān, Misr fī 'Ahd al-Mamālīk, Cairo, 1960, pp.174-190. L.24, ( القادريه ) al-Qādiriyya (A.), Dulkadirīlilar (T.), see article written by J.H. Mordtann, I.AN., 3 Cilt, Istanbul 1945, pp.662-7; Hammer, op.cit., 1/175-9; S. al-Jamīl, op.cit., part 2, p.327, n.56. L.25, ( مرعش ) : It is Marasian situated in S. Anatolia; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-A1; Le Strange, The Lands of the Eastern Caliphate, London, 1905, p.163. L.25, ( بستين ) Bustīn or Bustān (A.) or Ablestin, Arabissus (Gk.), is situated N. Syria; Le Strange, op.cit., pp.178-9. L.25, ( عين تاب ) 'Ayntab or Antep, large populous village; Kinneir, op.cit., p.466; Pitcher, map XXXII-A2, it is situated in Southern Anatolia. L.25, ( ملطيه ) Malatya (T.), the ancient Melitene (Gk.) is situated in S. Anatolia; Kinneir, op.cit., p.465; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-A1.

#### Page No. 2.

Para. 1, cf. Brock. 11/83. Para. 2, Tāj-al-Tawārīkh by Sa'd al-Dīn Khūja, pp.367. Para. 3, Details of these historical events are found in Hammer, op.cit., 2/426; S. al-Jamīl, op.cit., part 2, pp.329-334. L.5, ( محمد باشا ) is Bayqullī Muḥammad Pasha, Wālī of Diyār Bakr; I.AN., 10/427; S. al-Jamīl, op.cit., p.333. L.6, ( الرافضه ) Rafada, the heretical, schismatic doctrine of the Rawāfīd. L.6, ( آق قوینلی ) the Āq qoyunlu court in Diyār Bakr 861-3 A.H. = 1456-9 A.D., Linguistically (T.), means the Turkman dynasty of white sheep; Redhouse, op.cit., p.161; also Āq qoyunlu, federation of Turkman "al-Bayandariyya" tribes, which rose in post-mongol times; En 2, 1/311; T. Gokbilgn,

Turkiyat Mecmuası, 1951, pp.35-46; also "Iran" article in En 2, IV/34; and see about Ūzun Ḥasan, En 1, IV/1065-1069. Para. 6, see Brock., 11/171. L.14, ( بايزيد ملك الروم ) is Bāyazīd II, the Ottoman Sultan 886-918 A.H. = 1481-1512 A.D.; En 2, 1/1119-1121. L.20, ( بورصة ) Būrsa (T.), the second capital of the Ottoman Empire. The ancient Prousa (Gk.), and Brūsa (old T.), it is situated in N.W. Anatolia; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-A1.

### Page No. 3.

L.4, ( بصرى ) Buṣrā is a town situated in S. Syria; En 2, 1/1275-7; description of buildings and streets in, Buckingham, Travels among the Arab Tribes, London, 1825, p.201. L.14, ( اسكدار ) : "Uskudār, the oldest and largest quarter of Turkish Constantinople on the Asiatic side of the Bosphorus;" see BZTI, general map; En 1, IV/1054. L.18, The battle of Marj-Dābiq, when Sultan Salīm I, met the Egyptian army under the leadership of al-Ghūrī on the field of Dābiq N. of Aleppo, on August 24, 1516, for historical details; see Hammer, op.cit., 11/475; Ibn Iyās, 3/40-236; En 1, IV/215.

### Page No. 4.

L.1, ( الجراكسة ) : "The Cherkes people lived on the shores of the sea of Azov and the Black Sea. Cherkes "Kabard" as they call it at the present, began to play a role in the history of the Caucasus during the 16th-18th centuries before the Russian conquest in the middle of the 19th century;" see W.E.D. Allen and P. Muratoff, Caucasian Battlefields, Cambridge, 1953, pp.26-9, "Cerkes" article by H. Inalcık in, En 1, 2/21-5. LL.6-7, ( الشيخ محي الدين بن العربي ) "al-Shaikh Muḥyi al-Dīn b. al-'Arabī, 560-638 A.H. = 1165-1240 A.D., was one of the greatest Sūfīs of Islam; En 2, III/707-711. When Sultan Salīm I conquered Damascus, he ordered the erection of the mosque of Ibn al-'Arabī, thus fulfilling Ibn al-'Arabī's prophecy: "when the Sīn - of

Salīm - enters into the Shīn - of Shām - then will appear the tomb of Muḥyī al-Dīn"; Kemp, op.cit., pp.193-4; En 1, IV/215.

L.12, ( طومان باي ) Tūmān Bāy, a slave of Qānṣūh, had become a Sultan of Egypt after the battle of Marj-Dāblq, hanged on April 14, 1517 at Bāb-Zuwalla, one of Cairo's main gates; Ibn Iyās, 5/102; and cf. W. Muir, The Mameluke, or Slave Dynasty of Egypt 1260-1571; P.K. Hitti, History of the Arabs, p.694 n.3, 704. L.13, ( الزيدانيه ): Thus in MSS, but the correct term is: ( الريدانيه ) Raidāniyah, in Egypt; Ibn Iyās, 5/136-7. Para. 1, cf. Sir T. Arnold, The Caliphate, Oxford, 1924, pp.89-118, also 129-158.

#### Page No. 5.

L.3, ( المدارس الثمان ) al-Madāris al-Thamān (A.), or "Sahn-i Semān (T.), or Court of the Eight, that is, of the eight colleges attached to the great mosque of Sultan Muḥammad II at Constantinople"; E.J.W. Gibb, History of the Ottoman poetry, III/41; see also Kemp, op.cit., p.280, "The eight-gated madrasa erected by Muḥammad the Conqueror". L.4, ( ادرنه ) Edirne (T.), Adrianopolis (Gk.), the Capital of the Ottomans after Burṣa, is situated in Rumeli, the European side of Turkey; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XVI-B2. For details about the historical background of Edirne; see En 2, II/683-6. L.4, ( قاضي العسكر ) or ( قضا' العسكر ): Qādī-i-'askar, judge of the army; Gibb and Bowen, Islamic Society and the West, Oxford, 1950, vol. 1, part 1, pp.83-9. L.4, ( انا طولى ) Anadolu (T.), the present Anatolia. "Asia Minor, from the Egalean to the Persian frontier, and from the Black Sea to the confines of Syria and Mesopotamia. It is on the Asiatic side of the Bosphorus or of the Dardanelles, and passed to the Ottoman Turks in the 13th-14th centuries"; Redhouse, op.cit., p.206; En 2, I/461-480; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV. L.4, ( روم ايلي ) Rumelī. The term "Rumelia" originated with the Byzantines, who called themselves "Romaioi" and their lands "Romania". In the Islamic world, the Byzantines were called "Rūm", and the lands of the Eastern Roman

Empire "Bilād al-Rūm", or "Mamālik al-Rūm". Thus, the Ottoman Turks took the term "Rumelia" from the Byzantine "Romei"; D.J. Georgacas, The names of the Asia Minor peninsula, Heidelberg, 1971, pp.122-4; Kemp, op.cit., pp.274-5; on the other hand, the Turks are named "Rūm" in the MSS. Para. 2, cf. Hammer, op.cit., 2/514; En 1, IV/216. L.12, ( ثامن محرم ), Ibn Iyās states that Sultan Salīm I, entered Cairo in Rabī'a-'Awwal; Ibn Iyās, 3/113. L.13, ( ابن كمال باشا ); This is Shams al-Dīn Ahmad b. Sulaimān b. Kamāl Pasha, the famous scholar, d. 940 A.H.; Zirkilī, 1/130. L.14, ( فاتح مالک العرب ) is p. his. (= 923 A.H.). L.19, ( المقياس ) al-Miqyās is situated in Egypt; Ibn Iyās, 5/196. LL.21-2, Those two verses appear to have been cited by al-Ishāqī; cf. Akhbar al'Uwal ..., p.143.

#### Page No. 6.

LL.5-6, ( باب زويلة ) Bāb-Zuwayla: One of the main gates in Cairo; En 2, IV/427, map of Cairo G-5; for details of the Ottoman conquest of Egypt; see Ibn Zunbul, Tārīkh ..., pp.116-51; for the historical analysis, see A.C. Hess, "The Ottoman conquest of Egypt 1517, and the beginning of the sixteenth century world war", IJME, vol. 4, Jan. 1973. L.12, ( طوقات ) Tūqāt, a town in N. Turkey; Pitcher, op.cit., map XX-B1. Para. 4, Ibn Iyās, 3/123. L.20, ( المستمك بالله ) al-Mustamsik-bil-lāh; for historical details; see En 2, 1/23. Para. 5, In June, 1517, al-Mutawakkil was sent by sea to Istanbul. He was imprisoned by Sultan Salīm I, in the castle of Yedi-qule, where he remained until Salīm's death, and returned to Cairo; En 1, IV/216 article "Salīm I". L.23, ( يدي قله ) Yedi-qule: The citadel of the Seven Towers at the S.W. corner of Istanbul; Redhouse, op.cit., p.2199. L.25, ( دولة العباسيين ), The 'Abbāsīd State. The first era in Baghdad 132-334 A.H. = 750-945 A.D.; the second era in Baghdad 334-656 A.H. = 945-1258 A.D.; the third era, a shadowy Abbasid Caliphate in Cairo 659-923 A.H. = 1261-1517 A.D.; En 2, 1/15-23, "'Abbāsids" article by B. Lewis.

Page No. 7.

Para. 1, cf. Dahlān, p.53. Para. 2, cf. I.AN., 10/433. Para. 3, cf. Kahhāla, 4/182; al-Anṣārī's full name is "زكريا أبي يحيى بن محمد الأنصاري"; cf. MUH., 2/199. Para. 4, The Suhrawardiyya Ṭarīqa; see J. Spencer Trimingham, The Sufi Orders in Islam, Oxford 1971, pp.33-7. Para. 5, cf. Dahlān, p.53.

Page No. 8.

Para. 2, cf. 'Ālīm 'Arāī ..., fol. 37b. L.4, ( بلاد الكج ) Bilād al-Gurj (A.), or gyurijistan (P.), Georgia on the Caspian; Yāqūt, 4/251. Para. 3, cf. I.AN., 10/432-3; Munshi'at al-Salātīn, pp.405-7; "Selīm I", article by J.H. Kramers, in En 1, which says that Sultan Selīm I, died suddenly on Shawwāl 7, 926 A.H. = Sept. 20, 1520 A.D., cf. En 1, IV/216. L.9, ( مغنيسا ) Manīsa (T.), Magnesia (Gk.), an old city in the west of Anatolia; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-A2. L.10, ( جامع السلطان محمد الفاتح ), is Fātiḥ Cāmi in Istanbul; BZTI, pp.84-96, and map. The author here is not correct because the body of Sultan Selīm I, was buried on the hill on the N.W. side of Istanbul, Sultan Sulaimān had the mosque of Salīm, built there; cf. En 1, IV/216.

Page No. 9.

Para. 1, During the first Hungarian Campaign of Sultan Sulaimān I in Europe, the great fort of Belgrad was taken on August 8, 1520. The siege of Belgrad by the Sultan himself, is one of the most important historical events in the history of Ottomans during the sixteenth century; Hammer, op.cit., 3/14-31; "Suleyman" article in I.AN., III/102-4; Shaw, op.cit., 1/91. L.2, ( بلاد الانكروس ), Bilād al-Ankurūs, is Hungary; and "Ankurūs" means 'the Hungarians' (also Enguruslu (T.)); see Redhouse, op.cit., p.228. P. Kemp states that the Hungarians were the old enemies of the Ottomans. Even before the Conquest of



Constantinople by Sultan Muḥammad II, the Hungarians had not hesitated to assist the Serbs, the Bosnians, the Byzantines and the Qaramānids against the Ottomans; Kemp, op.cit., pp.290-5. L.3, ( قرة دنکز ), Qara-Dingiz. Thus written in MSS, but to correct that, read it as: ( قرة دکز ) in the Ottoman language. Spelling as: Qarā-denīz which means The Black Sea; Redhouse, op.cit., p.909. L.4, ( بلغراد ) Belgrad. The capital of modern Yugoslavia; for Belgrad as an Ottoman city, see the map of "The Danube Lands" in Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX C-3. The Turks called this city "Belgrad Unguruz" in the 9th/15th century, because other towns in Albania, Hungary and Transylvania also bore the name of Belgrade, such as in Turkish: Ashaghī Belgrad, Tuna Belgradī, Belgradī Semendire; cf., En 2, 1/1163. L.6, ( دیمتر ), Demitar Castle. Demeter or Demetrias, a city of Magnesia on the Gulf of Pagasae; see, OCE, pp.324-5. L.6, ( فچه ), Focha Castle, in Bosnia; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXVI-A1. L.6, ( کونیک ), Konic Castle in Bosnia; loc.cit. L.7, ( بارج ), Bereg Castle in Bosnia (Danube Lands); ibid., map XXIX-C2. L.7, ( کارلوجہ ), Karlovci (Sl.), Karlocze (Hung.) a castle in the Danube Lands; ibid., map XXIX-B3. L.7, ( قمانجہ ), Kamengrad Castle in the Danube lands; ibid., map XXIX-A3. L.7, ( درنیک ), Rudnik (T.) in Bosnia; ibid., map XXVI-A1. It is Dubrovnik (Sl.), Ragusa, a town in Yugoslavia today; ibid., map XXI-B2. L.7, ( قالونجی ), possibly Koyunluco (T.), Seriphos (Gk.), one of the Greek's Islands; ibid., map XIV-B3. LL.7-8, ( بدون ), Budun or Budīn (T.), Budapest, as it is named at present, the Hungarian capital which was captured by the Ottomans under the leadership of Sultan Sulaimān I and his Grand Vizir Ibrāhīm Pasha in 1525 A.D.; NCMH, Vol. II/p.348; I.AN., gives us further details about the local Ottoman history of the Hungarian capital which is variously named in Turkish:

( بودیم ، بودون ، بودن ، بدون ، بودین ، ————— بود )

I.AN., 2 Cilt, pp.748-760; most of these names have been used by the author. L.8, ( واردین ), Wārdīn Castle or Wārāsdīn in the Danube lands; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-A2. Para. 2, cf. Ibn Iyās, 5/102. Para. 4, In his book, Kaḥḥāla states that his death took place in 891 A.H.; cf. Kaḥḥāla, 13/248. L.17, ( سنان پاشا ), Sinan Pasha, Grand

Vizir under Sultan Salīm I, he was first of all governor of Rumelia and then of Anatolia; En 1, IV/432; also cf. Hammer, op.cit., ii/536, n. a; In his Index, Spiridonakis named him as Hadīm Sinan Pasha 920-923 A.H.; see App. No. IV, p.462. L.17, ( اسكوب ), Uskub (T.), Skoplye (Serb), capital of the former Turkish wilayet of Koşowa banat in the kingdom of Jugoslavia, situated in the Rumelī lands of the Ottoman Empire; En 1, IV/1052-4; its situation is given in Pitcher, op.cit., map XXVI-A1.

Page No. 10.

Para. 1, ( البروعي ): the correct full name is " محي الدين بن محمد " ; see Ahlwardt, op.cit., MS No. 927, p.362. L.4, ( فرهاد باشا ) details about "Ferhadpascha" can be found in Hammer, op.cit., 111/18. L. 6 ( الصالحيه ) al-Sālihiyyah, a suburb of Damascus in Syria; J. S. Buckingham, Travels among the Arab Tribes, London 1825, p.311. Para. 3, details in Hammer, 11/20. Sultan Sulaimān captured the Island of Rhodes from the Knights of St. John; En 1, IV/523- ; article "Sulaimān I". L.10, ( رودس ), Rhodes is situated about twelve miles off the south western corner of Asia Minor; Pitcher, map XXI-B2; details about its historical background can be found in En 1, III/1146-8. Para. 4, For the Ottoman Siege of Rhodes; see Eric Bockman, The Two Sieges of Rhodes, 1480-1522, London 1969, pp.111-155; also see H. Lamb, Suleiman the Magnificent, Bristol 1952, pp.55-70; also Hammer, 111/20-31. LL.17-18, Morroco and Spain; Pitcher, map XXIII-A1. L.19, ( يفرح المؤمنون بنصر الله ) is p. his. (= 929 A.H.). L.19, ( بودرم ), Bodrum, on the west coast of Anatolia; see, ibid., map XIV-C3. L.20, ( استان كوى ), Istandkoy, is an island near the west coast of Anatolia in the Mediterranean; loc. cit. L.20, ( اندوس ), Sic in MSS; I was unable to find the situation of this city. It is probably Andros, the most northerly of the Cyclades; see OCD, p.64.

Page No. 11.

Para. 1, Pīrī Pasha as Grand Vizir 923-9; see Hammer III/18-32, Sultan Sulaimān I deposed Pīrī Pasha and replaced him by his favourite, Ibrāhīm Pasha on June 27, 1524 A.D.; En 1, IV/523; further details in I.AN., 10/431. Para. 2, Ibrāhīm Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 929-942 A.H.; Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. No. IV, p.464; details in I.AN., III/104-5. Para. 3, Ibn Iyās, 5/236. L.6, ( خير بك ); Ibn Iyās ref. خير بك : for details, see P.K. Hitti, History of the Arabs, p.705. Para. 4, In his Akhbār ..., al-Ishāqī informs us that Aḥmad Pasha appointed as a governor of Egypt in Ṣafar 930 A.H.; cf. al-Ishāqī, op.cit., p.149. Para. 5, Ismā'īl Shāh 1502-1524 A.D., founder of the Safavid dynasty in Iran, see R. Savory, Iran under the Safavids, Cambridge 1980, pp.35-8; Sayyār K. al-Jamīl, Article No. 2, pp.16-17., also see the article "Ismail I", by R. Savory in En 2, IV/186-7; for details about Ismā'īl I, see Ḥusain Nawā'ī, Shāh Ismā'īl Ṣafawī, Isnād wa Mukātabāt, 1367 - Persian Text - . Para. 6, al-Ishāqī, op.cit., p.150.

Page No. 12.

Para. 1, al-Ishāqī, op.cit., p.150. Para. 2, ZUB., p.192. Para. 3, Ahlwardt, MS No. 931, pp.1734-6, Ind., p.394. L.9, The full title of ( الشرع ) is: ( شريعة الاسلام ); see ibid., MS No. 3695. L.18, ( الروضة ), ibid., MS No. 5472. L.18, ( المنتقى ), ibid., MSS, Zehnter Band, p.529.

Page No. 13.

Para. 1, This battle is named "Mohacs", a plain on the right bank of the Danube, south of Buda "Budapest", August 29-30, 1526 A.D.; Shaw, op.cit., 1/91; The Mohacs battle cost Louis of Hungary his life, and the military power of Hungary was destroyed; En 1, IV/523; NCMH, 11/512. L.3, ( ملك الانكروس ), The King of Hungary was Louis II, who ruled

1516-1526 A.D.; Shaw, op.cit., 1/91. L.3, ( نجه قرال ): 1 - NAMCHA (Sl.), The Austrian Empire "Austria"; Redhouse, op.cit., pp.2104-5; ( النمسا ); the name of Austria in Arabic came from this Turkish term. 2 - Qirāl (Sl.), from ( قرالجه ): A king or emperor, ruler of a Christian nation; see, ibid., p.1443. Sultan Sulaimān I marched against the Hungarians and their confederates in April 1526. In the battle of Mohacs, King Louis of Hungary was killed; the Ottomans advanced, and took Ofen, and the Hungarian succession was a matter of dispute: John Zapolya was elected in Transylvania, and Ferdinand of Hapsburg at Pressburg; cf. the article entitled "The Reign of Sulaimān The Magnificent, 1520-66" by V.J. Parry in, A History of the Ottoman Empire to 1730, Edited by M.A. Cook, Cambridge 1976, p.81; see also NCMH, II/512. L.5, ( اونيك ); It is probably Zvorik Castle, Pitcher, op.cit., p.165. L.5, ( تبرودين ), The Castle is named Warasdin in (Gk.), Varazdin in (Sl.), Waradin in (T.): It is situated in The Danube lands; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-A2; this Castle taken by Ibrāhīm Pasha, En 1, IV/523. L.9, ( ما وراء النهر ), Mā warā' al-Nahr. An Arabic geographical term referring to Sogdiana, Soghd, which corresponds to Turkistān in modern times; En 1, IV/129. L.11, ( سمرقند ) Samarqand, the principle town of Transoxiana or Sogdiana. It is the capital of Turkistān which is under Russian rule in modern times; loc. cit. Para. 6, This is the second Ottoman Expedition against the Hungarians, 1527-9, under the leadership of Sultan Sulaimān I; Shaw, op.cit., 1/92-3; In his book, Pitcher does not mention this campaign; cf. The Tab. of Sulaimān's Campaigns; Pitcher, op.cit., p.111; see also ibid., map No. 22; historical details can be found in Hammer, op.cit., 111/16. L.15, ( ايلوف ), This is probably Zalalovo Castle in W. Hungary, TAW, map 82-D4. L.15, ( مراجعه ): This is probably Moravica Castle in N. Yugoslavia, TAW, map 82 E-5; In his book, Pitcher does mention Moraca River which is situated in Serbia; cf. map XV-A1. L.16, ( برنامص ) Burgaz (T.), Burgas (Bulg.), Pyrogos (med.Gk); See Pitcher, op.cit., pp.33-4; it is situated in Hungary; M. Eshref, Mukammal wa-Mufaṣṣal Gegrāfiyā 'umūmī 'Atlāsi, Turkish text, Istanbul 1906, map "Austria wa Majaristan". L.16,

( بوکای ) : It is probably Buk in W. Hungary; TAW, map 82-D3, or possibly Parkany which seems to have been mentioned by Pitcher in his historical map; and mistakenly written ( بوکای ) here by the author. See the red line of 1526-9 Sulaimān's I Campaigns in Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-B2. L.16, ( رکتوار ) : It is possibly Uyvar (T.), Ujvar or Ersekujvar (Hung.), Neuhausel (Gk.); it is situated in Hungary; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-B2; or ( چیکتوار ) as it is mentioned by M. Eshref, loc. cit. L.17, ( مردون ) Marton is situated in Hungary; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-B2. Para. 7, Brock., II/423; also, Kahhāla, 2/236.

Page No. 14.

Para. 1, Kahhāla, 12/195-6; see also, Baghdadi, 1/472. L.3, ( کلبولی ), Gallipoli or Gelibolu (T.); Kallipolis (Gk.), an old city, situated on the western bank of the Sea of Marmara; Pitcher, map XXVI-B2. L.3, ( بایزید ) Bāyazīd II, The Ottoman Sultan 886-918 A.H. = 1481-1512 A.D. L.6, ( القوشجی ), 'Alī b. Muḥammad al Qawshajī; see, Ahlwardt, op.cit., MS No. 879. Para. 2, cf. GHA., p.169; I was unable to find the origin of this event. Muḥammad Khudābanda, the half-blind eldest son of Tahmāsp ruled Iran 1578-1587 A.D.; see Sykes, A History of Persia, London 1930, p.171. Para. 3, in Feridun Bey, Munshi'āt -al Salātīn, 1/386, that Christian unity against the Ottomans was further shattered by rivalry between the Habsburgs and France, then ruled by Francis (1515-1547); see Shaw, op.cit., 1/91. L.11, ( قزندوش ) Qīran-Dūsh, or Krāl Yanush, The King of Hungary; En 1, IV/523; Kemp wrongly states that Qīra-Dūsh was King of Nimja; see Kemp, op.cit., p.291. Para. 4, cf. Ahlwardt, op.cit., MS No. 1016. Para. 5-, This is the Cambrai treaty between Sultan Sulaimān I, and John Zapolya of Hungary, (August 3, 1529); see "The Second Hungarian Expedition 1527-9" in Shaw, op.cit., 1/92-3. L.21, ( ارول بانو ), thus in DUR.; this is Erdel Ban, the Hungarian king; see Munshi'āt of Feridūn, 1/496; also En 1, IV/523. Irdil Bānū, is John Zapolya of Hungary. The name also refers to his wife Isabelle; Kemp, op.cit., p.274 n.; In DUR,

the author means Isabelle; for historical details, see Shaw, op.cit., 1/101.

Page No. 15.

L.4, ( بخارى ), Bukhārā, a city in a large oasis in present day Uzbekistān on the lower course of the Zarafshān River; En 2, 1/1293-6; details and historical background can be found in Yāqūt, 2/517.

Para. 2, This is the Ottoman Campaign against Austria, the first Ottoman siege of Vienna, Sept. 27-Oct. 15, 1529. The Ottoman army commanded by Sultan Sulaimān I failed to capture the Habsburg capital; Shaw, op.cit., 1/93; H.G. Koenigsberger and George L. Mosse,

General History of Europe: Europe in the Sixteenth Century, Chap. III, London 1979, pp.21-53; NCMH, II/514; further historical details can be found in I.AN., III/111-112, "Viyana Seferi"; see also, En 1,

IV/523. L.9, ( آق حصار ) Āq Hīṣār (T.), "White Castle", name of several towns: 1 - Āq Hīṣār in W. Anatolia, Wilayat of Aydin.

2 - Āq Hīṣār in the Marmara district, now called Pamuk-Ora, in the Wilayat of Izmid. 3 - Āq Hīṣār, the name of a small locality in Bosnia, W. Sarajevo, now called Polnyi. 4 - Āq Hīṣār, town in N. Albania, also called Āqce Hīṣār (T.), Kruje Kroya (Alb.); see, En 2, I/309.

Here, the passage refers to the fourth town, which was occupied by the Ottomans. L.9, ( بیج ) Bīj is from the Turkish Beg. It is Wien or Vienna, the capital of Austria; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-C3; but Kemp states that Beg is the Hungarian name for Vienna; this name was used by the Ottomans; Kemp, op.cit., p.291. L.12,

( الحجاز واليمن ), al-Hijāz in Arabia was a tributary state to the Ottomans, but al-Yaman S.W. of Arabia was the Ottoman Eyalet; see, Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIV. Para. 5, cf. Ahlwardt, MS No. 5802.

L.17, ( کوتاهیه ) Kutahya (T.), Kotalon (Gk.), an old city, situated in the centre of the Anadolu Eyalet; ibid., map XXV-A1. L.17,

( اماسیه ), Amasya (T.), Amaseia (Gk.), an old city in Anatolia, Sivas Eyalet; ibid., map XXV-C1. L.20, ( مرزيفون ) Merzifon (T.), Phazeman (Gk.), is situated near Amasya; loc. cit. L.20, ( قروه حصار )

Afyon-Karahisar (T.), Akroinon (Gk.), Karahisar-i Sahib (Older T.), an old town, situated in Anadolu; loc. cit.

Page No. 16.

Para. 1, In his Index, Kaḥḥāla mentions that this scholar died in 735 A.H.; Kaḥḥāla, 9/65. ( البرسوى ) is given as ( البرسوى ) in Kashf-al-Zunūn, IV/46, 106. L.3, ( الفقه الاكبر ) written by Abū Hanīfa. Para. 5: On April 26, 1532, Sultan Sulaimān I left his capital with the large forces under his command, possibly as many as 100,000 fighting men. He entitled this expedition in his diary "The Campaign against the King of Spain"; see Hammer, op.cit., 3/107-9; The King was Charles I, 1516-1556, founder of the Hapsburg dynasty; EWB, p.415; En 1, wrongly states the King was Charles V; see En 1, IV/523; Sulaimān I occupied Guns, Kosek (T.) or Koeszegh, after a long siege; loc. cit., see also, NCMH, 11/515. For the historical analysis and results of this campaign; see Shaw, op.cit., 1/93-4; but the geographical line of the Guns campaign has been given by Pitcher as follows: "Guns 25/4/1532 - 21/11/1532, via Eszek, Babocsa and Rum, and on to Styria, returning via Pettau, Varazdin and Pozega; see, Pitcher, op.cit., Tab. "The Campaigns", p.111, map 22. L.17, ( الان ) al-Mān probably came from Spain (Espan). Para. 6, Execution of Ibrāhīm Pasha, the Grand Vizir; see, A.H. Lybyer, The Government of the Ottoman Empire in the Time of Sulaiman the Magnificent, Cambridge 1913, p.89. Ibrāhīm Pasha as Grand Vizir of the Empire 929-942 A.H.; see, Spiridonaks, op.cit., p.464. L.23, ( الارنؤوت ) al-Arnawūd Arnavutluk (T.) from Arvanid, The older Turkish name of Albania or the Albanian people; Redhouse, op.cit., p.74; also the article of "Arnavutuk" in I.AN., 1/573-592; and see Pitcher in his map XII-A2; further details in E. Legrand, Bibliographie Albanaise, Parise - Athene 1912. In both DURs, Y. al Umarī used another two forms ( الارنود ) and ( الارنور ) instead of ( الارنؤوت ), see Tab. No. IX.

Page No. 17.

Para. 1, Ahlwardt, op.cit., p.216. Para. 4, Ayās Pasha as Grand Vizir of the Empire 942-944 A.H.; Spiridonaks, op.cit., p.464, while the author mentions that Ayas Pasha died in 940 A.H.; cf. the Text. L.12, ( السلطان سليم ) Sultan Salīm I 1512-1520. L.13, ( لطفي باشا ) for Lutfī Pasha as Grand Vizir of the Empire 944-7 A.H.; see Spiridonaks, loc. cit. L.16, ( اخته ) Sahhuban was a daughter of Sultan Salīm I, sister of Sultan Sulaimān I. She married Lutfī Pasha in 936 A.H. = 1530 A.D.; see Alderson, The Structure of the Ottoman Empire, Oxford 1956, Tab. XXIX.

Page No. 18.

Para. 1, "Kemalpaschasade, Gestorben schewwal 940 = May 1534"; Hammer, op.cit., 3/794. Para. 2, see S.K. al-Jamīl, article No. 2, Chap. "The Ottoman Conquest of Iraq in 1534 A.D." Also see "Conquest of Mesopotamia" in Shaw, op.cit., 1/95-6; Sultan Sulaimān I conquered Baghdad from the Persians in 1535 A.D. = 942 A.H. and left Baghdad on April 1, 1535. Hammer, op.cit., 3/144, 153-5; En 1, IV/523; R.B. Merriman, Suleiman The Magnificent 1520-1566, Harvard 1944, p.239; and see one of the most important Turkish sources, I.A.N., III CÜZ, "Irakeyn Seferi 1534-5" pp.116-118; see also Longrigg, op.cit., p.22-3. In his book, Pitcher named the campaign Persia. The geographical line of this campaign appears as follows:- to Persia (11/6/1534 - 8/1/1536) via Konya, Sivas, Erzurum and Erīcīs to Tabrīz, then on to Sultāniyye, Dargazīn, Qaşr-ı-Shīrīn and Baghdād, where the Sultan stayed from 30/12/1534 - 31/5/1535, except for a short religious visit to Najaf and Karbalā'. He returned via Baghdad to Kurdistan, staying a month near Irbīl, then crossing the Zagros to Tabriz again, and marched via Khoy - Lake Van - Amid - Urfa - Aleppo - Adana - Konya - Istanbul; Pitcher, op.cit., Tab. of the Campaigns, p.111; also map No. XXXII. L.7, ( سلطانیه ), Sultāniyya is the city situated in a pleasant and fertile plain, N.W. Iran; Kinneir, op.cit., pp.122-3;



also see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-C2; Longrigg wrongly named this city "Sulaimāniyya"; Longrigg, op.cit., p.22; Sulaimāniyya is situated in N.E. Iraq. L.10, ( انفتح العراق ), p. his. (= 931 A.H.) "Iraq has been conquered"; Kemp, op.cit., p.297; but A. 'Azzāwī wrongly reads ( فتحنا ) instead of ( انفتح ); see IBL, 4/29; for historical details see Munshi'at of Feridun, 1/584. L.11, ( سور بغداد ) Sūr of Eastern Baghdād - Ruṣāfa - ; see Le Strange, Lands of the Eastern Caliphate, Chap. 1, pp.50-53; also see, Nājī Ma'rūf, The planning of Baghdād, Baghdad 1966. L.11, ( قبر الحسين ) The tomb of al-Husain is situated in Karbalā' in Iraq; Le Strange, op.cit., p.105. L.11, ( قبر موسى الكاظم ) The tomb of Mūsā al-Kāzīm is situated in Northern Baghdad. L.12, ( قبر ابي حنيفة ) The tomb of Abū Hanīfā al-Nu'mān is situated in Northern Baghdad; a dome was built over his tomb in 459 A.H. = 1066 A.D.; En 2, 1/123. L.13, ( قبر الشيخ عبد القادر الكيلاني ) The tomb of 'Abdul-Qādir al Gīlānī is situated in Baghdad; Sultan Sulaimān I had a beautiful turba built in 941 A.H. = 1535 A.D., ibid., 1/70. L.13, ( وان ) Van (Artemita) is situated two miles from a lake of the same name in E. Anatolia. Details about Van in Kinneir, op.cit., p.327-8; also see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-B1. L.17, ( انطاكية ), Antakya (T.), Antioch (Gk.), an old city situated in N.W. Syria; ibid., map XXXII-A1.

#### Page No. 19.

Para. 2, Ibrāhīm Pasha, a Grand Vizir of Sulaimān I, died 21 Ramaḍān 942 = March 14-15, 1536; see, Shaw, op.cit., 1/98, "The Execution of Ibrāhīm Pasha ...". L.5, ( سليمان باشا ), He is Sulaimān Pasha Hadīm; see I.AN., 114/194-5; also Hammer, op.cit., 3/793. L.6, ( زبيدة ) Zubaida is situated in Yaman; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXIV-B2. L.13, ( اصبهان ) Ispahān, the famous Iranian city, Iṣfahān as present name; Kinneir, op.cit., pp.109-111; also see, Buckingham, Travels in Assyria, Media, and Persia, vol. I, Chapters "XII, XIII, XIV and XV, pp.348- . L.15, ( بلخ ) Balkh, the

province of Balkh, the ancient Bactria and formerly included in Khurasān, it is the capital of the province, situated on the River Dehast; Kinneir, op.cit., p.187; see also one of the most important Arabic sources; Yāqūt, 2/713. L.17, Piri Muḥammad, appears as ( پيرى ) in MSS; corr. from I.AN., loc. cit. L.18, ( فلبه ) Filibe (T.), Philippopolis (Gk.), Plovdiv (Sl.) an old city situated in Ottoman Rumeli. It is a Bulgarian city at present; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXVI Bl. L.18, ( غلطه ), The town of Galata, one of the suburbs of Constantinople Map of Constantinople in Hammer, op.cit., 10/IV. "Mahalle von Galata; also map of Istanbul, BZTI, under "Stadtmauer Galata", pp.320-3.

#### Page No. 20.

Para. 1; in 1537 A.D., Sultan Sulaimān I accompanied the expedition against Corfu but stayed himself at Walona; En 1, IV/524; historical details in, I.AN., III/122-3; Bogdan Seferi 1538 in the article "Sulaimān"; also see, Shaw, op.cit., 1/89-9, "War in the Mediterranean", and NCMH, II/518; but Pitcher names this campaign "Corfu". The geographical route of the Ottoman army appears as follows: "To Corfu 17/5/1537 - 22/11/1537, via Filibe - Uskup - Elbasan - Avlonya; returning via Manastir - Salanica"; Pitcher, op.cit., Tab. of Campaigns, p.111; map No. 22. L.3, ( الونه ), Valona or Avlonya (T.) in Albaniya; ibid., map XXVI-A2. L.3, ( دلونيه ) Delvino (T.), Delvinon (Gk.) in Albaniya, loc. cit. Para. 4, Tahmāsp I, Shah Ismā'il's eldest son, was born on 22 Feb. 1514. He was therefore only ten years and three months old when he succeeded his father on the throne, he was the second ruler of Persia of the Safawi dynasty; see En 1, IV/615; also see, Savory, Iran under Safavids, p.51. LL.11-12, ( دولة الشروانية ), the old state of Shīrwān, ended by the Safavids in 1538 A.D. Further details in, En 1, IV/383-5, article entitled "The Shirwanshah" by W. Barthold. L.17, ( ازنیک ), Iznik (T.), Nicaea (Gk.), an old city situated in N.W. Anatolia, Eyalet of Cezayir; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-A1.

Page No. 21.

L.2, ( بلاد الازبك ), Uzbekistan; see "Uzbek", article by V. Minorsky in En 1, VI/1063-5. L.2, ( عبيد الله خان ) abū-Ghāzī 'Ubaidallāh, died 946 A.H. = 1539 A.D.; cf. Bosworth, The Islamic Dynasties, Edinburgh 1967, Tab. 60, p.155. L.3, ( عبد الله خان ) 'Abdallāh I, cf. loc. cit. Para. 4, It is the ninth campaign of Sultan Sulaimān I; I.AN., III/127. See also, Shaw, op.cit., 1/101/2, "Struggles with the Habsburgs"; The geographical route of this campaign appears as: to Ofen and back; see, Pitcher, op.cit., p.111, also map 22. L.11, ( تابور ) Tabur is a town situated in S. Bohemia in Czechoslovakia; see, Norman J.G. Pounds, Eastern Europe, London 1969, p.435.

Page No. 22.

Para. 2, For historical events following Zapolya's death August 22, 1540; see, Shaw, op.cit., 1/102; see also NCMH, II/523-4. Hungary Campaign 20/6/1541, to Ofen and back; see, Pitcher, op.cit., p.111; details about this campaign in: I.AN., III/127-8. L.8, ( اسططبور ), it is probably Iskrapar; cf. ibid., map XXVI-A2. L.9, ( وسوه ), Vizvar is situated in the Eyalet of Kanice during the Ottoman period. It is in S. Hungary at present; ibid., map XXIX-B3. Para. 3, cf. Text, p.17. L.15, For Hadim Sulaimān Pasha as a Grand Vizir of the Empire 947-950 A.H., see Spiridonaks, op.cit., App. No. IV.

Page No. 23.

Para. 2, This is the fifth Hungarian campaign commanded by Sultan Sulaimān I, during the summer of 1543; see, Shaw, op.cit., 1/102; also NCMH., II/524-5; the geographical line of this campaign 23/4/1543 - 16/11/1543; runs - via Eszik - Silos - Ofen to Gram and Tata; back via Pest; see Pitcher, op.cit., p.111. L.7, ( واليه ) Velika in

Salvonla; NCMH., II/524. L.8, ( سفل ) I was unable to find the situation of this castle. L.8, ( لامش ), it is probably Levies Castle in Styria; loc. cit. L.9, ( استرغون ), Estergon (T.), Esztergon (Hung.), Gran (Ge.) the famous city in Hungary; see, Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-B2. L.9, ( استولين ), Ustoini Belgrad; details in; I.AN., III/129. This campaign was continued to 1544 A.D.; it was entrusted to the frontier begs, Muḥammad Pasha, the commander at Buda, took Nograd, Hatvan and also Visegrad; NCMH., II/524; Historical details about this campaign; see, I.AN., III/128-9. L.18, ( رستم باشا ); for a Rustam Pasha as a Grand Vizir of the Empire 951-960 A.H.; see Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. No. IV. L.19, ( خانم سلطان ), The name of Sultan Sulaimān's I daughter is Mihrimah 928-985 A.H.; she married Rustam Pasha in 946 A.H. = 1539 A.D.; see, Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XXX.

#### Page No. 24.

Para. 1, The scholar's name: ( محي الدين محمد بن علي الرومي الحنفي ); see, Hammer, op.cit., 3/794. L.10, ( دولة الزيدية ), al-Zaidiyah was a state in Yaman; En 1, IV/1197-8; The Zaidīs of Yaman belonged to the family of al-Qāsim; see Harold Ingram, The Yaman, London 1963, p.36. Para. 7, details in A. Nawā'ī, Shah Tahmāsip Safawī, Iran 1350 A.H., pp.61-3.

#### Page No. 25.

Para. 2, Qās Mīrza-Khān, brother of Shah Tahmāsip I, ruled Shīrwān during the year 945 A.H.; see, Sykes, op.cit., 11/248; see also ZUB., p.195. L.5, ( شروان ), Shīrwān is the largest province and most important division of the South Caucasus; Kinneir, op.cit., "Schirvan", pp.357-362. Para. 4, ( قادری اندی ), Kadri Efendi, Abgesetzt 949 A.H. = 1542 A.D.; Hammer, op.cit., 3/794. Para. 5, details in, I.AN., article entitled "Tebriz Seferi", III/131-132; see also "Suleyman's Second Iranian Expedition" in Shaw, op.cit., 1/104-5. L.16,

( الفاس میرزا خان ), al-Qās Mirzā, Tahmāsp's brother in Savory, op.cit., pp.62-3; see also ZUB., pp.196-7, and IBI., 4/54. L.17, ( بلاد درکزیں ) appears in Arabic as ( بلاد دزورین ); "Bellad drusin" in C. Niebuhr, "Voyage en Arabie et en d'autres pays circonvoisins"; Tome Second, MDCCLXXX, p.215. Daragzin is situated in W. Iran; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-C2. L.18, ( همدان ) Hamadān : This Iranian city is famed for its considerable trade; it is also a mart of Commerce between Ispahān and Baghdad, and between Baghdad and Tehran; cf. Kinneir, op.cit., pp.126-7; Pitcher, loc. cit. L.18, ( اذربجان ), "Azerbaijān is that part of Media which is separated from Armenia by the River Araxes, and from Irak, by the Kizillozein, or Golden Stream. It has the Caspian Sea and Gilan to the East, and Armenia and Kurdistan to the West; Kinneir, op.cit., p.148. L.19, ( اوطاق ), Otaq (T.), a tent, a nomad's house that can be moved from place to place; Redhouse, op.cit., p.235.

Page No. 26.

L.2, 'Alī Pasha Medr. in Istanbul; BZTI, C4-21. L.3, Sultan Muḥammad Medr. in Būrṣa; Ewliya Celebi, Travels, 11/15. Para. 3, For historical details; I.AN., III/133; but in ZUB., the author ascribed these events to the year 955 A.H.; cf. ZUB., pp.196-7. L.12, ( البيا ) or ( البابا ), The Bābān Kurds of Sulaimāniya in Iraq, ruled between the Diyālah and Lesser Zāb in N.E. of Irāq; see, C.J. Edmonds, Kurds, Turks and Arabs, London 1951, pp.53-4. L.15, ( الوزير ); The Vazīr was Wālī of Baghdād, Ḥāj Muḥammad Pasha; see, IBI., 4/54. L.19, Muṣṭafā Pasha Medr. in Istanbul, BZTI, C2-5, also B2-1.

Page No. 27.

Para. 2, This is Suleymaniya Camil in Istanbul; BZTI, E5-17, pp.464-496. Para. 4, Tahmāsp I, second ruler of Persia of the Ṣafawī dynasty; see Malcolm, History of Persia, London 1815, 1.505-508; see also

En 1, IV/615. Para. 5, see "The Mediterranean War, 1551-1562" in Shaw, *op.cit.*, pp.105-6; that Ottomans captured Tripoli on Aug. 15, 1551 A.D.; also see R.B. Merriman, *op.cit.*, pp.206-233; and H. Lamb, *op.cit.*, p.201, 224.

Page No. 28.

Para. 1; the Ottomans captured Temesvar on July 26, 1552, and most of Transylvania during the summer of 1552, see "The Transylvanian Campaign and the Rise of Mehmet Sokullu"; Shaw, *op.cit.*, 1/105; also cf. I.AN., 111/134, article entitled "Tamshvar Muhasarasi 23 April, 1552". L.3, ( طمشوار ), Temesvar, a city in the Danube lands; Pitcher, *op.cit.*, map XXIX-C3; as Eyalet, see *ibid.*, map XXIV. Para. 2, cf. Text, p.17, L.13 with notes. Para. 3, 'Abdul-Laṭīf Khan, died in 947 A.H. = 1540 A.D.; see Bosworth, *op.cit.*, Tab. 60, p.155. Para. 5, see Noel Barber, The Sultans, New York 1973, pp.54-5. L.18, Muṣṭafā Sultan was born in 921 A.H. = 1515 A.D.; executed in 960 A.H. = 1553 A.D.; see Alderson, *op.cit.*, Tab. XXX. L.20, Murād (or Mehmed), son of Muṣṭafā, executed in 960 A.H. = 1553 A.D. loc. cit. L.21, ( مکر رستم ) is p. his. (= 960 A.H.). L.23, ( احمد پاشا ) is Kara Aḥmad Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 960-2 A.H.; loc. cit.

Page No. 29.

Para. 1, see "Nahcivan Seferi 1553-5" article in I.AN., 111/136. L.7, ( شهرزور ), Shahir-Zūr, is the name of the Ottoman Pashalik in N.E. of Iraq which was ruled by the Bābān Kurds in the 18th century; see Niebuhr, *op.cit.*, Tome Second, p.268. "Schahhr essul" in loc. cit. Para. 4, For further information about this Ottoman campaign against Iran; see, I.AN., 111/136. L.10, ( نجحوان ), Nahcivan (T.), Nakhichevan is situated in old Azerbaijan, it is situated in Armenia at present; Pitcher, *op.cit.*, map XXXII-C1. L.11, ( اماسیه ) or ( اماسیه ), noted above; cf. Text, p.15, L.17 and its notes.

Para. 5, see, Feridun Bey, op.cit., 1/554; see also, Hammer, op.cit., 1/384-427. L.16, ( وندیک ), Venedik (T), Venice in Italy. It is Venetian Republic; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIV; also map XXI-A1. This is the Ottoman campaign against Italy; see, H. Lamb, op.cit., p.155, pp.158-60. L.16, ( اشنيه ) I was not able to find the situation of this town. L.18, The execution of Aḥmad Pasha by Sultan Sulaimān I took place on Sept. 28, 1555; cf. En 1, IV/524.

#### Page No. 30.

L.8, ( ابن مقله ), Muḥammad Ibn 'Alī Ibn al-Ḥusain Muḡla "Abū 'Alī al-Wazīr", 272-328 A.H.; see Ibn Khalikān, Wafayāt ..., 2/16. Para. 4, see Ahlwardt, MS., No. 963.

#### Page No. 31.

L.2, ( البارود خانه ), Barut-Khana (T.) is a powdermill, see Redhouse, op.cit., p.321. L.3, ( حصار کولی ), Gol hisar, is a town situated in S.W. Anatolia; Pitcher, map VII-B3. Para. 4, see I.AN., 111/141; see also Hammer, op.cit., 5/749. L.10, ( السلطان سليم ), Sultan Salīm II who succeeded his father Sultan Sulaimān I; see App. No. 2. L.10, ( بایزید ), Bāyazīd was born in 931 A.H. = 1525 A.D.; executed in 969 A.H. = 1561 A.D.; Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XXX. Para. 5, In ATH., the author ascribed this information to the year 965 A.H.; cf. ZUB., p.198. Para. 7, cf. H. Lamb, op.cit., pp.234-43. "In 967 A.H. = 1559 A.D. Bāyazīd rebelled and sought refuge in Iran. He was received with much ceremony at Tabriz, but his troops were distributed among the Persian contingents"; Sykes, op.cit., 11/249.

#### Page No. 32.

Para. 2, cf. I.AN., 111/142-3. Para. 3, for details about Rustam Pasha, see I.AN., 111/143, Son-in-law of Sulaimān I; see, Lamb,

op.cit., p.210-215. Para. 4, Semlîz 'Alî Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 968-972 A.H.; Spiridonaks, op.cit., p.464; details in I.AN., 111/143.

### Page No. 33.

Para. 1; "Sultan Sulaimân I opened a correspondence for the surrender of his son; Tahmâsp showed himself, and was too ready to sell Bayazîd"; Sykes, op.cit., 11/249, in 21 Dhulqî'da 969 A.H. = 23 July, 1562 A.D.; I.AN., 111/143. L.5, ( وبعت المال ): The price paid to Shah Tahmâsp was 400,000 pieces of gold; Sykes, op.cit., 11/249. L.6, ( اورخان ), Orkhan, ( محمود ) Maḥmūd, ( عبد الله ) 'Abdullāh, were executed in 969 A.H. = 1561 A.D.; Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XXX; but ( عنان ) Osman was executed in 967 A.H. = 1560 A.D., see loc. cit. Para. 4, Sykes states: "In A.H. 969 = 1561 A.D. Bayazîd and four of his sons were handed over to the Ottoman emissaries and were executed"; Sykes, op.cit., 11/249; Bāyazîd himself was executed in Sept. 1561 A.D. V.J. Parry, op.cit., p.99. L.14, ( سيواس ) Sivas (T.), Sebasten (Gk.), is situated in Anatolia; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-C1; Sivas as Eyalet; see, ibid., map XXIV. L.15, ( ظلم ) is p. his. (= 970 A.H.). L.16, ( الري ), Rey (P.). The ancient town of Rey (Rhoges) (Gk.) is situated in N. Iran; Le Strange, op.cit., chap. 15.

### Page No. 34.

L.6, Qāsim al-'Umarī. The founder of the 'Umarī house in Mosul to which city he emigrated from the Hījāz during the sixteenth century; for historical details see Kemp, op.cit., Chap. IV, p.104; he died in 1000 A.H.; MAN., 2/151-3. L.6, 'Āṣim bin Imām 'Umar bin al-Khattāb, loc. cit. L.7, ( جامع العمريه ), Jāmi' al-'Umarīyya in Mosul; Kemp, op.cit., map No. 6; see also MAN., 2/153; and Daiwachī, Jawāmi' al-Mawṣil, pp.132-3. L.8, ( باب العراق ), Bāb al-Īrāq is a quarter in Mosul where the 'Umarīs reside. L.11,



( عثمان بن علي بن الحاج قاسم ); see Kemp, op.cit., Tab. No. I. L.11, ( ملوك الموصل ), the author and his brother Muhammad Amīn al-Khatīb used (Mulūk) of the Jalīlī Wālīs of Mosul as they used (Mulūk Baghdad) of the Wālīs of Baghdad; see MAN., 1/139, p.6. L.12, ( محمد ), Muhammad al-'Umarī, MAN., 1/152. L.12, ( موسى ), Mūsā al 'Umarī, ibid., 2/153-54. L.16, ( نهر جكجه ), Cekmeceh River is near Istanbul; Pitcher, op.cit., map X-B2. Para. 5, cf., E.J.W. Gibb, A History of Ottoman Poetry, Vol. 111, p.59.

Page No. 35.

Para. 1, Semiz 'Alī Pasha (Vefat) in 1565 A.D.; details in, I.AN., 111/147. L.4, ( مصطفى باشا ), Muṣṭafā Pasha, Grand Vizir of the Empire. Thus in DUR.; but in his book, Spiridonakis mentions that Tavil Mehmet Pasha was appointed as Grand Vizir after Semiz 'Alī Pasha; cf. Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.464. Para. 2, cf. Savory, op.cit., p.52. L.6, ( گیلان ), "Gilan: The province of Gilan runs along the S.W. shore of Caspian and is bordered on the South and S.W. by Iraq and Mazanderaun. On the North by Shirvan, and on the West by Azerbigan;" Kinnelr, op.cit., p.159. For more geographical details; see Marco Polo, The Travels, p.50; see also the old Arabian geographical monograph, Taq, p.426. L.8, ( اسکدار ) Uskudār, thus in DUR; but the correct name of that city is ( سکنوار ); Sigetwar (T.), Szigeth (Gk.), Szigetvar (Hung.). For details about the siege of Sigetwar; see En 1, IV/524; see also Pitcher, op.cit., p.129. Para. 6, cf. Text, para. 1, p.35 with notes. Para. 7, Muhammad Pasha, Grand Vizir of the Ottoman Empire; I.AN., 111/148; He is Tavil Mehmet Pasha; cf. Text, para. 1, p.35. Para. 8, I.AN., 111/148-9.

Page No. 36.

Para. 1, This is the death of Sultan Sulaimān I. The Sultan died on the

night of Sept. 5/6, 1566 A.D.; and his death was kept secret by Sokolli for three weeks to prevent trouble in the army and to give Salīm II time to gain possession of his body. The Sultan was buried in the Sulaimāniya mosque; En 1, IV/524. L.2, ( سكتوار ) Siketvar (T.); Szigethvar on the River Drave in Hungary; Redhouse, op.cit., p.1065; also cf. note of L.8, Text, p.35. L.10, ( الوزير محمد باشا ); He is Muḥammad Pasha Sokolli; see above, note of para 1. L.11, ( السلطان سليم ) is Sultan Salīm II, eleventh Sultan of the Ottoman Empire, reigned 974-982 A.H. = 1566-1574 A.D., En 1, IV/217. L.19, ( ابو السعود ), Abū al-Su'ūd Efendi, 1490-1574 A.D.; for historical details, see Shaw, op.cit., 1/332. Para. 2, ( مسيح باشا ) Masīḥ Pasha, Grand Vizir of the Ottoman Empire; Hammer, op.cit., 11/174, 197, 329. In his book, Spiridonakis does not mention this Grand Vizir; cf. Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.464.

#### Page No. 37.

Para. 1, cf. IBI, 4/106-7, but 'Azzāwī ascribed that to the year 975 A.H. LL.1-2, ( بلاد المشعشع ), Bilād al-Musha'sh' is Huwaizah 'Imarah, S.E. Iraq; for details; see Jāsim Shibr, Tārīkh al-Musha'shī'īn wa Tarājīm A'lāmiḥim, Najaf 1965. L.3, ( اسکندر باشا ) Iskandar Pasha, wālī of Baghdād. L.10, ( الشرفاء ): The Sādah or Ashrāf in Mosul, their relationship with 'Umaris was strained; Kemp, op.cit., p.110. Para. 4, see Ishāqī, op.cit., p.151; see also ZUB., pp.199-200. LL.16-17, ( الوزير محمود باشا ) Wālī of Egypt 973-75 A.H.; loc. cit.

#### Page No. 38.

Para. 1, This is the "Reconquest of the Yaman", 1568 A.D.; see Shaw, op.cit., 1/176. The principal source for this reconquest is Ghāyat al-Amānī fī Akhbār al-Qutr al-Yamānī, by Yahyā b. al-Ḥusain b. al-Mansūr al-Qāsim b. al-Mu'ayyad al-Yamānī, ed. by Sa'id 'Abdul-Fattāḥ 'Ashūr,

2 vols., Cairo 1968, 2/745. Para. 2, B. Spuler does not mention these important historical events in article "Gilan"; cf. En 2, 11/1111-1112. Para. 4, For Murād Pasha as the Ottoman Vizir; see I.AN., 8/651-4; about Maḥmūd Pasha "Kethudāsi"; cf. ZUB., p.200. Para. 7, cf. ZUB., p.200. L.19, ( مدينة الحبشة ), "The Turkish province of Abyssinia, consisting of the Island of Musawwa"; see, Redhouse, op.cit., p.761.

Page No. 39.

Para. 1, This is the conquest of Cyprus; see, "Kibris" article in I.AN., 6/674; for historical details with notes see Sir George Hill, A History of Cyprus, vol. III, Chap. XV, "The Turkish Conquest", pp.950-1040, and see also Hammer, op.cit., 3/578-9. Para. 5, Asīk Celebi, was the famous Turkish literary man during the sixteenth century; for details, see I.AN., 1/695-701; for details in English, see E.J.W. Gibb, A History of Ottoman poetry, vol. V, p.118. Para. 6, I was not able to find the source of this information. L.10, ( دولة كـرـای ) Dawlat Girāy I. Khan of the Crimea appointed 958 A.H. = 1551 A.D., see Bosworth, op.cit., Tab. 61, p.157; Giray itself, surname of the family of the Khans of the Crimea; Redhouse, op.cit., p.1534; for further details; see Alan Fisher, The Crimean Tatars, U.S. 1978. L.10, ( القرم ), al-Qarm (A.), Krim (T.), Crimea, the Ottoman tributary state; see the map of the political divisions of the Ottoman Empire in 1609, in Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIV. Para. 9, This is the Battle of Lepanto, 7th October, 1571 between the Ottomans and the league of Venice - Spain and the papacy which led to the great Christian victory at Lepanto. For an historical analysis of this Battle, see, Shaw, op.cit., 1/178-9. Para. 10, see, Yahyā b. al-Husain, op.cit., 2/743. Para. 11, This is the war in the Eastern Seas; Shaw, op.cit., 1/99-100; for details about the Portuguese Navy in the Indian Ocean and the Arabian Sea; see, the article entitled "Some Early Travels in Arabia" by C.F. Beckingham, JRAS, 1949, pp.155-176; for details about the Portuguese Navy as sea power during the 16th century; see, W.E.D.

Allen, Problems of Turkish Power in the sixteenth century, London 1963, pp.32-3. L.19, ( بحر المحيط ); The Indian Ocean.

Page No. 40.

Para. 1, ( احمد باشا ) Kara Ahmet Pasha, Grand Vizir of the Ottoman Empire 960-2 A.H.; Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. IV, p.464.

Para. 2, cf., Paçavi Ibrāhīm, Tarih, Istanbul 1283, II/101 and 197.

Para. 3, ( محمد باشا ): He is Tavil Mehmet Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Ottoman Empire 972-987 A.H.; Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. IV, p.464; This wazīr was Wālī of Mosul; see, App. No. 5. L.16, ( برکلی ), Bergri, a Turkish town situated in the North of the Van Lake; Pitcher, map XXXII-B1. L.16, Mustafā Pasha Medr. in Istanbul; BZTI, p.317. Para. 6-, The Ottoman conquest of Cyprus by Ulce 'Alī Pasha, after Sultan Salīm II rebuilt the entire fleet adding eight of the largest capital ships ever seen in the Mediterranean; Shaw, op.cit., 1/178. In 1574 A.D., 'Uluc (Ulce) Alī Pasha recovered Tunis finally after it was recaptured by Don Juan of Austria in 1573 A.D.; Hammer, op.cit., 3/603-5; see also Pitcher, op.cit., p.118; thus the Ottoman power for a moment reached as far west as Fez. L.18, ( القابودان ), Gapudan (T.), Capitano (It.), a commander in the Imperial Ottoman Navy; Redhouse, op.cit., p.1536. L.19, ( قلع علي باشا ) "Kapudan Pascha Kilidsch Ali"; Hammer, op.cit., 3/603. L.19, ( جبال قلادره ): It is ( قلادره ) in Arabic sources. It is an island, situated E. Cyprus; see ZUB., p.201, n.1, from Yāqūt, 4/392; Its names in European source "Kythrea or Galathia" and is situated in the centre of Cyprus; see "Map of Cyprus" by R. Hamilton Lang in his book, Cyprus, London, 1878; see also G. Hill, op.cit., III/119. L.21, ( بحه ); this appears as ( نجه ) in al-Nahrawālī, p.373; It appears, however, as ( بحه ) in ZUB., p.201, n.2. L.21, ( مو ), Muḥ: It is possibly Mohacs in Southern Hungary; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-B3. L.22, ( بيرازوين ): It is Peterwardin, situated in Hungary; Pitcher, op.cit., map X-A1. L.23, ( قلعة اولاد ) appears as ( اولاد ) in Nahrawālī, p.374, cf. ZUB., p.201, n.4.

Page No. 41.

L.2, ( جزيرة حلق الوادى ), Halq-alwādī (A.), Goletta (Hung.) La Goulette (F.), the fort at the entrance to Tunis harbour; see Pitcher, op.cit., p.108. LL.1-26, In 1535 there was a Spanish occupation of the country which lasted until 1574, and is usually known as the Spanish Protectorate, for at least in theory the Hafsid were still rulers. The occupation by the Ottomans of Algeria in 1569 gave them an opportunity to establish bases from which they could attack Tunisia, and eventually in 1574, Sinan Pasha chased the Spaniards out of the country and put an end to both the Hafsid dynasty and the Spanish Protectorate; see En 2, "Hafsid" article, by H.R. Idris; and see, Bosworth, op.cit., pp.36-7.

Page No. 42.

L.4, ( دار السعادة ): The Imperial Palace, or the women's apartments in it; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1059. Para. 4, This is the Ottoman conquest of Cyprus; see Hammer, op.cit., 3/607-8; see also G. Hill, op.cit., vol. III, pp.950-1037. L.10, ( ماغوسه ): Magosa or Famagusta is a city situated in E. Cyprus Island; Pitcher, op.cit., map XIII-C3. L.10, ( باف ), Bāf is situated in the West of Cyprus; see ibid., map XXV-B3. L.10, ( كرنيه ), Kerinia Castle appears as ( كرنيه ) in MSS. It is a city situated in Cyprus; see, the map of Cyprus, Hamilton Lang, op.cit.,; see also, I.A.N., 6/615. L.10, ( كفالونيا ), Cephalonia or Kefallina is an island situated in Western Greece in Mediterranean Sea; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XVI-B3. L.11, ( كورفوس ); Corfu or Kerkira is an island situated in Western Greece and Albanya; see, loc. cit. L.11, ( اوکوت ): I was not able to find the situation of this castle. L.11, ( سبوت ) Sopoto in N. Albanya, or Sopoto in S. Greece; see ibid., map XXIII-B1. L.15, ( شهر سوق ) Shahr-Sūq is a quarter in Mosul, near the place of Bāb al-'Irāq. The name Shar-Sūq comes from "Chahar-Sūq" (T. & P.) which means "The fourth Market".

Para. 6, Sultan Salīm II died in the night of Dec. 12/13, 1574 A.D. = Sha'bān 27-28, 932 A.H. as the result of an accident in the palace; see, En. 1, vol. IV., p.218; see also Hammer, op.cit., 4/11-12.

Page No. 43.

L.5, ( هذا المراد ) is p. his. (= 982 A.H.) L.6, ( اخوته الخمسة ) are 'Abdullāh, Cihagır, Muṣṭafā, Osmān and Sulaymān. They were executed on Dec. 21, 1574 A.D.; see Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XXXI.

Page No. 44.

Para. 1, ( میر ) appears as Emri in E.J.W. Gibb, op.cit., 111/133, 160. Para. 5, cf., I.A.N., 8/651. L.15, ( الجلاية ) al-Jilāliyya; "A sect of Muslims who more especially revered the terrible attributes of the Divine majesty;" see Redhouse, op.cit., p.668. L.16, ( قرمان ) Qarmān is situated in E. Anatolia, see Taq., p.378. Para. 6, For details about the death of Ṭahmāsp, see Sykes, op.cit., 2/253 4; see also RAWD., fol. 73a, monograph entitled "pīrī khan"; for details about Pīrī Khan Khanum; see En 2, IV/188.

Page No. 45.

Para. 2, Ismā'il II, the Shah of Iran was born 940 A.H. = 1533 A.D.; died 13 Ramadān 985-24 A.H. = November 1577 A.D.; son of Shah Ṭahmāsp 984-5 A.H. = 1576-7 A.D., of the Safawid dynasty; En 2, IV/188. Para. 3, cf. Bosworth, op.cit., p.38. L.22, ( الغرب ) or ( المغرب ) is Morroco.

Page No. 46.

Para. 1, For Hāmid Efendi; see Hammer, op.cit., 4/702. Para. 2, For historical details about the Turkish conquest of Cyprus; see

Str G. Hill, op.cit., vol. III, pp.950-1037. L.8, ( صدده ),  
 Ṣa'da is a town in Yaman, see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXIV-B2. L.8,  
 ( جبل الahnūm ), al Ahnūm is situated in Yaman; see Khaz.,  
 1/397. L.12, ( نیشانجی ), for details about Nišanċi, see  
 I.AN., 9/299-302. Para. 5, cf. Bosworth, op.cit., p.38. Para. 6-,  
 for further details; see I.AN., 8/735. L.20, ( ينكى قلعه )  
 Yangi Qal'a, I was not able to find the situation of this castle.

Page No. 47.

L.1, ( تفليس ), Teflis is the capital of Georgia, the present  
 Tbilisi; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXI-C2. L.3, ( اسلاميه ),  
 Islāmiya. It is possibly situated in Gurjistan, but there is another  
 town called Islīmye, or Sliven in Bulgaria; cf. ibid., map X-B2.  
 L.6, ( قلطه ) or ( غلطه ), Galata, the town of Galata, one of  
 the suburbs of Constantinople; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1384; see  
 also Text, p.19, n. L.18. Para. 2, cf. I.AN., 8/617; see also  
 "Conquest of the Caucasus" in Shaw, op.cit., 1/181. L.8, ( شماغ ),  
 Shamahī (T.), Shamākhā, a city in Shīrwān, near Baku, the present  
 Sumgait, which is situated in Azerbaijan; see Pitcher, op.cit., map  
 XXXI-D2; and cf. NOA, map 50-G6. L.10, ( باب الابواب ),  
 Bāb al Abwāb is the geographical name given by the Arabs to Derbent.  
 It is the famous harbour on Caspian Sea, named Daghestan at present;  
 see Le Strange, op.cit., chap. 12, p.213. Para. 3, cf. Stanley  
 Lane Poole, The Mohammadan Dynasties, Paris 1925, pp.60-2. Para. 6,  
 for historical details; see I.AN., 8/618. He is Muḥammad Sokollī.  
 In his book, Spiridonakis cites that the Grand Vizir was Ṭawīl Muḥammad  
 Pasha; cf. Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.464; but Hammer, cites another  
 Grand Vizir between Muḥammad Pasha and Sinān Pasha. His name is  
 Aḥmad Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire until 1580 A.D.; cf. Hammer,  
op.cit., 4/700; see also "The Execution of Sokullu Mehmet Pasha" in  
 Shaw, op.cit., 1/182; Creasy states that his death took place in 1578  
 A.D.; cf. E.S. Creasy, History of the Ottoman Turks, Beirut 1961, p.225.

Para. 7, "The Ottoman troops from the Crimea and their Tartar auxiliaries took an important part in those campaigns in the regions of the Caucasus"; see Hammer, op.cit., 4/78-9. L.22, ( كنجہ ), Ganja (P.) is situated in Caucasia; see, Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXI-C2; it appears as König in Hammer, op.cit., 4/78. L.22, ( بردعہ ), Birdi'a in Caucasia, see Tag, pp.402-3; it appears as Pferde in Hammer, op.cit., 4/79.

Page No. 48.

Para. 1, cf. Sykes, op.cit., 2/256-7; see also Naṣrullāh Falsafī, Sindakānī Shāh Abbās Awwal, vol. 2, Tehran 1334, 2/176. L.6, ( السلطان مراد ) is Murād III, The 12th Sultan of the Empire; see App. No. 2. Para. 3, Qādī-Zādeh, the Muftī of the Empire; Hammer, op.cit., 4/702. Para. 4, see "War with Iran" in Shaw, op.cit., 1/182; for further details, see I.AN., 8/618. LL.17-18, ( الشاه محمد ) is Muḥammad Khudābanda 1579-1587 A.D.; see Sykes, op.cit., 2/254-5.

Page No. 49.

L.5, ( الدرهم ): The Turkish dirham weight of 16 Kirats was equivalent to 50 grains 3.2 grammes; see Gibb and Bowen, Islamic Society and the West, Oxford 1957, vol. I, part 2, p.40, n.6. L.13, ( حصن ظفار داود ) Huṣn Zafār Dawūd is situated in Yaman Khaz., 1/187. L.16, ( حصن مدع ), Mada' is situated in Yaman; see ibid., 1/47. L.16, حصن ذی مرممر is situated in Yaman or ( نمرمر ) as it appears in loc. cit.

Page No. 50.

Para. 3, cf. GHA., pp.43-4. L.11, ( نهر الدجيل ): The Dujaīl River and village are situated in the centre of Iraq; see Tag, p.289; see also Yāqūt., 1/395, 552; and Le Strange, op.cit., Chap. 3,



"Iraq". L.14, ( محمد ): He is Muhammad III, b. 973 A.H. = 1566 A.D., d. 1012 A.H. = 1603 A.D.; see Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XXXII, XXXIII. Para. 5, Sinān Pasha replaced from his position as a Grand Vizir of the Empire on 20 Dhulqī'dā 990 A.H. = 5 Dec. 1582 A.D.; see Hammer, op.cit., App. VI, 4/700.

#### Page No. 51.

Para. 1, Sinān Pasha Jāmi' in Damascus, known as Sināniyya Mosque. Para. 2, cf. Sykes, op.cit., 11/256-7. Para. 3, MUH., 2/74. L.11, ( قاعة بلاد الك صاروخان ), "Saruhan - Ocullarī, Garbī Anadolu 'da, merkezī Manisa Olmak Uzere," for historical details and its "Selçukīn" background, see I.AN., 10/239-244; for geographical details, see Evliya Celebi, op.cit., IX, p.102. Para. 6, cf., Longrigg, Four Centuries of Modern Iraq, Oxford 1925, p.34. Para. 7, I.AN., 8/619; MUH., 4/344; and Shaw, op.cit., 1/182-3.

#### Page No. 52.

Para. 1, cf. I.AN., 8/619. Para. 3, cf. loc. cit. Para. 4, Siyavus Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 994-7 A.H.; Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. IV, p.464; see also Hammer, op.cit., App. VI, 4/700. Para. 6, Ibrāhīm Pasha was sent out in 991 A.H. = 1583 A.D. to become Beglerbeg Egypt. On his return from Egypt through Syria in 993 A.H. = 1585 A.D. he undertook a campaign against the Druze chieftains of the Lebanon; see En 2, 111/1000. L.14, ( الدروز ), al-Durūs: "A Syrian people professing an initiatory faith derived from the Ismā'īliyya, living in different parts of Syria, especially in the Lebanon mountains, Anti-Lebanon, and Hawrān"; En 2, 11/631-7. Para. 8, "Ma'lūl-Zadah Muḥammad b. Muḥammad," the Muftī of the Ottoman Empire; see Hammer, op.cit., App. VIII, 4/702. Para. 9, cf. I.AN., 10/671-3.

Page No. 53.

L.1, ( السودا ), al-Sūdā, is situated in Yaman; Khaz, 1/51.  
 Para. 2, cf. I.AN., 8/620. L.18, ( قلعة كورى ) Kurī Castle is situated in Anatolia; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XX-B2. L.19, ( قرو باغ ), Kara bag is a district situated in Azergaijan; see ibid., map XXXII-C1; see also, Mazandaran and Astarabad, by H.L. Rabino, London 1928, p.78.

Page No. 54.

Para. 1, Shah Muḥammad Khudābanda either dying a natural death or being assassinated; there was no opposition in Persia to the claims of Shah 'Abbās, who shortly afterwards killed Murshid Kulī Khan and thereby secured the reins of power; see Sykes, op.cit., 11/257.  
 Para. 2, cf. T.W. Arnold, op.cit., pp.141-3; see also Text, p.5, and p.6. Para. 4, He is "(Tschiwisade) Muḥammad Efendi"; see Hammer, op.cit., App. VIII, 4/702. LL.18-19, ( مدرسة مصطفى باشا ) Muṣṭafā Pasha Medr. is possibly situated in Istanbul. L.19, ( مدرسة محمود باشا ) Maḥmūt Pasha Cami is situated in Istanbul; see BZTI, map F6/30. L.20, ( السلطان سليم ), He is Sultan Salīm II. Para. 5, "Abdul Kadir Ibn Hadschi Scheichi Efendi;" see Hammer, op.cit., App. No. VIII, 4/702.

Page No. 55.

L.2, ( النقشبندیہ ), Naqshbindiyya; the title of a great Muslim mystic Kh'aja Muḥammad Bahā' al-Dīn of Bukhārā "717-91 A.H. = 1317-89 A.D.", the founder of the Naqshbindī order of Ṣūfīs; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.2098); details in J.S. Trimingham, op.cit., pp.92-96. Para. 2, see "The Uzbek Invasions" in Sykes, op.cit., 2/258-9. LL.7 8, ( بلاد يافى ), Bilād Yāfi' is situated in Yaman; see Khaz., 11/46. Para. 4, cf. Sykes, op.cit., 2/259. Para. 7, MUH., 2/238-9. L.18, ( عثمانى ), 'Uthmānī, means here, "an

ancient Ottoman coin, otherwise called aqcha, originally a day's pay for a soldier or workman"; Redhouse, op.cit., p.1285.

Page No. 56.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/223-4. Para. 2, Siyāvūs Pasha 994-7 A.H., and Sinān Pasha 997-9 A.H., were the Grand Vizirs of the Ottoman Empire; see Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. IV, p.464. Para. 3, MUH., 2/438; also cf. Text, p.54, para. 4, with Hammer, op.cit., App. VIII, 4/704. Para. 4, I was not able to find the source of this information. L.12, ( السلطان مراد ), Sultan Murād III. LL.19-20, ( حصن احمر ) Hiṣn Aḥūr is situated in Yaman. L.20, ( حصن الغراب ) Hiṣn al-Ghirāb is situated in Yaman; Khaz., 1/152. L.21, ( الاغوان ): al-Aghwān for Afghan people. This term has been used in the Ldv of Mosul. Para. 7, see, En 2, 1/216-24.

Page No. 57.

Para. 2, MUH., 4/339-40. L.4, ( رقى قفل بيت الله ) is p. his. (= 998 A.H.) Para. 4, cf. En 2, 1/8. Para. 5, Fīrhād Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Ottoman Empire 999-1000 A.H.; see, Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. IV, p.464. Para. 6-, Kemp translated this information into English from DUR, see Kemp, op.cit., p.280. L.21, ( المعلم خانه ), Mu'alim Khāne, "religious schools Sofia"; see loc. cit.

Page No. 58.

L.1, ( الخانقاه ), Hanqah (P.), Tikyah (A.), Tekke (T.); Sufī monasteries; see Gibb and Bowen, op.cit., vol. 1, part 11/186. LL.1-2, ( الكاربان سـرای ), Karbān-Sirāy comes from ( كروانسرای ) Kervan-Seray (T.): A large inn; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1048; Kemp does not give the meaning of that, cf. Kemp, op.cit., p.280. L.7, ( البزخانه ), Būzakhānah: A beer sellers;

Kemp, op.cit., p.280. L.7, ( القصاب خانسه ), (A. + T.), Qaṣṣāb-khānah, Butcheries or a large wholesale meat-salesman; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1455. L.8, ( القهوه خانسه ), (A. + T.), Qahweh-Khānah: A coffee-house. L.8, ( الميخانات ), "Mey-Khāne (P.): A wine shop, a tavern"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.2051. LL.9-10, ( قناعات النكجريه ), Qūnāghāt (T.) prol. ( قوناغ ) from ( قوناق ) qūnāq: A mansion, large house; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.2051; or the Majlis of the Janissaries. This Turkish term has been used in the Ldv of Mosul until the time of the second world war. One of the more recent famous Qūnāghs in Mosul was Qūnāgh Qāsim Aghā al-Daiwachī. L.10, ( شهر قبوس ), Shahr-Qabūs "Mysterious". Para. 1, Farhad Pasha 999-1000 A.H., Siyavūs Pasha 1000-1001 A.H., both were the Grand Vizirs of the Empire; see Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. IV, p.464.

Page No. 59.

Para. 1, 'Alī b. Qāsim al-'Umarī died in 1591 A.D. = 1000 A.H., a year before his father, leaving three sons: 'Uthmān, Mūsā and Muḥammad, for details, see The Introduction, Chap. 1, section b). L.2, ( حمام العبل ) Hammām al-'Ablā; a bath in Mosul. It is unknown today. L.8, ( التن ), Titin in Ldv of Mosul from Turkish Tutun (or Tutūn) which means smoke or tobacco. L.9, ( يوم ثاني السماء ) is p. his. (= 1000 A.H.) LL.11-12, ( سيات ) and ( العزاله ), Sībāt (or 'Irzālah), means bivouac or booth made from stalks. L.15, ( القليون ), Qalyūn is a pipe for smoking. LL.17-18, ( مدرسة السلطان سليم ), Sultan Selim Medr. in Istanbul; see, BZTI, map C6/9. Para. 5, MUH., 2/319-322. Para. 6, ibid., 2/256-9.

Page No. 60.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/274. Para. 2, MUH., 1/489-90. Para. 3,

ibid., 2/87-8. L.12, ( البيرزى ) appears as ( الهيرزى ) in MUH., 2/173-5. Para. 6, MUH., 2/346. Para. 7, ibid., 3/134-5.

Page No. 61.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/174-7, the correct full name of this scholar is given by MUH., as "علي بن علي ابي الوضيح نور الدين الشيرازي الشافعي القاهري" he comes from ( شيراز ) which is a small town in Egypt; see, loc. cit. L.2, The full title of ( الواهب اللدني ) is ( الواهب اللدني ); cf. loc. cit. L.3, The author of ( شرح الشامل ) is Ibn Hajar. Para. 2, MUH., 3/199. Para. 3, ibid., 3/199-200. L.7, ( تفسير الجلالين ) by al-siyūtī. Para. 4, 3/340. L.9, ( للذهب ): This is the doctrine of Ibn Hanbal. Para. 5, ibid., 4/223-4; "Bustanzadeh Muhammad b. Muṣṭafā"; see Hammer, op.cit., 4/702. Para. 6, Ibn al-Harfūsh, for historical details about his movements, see Hitti, Lebanon in History, London, 1957, p.360. Para. 7, cf. Creasy, op.cit., p.229. L.14, ( بوسنه ) Bosna or Bosnia, the Ottoman Eyalet in Danube lands (Serbia); see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIV; see also map No. XXVI-A1. L.15, ( هرسيك ) Hersek is situated in the Danube lands (Serbia); see loc. cit. L.17, ( خوروات ), Kurwāt or Khurvatan is situated in Tapzhikistan; see TAW, map No. 34, j-7. There is another city named Kharwar which is situated in Afghanistan; see ibid., map No. 31, E-4. L.18, ( خوارزم ) Khawārizm or Chorasmia, a city and country in West of the Lower Oxus, south of Aral Sea, Turkmenistan and Uzbekistan; for geographical details, see Le Strange, op.cit., p.196.

Page No. 62.

Para. 1, For historical details about the Janissaries revolts in 1592-93 A.D., see Creasy, op.cit., p.229; for historical analysis about the Habsburg War; see Shaw, op.cit., 1/184. LL.3-4, ( بستریم ), Bistrim: It is possibly Pressburg or Bratislava which is situated in S.W. Czechoslovakia; see TAW, plate 82, D-2. L.4,

( قلعة طاطا ), Tātā Castle is situated in the Danube lands; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-B2. Para. 2, Siyawūsh Pasha 1000-1001 A.H.; Sīnān Pasha 1001-1003 A.H. Both were the Grand Vizirs of the Empire; cf. Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. IV, p.464; see also Hammer, op.cit., 4/700. Para. 3, MUH., 1/64. L.10, ( بيت الفقيه ) Bait al-Faqīh, a famous town situated in Yaman; see Khaz., 1/23. Para. 4, MUH., 2/68-9. L.12, ( قرص ), Qars : The Armenian city near Teflis; see Yāqūt, 4/57. Para. 5, MUH., 2/159-60. Para. 6, ibid., 2/239. L.16, ( المالكية ) : Madhhab of the Mālīkīs, was founded by Shaikh Mālīk b. 'Anas, a Muslim jurist, the Imām of the Madhhab, see En 1, vol. III, pp.205-9. Para. 7, This information is repeated here. The author ascribed the death of Shaikhizadeh to the year 997 A.H.; cf. Text, p.56; according to MUH., Shaikhzadeh died in 1002 A.H.; cf. MUH., 2/438-9; Shaikhizadeh retired in the year 997 A.H.; see Hammer, op.cit., 4/702.

#### Page No. 63.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/400-01. L.2, ( تفسير القاضي البيضاوي ) al-Baydāwī, 'Abdullāh b. 'Umar b. 'Muḥammad b. 'Alī Abū al-Khair Naṣīr al-Dīn, in his most famous work "Anwār al-Tanzīl wa Asrār al-Ta'wīl"; see En 2, 1/1129. Para. 2, MUH., 4/143-4. Para. 3, ibid., 4/211-12. Para. 4, ibid., 4/431. L.13, ( باب البريد ) Bāb al-Barīd is situated in Damascus. Para. 7, cf. Hammer, op.cit., 4/222-3. L.19, ( قمران ), Komoran Castle is situated in the Danube lands; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-B2. L.19, ( يانق ) Yanīk (T.), Győr (Hung.), Raab (Ge.): This castle is situated in Hungary; see Pitcher, op.cit., p.129. L.20, ( الصنّجق الشريف ), Sanjaq Shīrīf (T. + A.): The sacred banner of Muḥammad only unfurled in case of Jihād. Sanjaq is a flag, a banner, especially the Ottoman Standard; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1082.

#### Page No. 64.

Page No. 65.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/341-54; Sultan Murād III, twelfth ruler of the Ottoman Empire, was born on the 5th Jumādā I, 953 A.H. = 4th July, 1546 A.D., son of the later Sultan Salīm II, he died on January 16, 1595; see, En 1, vol. III, p.730. L.3, ( صافيه خاتون ) Sāfiya Khātūn, 957-1014 A.H. = 1550-1605 A.D., married Sultan Murād III in 970 A.H. = 1563 A.D.; see Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XXXII, and n.4. L.4, For the names of Sultan Murād's children; see loc. cit. In his book, Alderson gives twenty three names of Sultan Murād's sons, also six names of Murād's daughters; cf. loc. cit. LL.8-16, MUH., 4/216; see also cf. En 1, 111/740. L.11, ( عدلي ), " 'Adlī, is a pen-name of Muḥammad III"; see E.J.W. Gibb, op.cit., vol. III, p.165 and 170. L.13, ( محمد ), Muḥammad III, the thirteenth Sultan of the Ottoman Empire, was born on May 16, 1567 A.D.; see En 1, III/660, but Alderson cites that Muḥammad III was born in 973 A.H. = 1566 A.D., d. 1012 A.H. = 1603 A.D.; ( محمود ) Maḥmūd, b. 990 A.H. = 1582 A.D., ex. 1003 A.H. = 1595 A.D.; ( احمد ) Aḥmad - ?; ( مصطفى ) Muṣṭafā, b. 993 A.H. = 1585 A.D., ex. 1003 A.H. = 1595 A.D.; see Alderson, op.cit., Tab. No. XXXII, "Murad and his family". These four sons are reported by the author Yāsīn al-'Umārī, as Sultan Muḥammad's sons, but this caused a great deal of confusion among the authorities as the names of the sons of Muḥammad are in large measure the same as the names of the sons of Sultan Murād III; cf. loc. cit. Muḥammad, Maḥmūd, Aḥmad and Muṣṭafā appear as the names of Murād's sons and the names "Maḥmūd, Aḥmad and Muṣṭafā" appear as the names of sons of Sultan Muḥammad II; cf. loc. cit.; therefore, that these sons belong to Sultan Murād III, and not to Sultan Muḥammad.

L.15, ( افلاق ) Eflak is Wallachia in the Danube lands; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-D, E3; Eflak as tributary state; see ibid., map XXIV. L.15, ( ميخائيل ) Mikhāl, (Michael) was Prince of Wallachia; see Kemp, op.cit., p.274, ff. Para. 2, MUH., 1/274-7. L.19, ( المدرسة المويديّة ), al Mu'aliyidiya, Madr. in Damascus; I.TU., 2/123. Para. 4, MUH., 1/277-280. L.23, ( حصن كيفا ), Hiṣn Kayfā (A.), Hasankeyf (T.), is situated in Jazīra district. S. Anatolia; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-B1.

Page No. 66.

L.4, ( النعمان ) is Abū-Hanīfa al-Nu'mān. LL.6-8, In his biographical book, al-Muḥibbī does not mention these three verses; cf. MUH., 1/277-280. Para. 1, ibid., 1/451-2. L.10, ( مدرسة شمسى احمد باشا ), Shamsī Aḥmad Pasha Madr. in Damascus; loc. cit. Para. 2, ibid., 2/212. Para. 3, ibid., 2/257. Para. 4, ibid., 2/360-1. Para. 5, ibid., 3/13-14. Para. 6, ibid., 3/85.

Page No. 67.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/179-80. Para. 2, ibid., 3/220-1. Para. 3, ibid., 4/143. Para. 4, ibid., 4/144. Para. 5, ibid., 4/282. Para. 6, ibid., 4/217-18. L.15, ( النقاية ) by al-Siyūti; see Ahlwardt, op.cit., p.539. L.15, ( ملتقى الابحر ) by Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm al-Halabī, see ibid., MS No. 4613. L.15, The full title of ( لسان الحكام ) is " لسان الحكام في معرفة الاحكام " by Ibn al-Shibnah al-Halabī; see, ibid., MS No. 4796. L.16, ( الاموى ) is the Umayyad Mosque in Damascus. L.16, ( مدرسة القيرنة ) al-Qaimariyah Madr. in al-Qaimar of Damascus, see I.TU., 1/14; see also MUH., 4/218. Para. 7, MUH., 4/362. Para. 8, ibid., 3/439-40. L.19, ( الحسين ) appears ( حسن ) in loc. cit. Para. 9, ibid., 4/426-8.

Page No. 68.

Para. 1, see Hammer, op.cit., 4/243-8. Sinān Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1001-1003 A.H.; see Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. No. IV, p.464. Para. 2, MUH., 1/162-3. Para. 3, ibid., 1/184-5. Para. 4, As'ad Efendi 1570-1626 A.D. Qādī of Edirne in 1596 A.D.; see I.AN., 4/385. Para. 5, MUH., 2/214-17; see also "Sinan Pasha" article in I.AN., 10/670-75. L.18, ( القطيفه ), Gūṭayfa is situated in Syria; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXIII-B2.



Page No. 69.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/320. Para. 2, ibid., 3/65-6. L.8, ( جامع العداس ) al-'Udās jāmi' is situated in Damascus. Thus in DUR. and MUH., 3/65, but appears ( العواس ) in al Jibartī; cf. al-Jibirtī, 'Aja'ib al-Āthār fī al-Tarājim wa al-Akhbār, 1/225. Para. 3, MUH., 3/109-10. Para. 4, ibid., 3/110. Para. 5, ibid., 3/180-5. LL.14-15, MUH. gives us the full titles of those works, which appear as: شرح نظم الكنز ; ساء الرمز وشرح الاشياء والنظائر وله الشمع في احكام الجمعة ; see. MUH., 3/181.

Page No. 70.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/200, but al-Muḥibbī does not mention عبد الله ; cf. also Apparatus Criticus, pp.561-2. Para. 2, MUH., 3/203-4. Para. 3, ibid., 3/341-2. Para. 4, ibid., 3/342-8. Para. 5, ibid., 4/18-20.

Page No. 71.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/34-36. L.14, ( الكتخدا ), Kethuda (T.), "A steward, agent, representative of an organisation to the government - (1) the deputy of a beylerbeyi or provincial governor. (2) The senior officer of a craft guild, representing the guild to the government;" see R. Olson, The Siege of Mosul ..., Indiana 1975, p.211. L.14, ( الترجمان ), Tarjumān (A.). "1 - Colloquial title of any European dragoman. 2 - Official title of the Grand Interpreter of the Porte;" Redhouse, op.cit., p.530. Para. 2, MUH., 4/144-5. L.15, ( الطريقة الرفاعية ), Rifā'iyya Tariqa; The Ṣūfī order founded by Aḥmad al-Rifā'ī, d. 1175, widely popular in Egypt, and spread across the Middle East; for details, see Michael Gilsenan, Saint and Sufi in Modern Egypt ..., Oxford 1973, p.1, p.75. Para. 3, MUH., 4/282-4; see also the article "Mehmed Pasha Lala" in I.AN., 7/591-4; this article mentions that Lala Pasha died in 1606 A.D., also cf. Hammer,

op.cit., 4/252. He was the Grand Vizir of the Empire; see Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. IV, p.464.

Page No. 72.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/284. Para. 2, ibid., 4/390-92, 'Azmi zādeh Muṣṭafā was born in Istanbul 977 A.H. = 1570 A.D.; see Gibb, History of Ottoman Poetry, vol. III, pp.221-3. L.6, ( مدرسة حاجه خاتون ), The Valide Hani Medr.; see BZTI, F6/10. L.6, ( مدرسة محمد اغا ), Mehmet Agha Medr. in Istanbul; see ibid., C3/19. Para. 3, MUH., 4/394. Para. 4, ibid., 4/217; Sultan Muḥammad III left his capital for the frontier in June of 1596 A.D.; see Creasy, op.cit., p.233. He was very slow in organizing his army and marching it through the Balkan Peninsula. He besieged and eventually took Erlan on Oct. 12, 1596; see, Shaw, op.cit., 1/185; see also En 1, vol. IV/524. L.20, ( اكرى ), Egri (T.), Eger (Hung.), Erlau (Ge.): The famous city in the Danube lands; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-C2; see also Egri as Eyalet in, ibid., map XXIV. Para. 5, "The Uzbek Invasions" in Sykes, op.cit., 11/258.

Page No. 73.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/177-78. Para. 2, ibid., 1/207-8. L.7, ( المدرسة القلجية ), al-Qulyiyya Madr., in Damascus; loc. cit.; this school was founded in the 13th century; En 2, 11/ map of "Dimashk". Para. 7, MUH., 2/260. Para. 5, ibid., 3/90. Para. 6, ibid., 3/376-77. Para. 7, ibid., 3/197-8.

Page No. 74.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/206-7. Para. 2, ibid., 3/234-5. L.8, ( العمارة السلمانية ), al-Sulaimāniyya building in Damascus. Para. 4, MUH., 4/20.

Page No. 75.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/38. Para. 2, ibid., 4/74-6. Para. 3, ibid., 4/115-21: The correct name of this scholar, appears written in MUH. as: "القاسم الملقب شمس الدين بن بن المنقار الحلبي نسب الدمشقي"; loc. cit. Para. 4, ibid., 4/143. Para. 5, ibid., 4/225-6.

Page No. 76.

L.6, ( سوق البريد ), Sūq al-Barīd is situated in Damascus; see I.TU., Index. Para. 2, MUH., 4/461. Para. 3, cf. En 2, 1/7-8. Para. 4, cf. I.AN., 7/535-6; see also Hammer, op.cit., VII/98; and Shaw, op.cit., 1/185; see above, note para. 4, Text, p.72. L.20, ( ابراهيم باشا ) Ibrāhīm Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1004-1005 A.H.; Cagalazade Sinān Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1005 A.H., see Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. IV, p.464, also cf. Hammer, op.cit., 4/700.

Page No. 77.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/32-3. L.3, ( الصالحية ), al-Ṣālihiyya Madr. in Damascus; see I.TU., 1/370; there was another school in Cairo named al-Ṣālihiyya; cf. ibid., 1/34. Para. 2, MUH., 1/88-89. L.8, The first name of ( البرنبالي ) is " الشيخ بدر الدين "; cf. ibid., 1/88. Para. 3, ibid., 1/110-111. L.12, The first name of ( العيثاوى ) is ( الشهاب ); cf. loc. cit. L.13, The first name of ( الداوى ) is ( الشمس ); cf. loc. cit. Para. 4, ibid., 3/293-7, also 1/411; L.14, Qāsim b. Muḥammad proclaimed himself Imām in 1598 A.D., with the title "al- Mansūr-Billāh"; see, R.W. Stookey, Yaman, U.S. 1978, p.143. Para. 5, MUH., 3/85. Para. 6, ibid., 3/88-90.

Page No. 78.

Para. 2, MUH., 3/311-14. Para. 3, ibid., 3/297. Para. 4, ibid., 3/321-2. Para. 5, ibid., 3/348. Para. 6, ibid., 3/395-6. Para. 7, ibid., 4/38-9. LL.19-21, I was not able to find the source of these two hadīths.

Page No. 79.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/145-152; ( الداودي ) the correct full name of this scholar appears written in MUH., as follows: " محمد بن داود النعوت ; شمس الدين بن صلاح الدين الداودي القدسي الدمشقي الشافعي " ; cf. ibid., 4/145. Para. 2, ibid., 4/152. L.16, ( شرح المنهاج ) written by Shaikh Jilāl al-Dīn al-Maḥallī. Para. 3, MUH., 4/223-24. Para. 4, loc. cit. Para. 5, ibid., 4/285-6; this scholar ( الوسيبي ) comes from Wasīm, a village in Jīza of Egypt. Para. 6, ibid., 4/500.

Page No. 80.

Para. 1, Hammer, op.cit., 4/283; L.2, ( واردار ), Vardar (T.), Pella (Gk.) It is Vardar Yenicesi in Greece near Salonica; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXVI-B2. Para. 2, MUH., 2/69-72; ( حسن باشا ): He is Khadīm Ḥasan, cf. Hammer, op.cit., 4/700. L.4, ( خزندار ), Khazine-dar (T.); Khaznadar (P.); A treasure; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.846. Para. 3, cf. Hammer, op.cit., 4/281; he is Ibrāhīm Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1005-1006 A.H.; see Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. IV, p.464; Jirrah or Cerrah Muḥammad Pasha, the Grand Vizir 1006-7 A.H., see loc. cit. Para. 5, MUH., 1/89-90. Para. 6, ibid., 1/69-97. Para. 7, ibid., 1/117-118.

Page No. 81.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/159-161. Para. 2, ibid., 1/208-09. Para. 3, ibid., 1/280-81. L.14, ( ابن تيمية ), Ibn Taymiyya: Taqī al-Dīn

Aḥmad b. Taymiyya was born in Harrān, Jan. 1263 A.D., died in Damascus, Sep. 1328 A.D.; see En 2, 111/951-55; also Brock, 11/125-27. L.16, ( قنّاة العونى ), Qanāt al-'Awnī in Syria; see I.TU., 1/292. L.17, ( جامع الامير منجك ), Manchik Jāmi' in Damascus; see MUH., 1/281; also known as Masjid al Aqsāb; cf. ibid., 4/233. Para. 4, MUH., 1/372-73.

Page No. 82.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/410-11. L.2, ( جامع سيبى ), Sībāy Jāmi' in Damascus; see ibid., 1/411. Para. 2, ibid., 1/99-110. Para. 4, ibid., 2/212. Para. 4, ibid., 2/212. Para. 6, ibid., 2/377. Para. 7, ibid., 3/135 ( ابن القبانى ): His full and correct name appears written in MUH. as: "علي بن احمد الملقب" ; علاء الدين الحموى الاصل الطرابلسي الحنفي المعروف بابن القبانى" ; cf. ibid., 3/135. Para. 8, ibid., 1/39-42; according to MUH., the poet Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad al-Akramī al-Sālīhī died in 1047 A.H.; cf. ibid., 1/42.

Page No. 83.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/147-8. Para. 2, ibid., 3/200. Para. 3, ibid., 3/314. Para. 4, ibid., 3/488. Para. 5, ibid., 4/152-3. Para. 6, ibid., 4/214-15. L.16, ( الدفتردار ), Defterdar (T.): Head of the Treasury; see Olson, op.cit., p.210. L.23, ( بونى اكرى ) or ( بونى اكرى ) (T.): "Wry-necked"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.172. In Arabic ( اعوج الرقبه ) which is given by al-Muḥibbī; see MUH., 4/45. L.24, ( متسلم ), Mutasallim (A.), the deputy lieutenant governor and tax collector for the Wālī; see Olson, op.cit., p.212.

Page No. 84.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/406-08. Para. 2, ibid., 4/258. Para. 3, ibid.,

4/320-22. Para. 4, ibid., 4/389-90. L.14, ( المدرسة )  
 ( السليمية بادرنة , Selimiye Camii; see En 2, 11/ map of  
 Edirne, City and Neighbourhood. L.14, ( سلانيك ), Selanik  
 (T.), Solonica (Gk.), Solun (Sl.), a chief town in Greece; see  
 Pitcher, op.cit., map XXVI-B2. Para. 6, MUH., 4/435.

Page No. 85.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/474-75; also cf. E.J. Gibb, op.cit., vol. III,  
 Chap. VII, p.165 and pp.171-5. L.3, ( السلطان مراد ),  
 Sultan Murād III 1574-1595 A.D. LL.3-4, Muṣṭafā 903-1003 A.H. =  
 1585-95 A.D.; Bayazīd 994-1003 A.H. = 1586-95 A.D.; 'Uthmān d.  
 1003 A.H. = 1595 A.D., and 'Abdullāh 993-1003 A.H. = 1585-95 A.D.;  
 see Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XXXII. Para. 2, This is Dangerous  
 revolt in Asia Minor; for further details, see En 1, vol. III, p.660,  
 see also "The Celati Revolts"; Shaw, op.cit., 1/185-6. Para. 3,  
 see "Continuation of the Austrian War"; ibid., 1/184-85. Para. 4,  
 cf. Hammer, op.cit., 4/700. Para. 5, MUH., 1/33-5. Para. 6,  
ibid., 1/35-6. Para. 7, ibid., 1/189-90.

Page No. 86.

L.3, ( مدرسة محمد باشا ), Muḥammad Pasha Madr. in  
 Istanbul; see BZTI, E5/19. L.3, ( ايا صوفيه ), Aya Sofia,  
 the largest mosque in Constantinople, see ibid., G 7/6; for historical  
 details; see En 2, vol. I, pp.774-7. L.4, ( مدرسة ام السلطان )  
 ( مراد في اسكدار Eski Valide Camii, Hammam and Medr.; see BZTI,  
 pp.402-4. L.9, ( كنجه ), Kanjeh. It is an old city in Luristan  
 of Iran, near Iṣpāhān; see Yāqūt, 4/308. L.9, ( بردع ),  
 Barda'a, it is an old city situated far in Azerbaijān; see ibid., 1/558-61.  
 Para. 1, MUH., 1/208-9. L.17, ( بالعزل شيطان رجيم دمرا ),  
 p. his. (= 1008 A.H.). Para. 2, MUH., 1/364. L.18,  
 ( مدرسة احمد بن مطاف ), Aḥmad b. Muṭāf Madr. in Aleppo; see  
loc. cit.

Page No. 87.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/373. Para. 2, ibid., 1/474-5. Para. 4, ibid., 2/94. Para. 6, ibid., 2/131-2.

Page No. 88.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/140-49. Para. 2, He is Ṣun'ullāh, the Muftī of the Empire; see, Hammer, op.cit., 4/702. Para. 3, MUH., 2/263-64. L.20, ( قل هو الله احد ), Qu'rān, Sūrā No. 1, Ikhḷās 112.

Page No. 89.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/287-89; see also E.J.W. Gibb, op.cit., 111/Chap. VI, pp.133-35. Para. 2, MUH., 3/240-43. Para. 3, ibid., 3/402. Para. 4, ibid., 3/418-20; also cf. Hammer, op.cit., 4/702.

Page No. 90.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/154-58. L.11, ( المدرسة الجزية ), al-Jawziyya Madr. in Damascus; see I.TU., 2/89. L.11, ( المدرسة العمريّة ) al 'Umariyya Madr. in Damascus; ibid., 1/276. Para. 2, MUH., 4/258-262. Para. 3, ibid., 4/286-87.

Page No. 91.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/324-27. Para. 2, ibid., 4/387-89. LL.6-7, The title of ( شرح تائفة ابن حبيب ) is: "المنهاج في الوفاة في شرح التائفة"; cf. ibid., 4/388. The name of ( ابن حبيب ) is Ibn Ḥabīb al Ṣafadī. Para. 3, MUH., 4/509; the name of this scholar appears in MUH. as: "يوسف الاصم الصفراني الكوردي"; cf. loc. cit. LL.11-12, ( القطب الشمسية ) written by Qara Dawūd.

L.12, ( الفخارى ) is Hasan Chalabī b. Muḥammad Shah; see Alhawrdt, op.cit., vol. 2, p.292. L.12, ( شرح الاموذج ) written by Sa'adallāh. Para. 5, MUH., 4/49-54; but al-Muḥibbī cites that this poet died in 1059 A.H.; cf. ibid., p.54. LL.17-18, MUH. does not give these two verses; cf. loc. cit. Para. 6, ibid., 4/409-423. L.21. I was not able to find this verse in MUH.; cf. loc. cit.

#### Page No. 92.

LL.1-5, MUH. does not give those four verses; cf. MUH., 4/409-423. Para. 1, al-Muḥibbī cites " نقيب الاشراف " as " القيصري " who died in 1013 A.H.; cf. ibid., 2/473. Para. 3, I was not able to find the source of this event; for historical details about the period of Sultan Muḥammad III; see Naīmā, Tārīkh, 1/219. Para. 4, MUH., 1/241-2.

#### Page No. 93.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/243. Para. 2, ibid., 1/373-4. L.6, ( الفوشجي ) al Qawshajī; see Ahlwardt, op.cit., MS No. 879. L.8, ( دهنة ), sic in MSS, it appears as " دهنيه " in MUH.; cf. 1/373. L.10, ( العراقيين ), al 'Irāqain. The two countries of Iraq, media ( عراق عجم ) Northern Persia; 'Irāq ( عراق عرب ), "the whole valley of the lower Tigris with Euphrates, including the ancient Assyria, Babylonia and Chaldea in the early times of Islam;" see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1292. L.10, ( شيراز ), Shīrāz, the capital of Fars, and also that of Persia, during the reign of Karīm Khān; see Kinneir, op.cit., p.60; for geographical situation and historical background; see ibid., p.61; for description of it, see ibid., p.62. L.11, ( اصطخر ), Iṣṭakhar, the old castle in Iran; see ibid., p.78. L.13, ( القزلباش ) Gīzil Bāsh (T.), "The Red-head". This Turkish term applied only to those Turkuman tribes inhabiting Eastern Anatolia, Northern Syria and the high lands of Armenia; also,



this word is used in general to denote those extremist Shī'ī sects, which flourished in Anatolia and Kurdistan from the 7th-13th century onwards, including such groups as the "Alawis"; see En 2, V/243-5; Gīzil-Bāsh people are the supporters of the Safawid house in Iran, for details; see I.AN., 6/789 95. Para. 3, MUH., 4/249 57; In his biography, al-Muhibbī states that ( ابن الدرہ ) was born in 1028 A.H., died in 1065 A.H.; cf. loc. cit.

Page No. 94.

LL.1-3, MUH. does not give those three verses; cf. MUH., 4/249-57. Para. 1, ibid., 1/422. Para. 2, ibid., 2/72-3. Para. 4, ibid., 2/327. Para. 6, ibid., 3/109. Para. 8, ibid., 4/448. L.17, ( قانـرہ ), Qāthra is situated in Yaman.

Page No. 95.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/17. Para. 2, ibid., 1/36-7. Para. 3, Ibrāhīm Pasha Dāmād (? - 1610), occupied a post of Grand Vizir 1007-1010 A.H.: see Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. No. IV, p.464; for details about him; see Katib Chalabi, Fezleke, Istanbul 1286, 1/10, 53, 67, 84, 86; see also I.AN., 5.2/915-919; Dāmād Ibrāhīm Pasha was the Grand Vizir of the Empire under the rule of Sultan Muḥammad III, cf. Hammer, op.cit., 4/700. LL.11-12, ( جبل الشوف ), Shauf mountain is situated in Lebanun; Dalīl, p.184. L.14, ( ابنته ); She is Ayşe Sultan, a daughter of Sultan Murād III, married Kanijellī Ibrāhīm Pasha in 1586 A.D., died in 1013 A.H. = 1604 A.D.; cf. Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XXXII. Para. 4, MUH., 1/152-54. L.19, for ( مدرسة الفردوس ) and ( جامع الزكـي ); see loc. cit. L.20, ( المدرسة البيرمية ): al-Bairamiyya Madr. is near Siwayat al-Hakm in Damascus; see SALK, 1/217. Para. 5, MUH., 1/177.

Page No. 96.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/208-9. Para. 3, ibid., 1/416. Para. 4, ibid., 1/479-480. Para. 5, ibid., 1/480-81. Para. 6, ibid., 1/500. L.20, ( الصالحيّة ), al-Ṣālihiyya is a quarter in Damascus; see En 1, 11/277-91. Para. 7, MUH., 1/501.

Page No. 97.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/2-14; see also this nisba in ibid., 1/131. Para. 2, Yemisci Hasan Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1010-1012 A.H. = 1601-1603 A.D.; see, Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. IV, p.464; see also Hammer, op.cit., 4/700. Para. 3, MUH., 2/121-22. Para. 4, ibid., 2/202-3. Para. 5, ibid., 2/221. Para. 6, ibid., 2/235-6. Para. 7, ibid., 2/244-45.

Page No. 98.

Para. 2, For Sun'allāh, the Muftī of the Empire; see Hammer, op.cit., 4/702. Para. 4, MUH., 2/306. Para. 6, ibid., 2/322-24. L.21, ( السلطان محمد ) Sultan Muḥammad III 1595-1603 A.D.; see App. No. 2.

Page No. 99.

L.5, ( سمساط ) Samsāt, a town situated S. Anatolia, N. Urfa; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-A2. L.5, ( الرها ) Ruhā (A.), Urfa (T.), Edessa (Gk.). It is an old city situated S. Anatolia, loc. cit. L.17, ( سامسون ), Samsūn (T.), Amisos (Gk.), is situated in N. Turkey; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-C1; see also Taq, pp.392-93. Para. 1, MUH., 2/342-44.

Page No. 100.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/346. L.7, ( محلة ميدان الحصى ), Maydān al-Ḥaṣā is a quarter in the N. side of Mosul city. L.8, ( الجامع الاموى ) The Umayyad Jāmi', is the oldest mosque in Mosul, built by 'Utba b. Farqad al-Salamī, about 640 A.D., little is left today of this once beautifully decorated mosque, part of its minaret ( المنارة المكسورة ), the broken minaret, still stands; see Daiwachī, "Umayyad Mosque in Mosul", SUMER, vol. VI, 2, 1950; see also MUN., p.209. L.8, ( محلة الكوازين ), alkawāzīn quarter in Mosul; loc. cit. L.9, ( مروان الحمار ), is Marwān b. Muḥammad, the last Umayyad Caliph, occupied a post as Wālī of Mosul twice, the first era 102-4 A.H. = 720-22 A.D. The second era 126-28 A.H. = 743-44 A.D.; see Yāqūt, 4/684. Para. 2, MUH., 2/361-2. Para. 3, ibid., 2/424.

Page No. 101.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/436. Para. 2, ibid., 3/40; MUH. states that this scholar died in 1015 A.H. Para. 3, ibid., 3/86. Para. 4, ibid., 3/150-51. L.8, ( شرح ايساغوجى ) written by al-Qāḍī Zakariyyā. Para. 5, ibid., 3/207. Para. 6, ibid., 3/353. Para. 7, ibid., 4/20-24. L.17, ( كوكبان ), Kawkabān is situated in Yaman; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXIV-B2.

Page No. 102.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/76. Para. 2, For Sa'd al-Dīn, see Hammer, op.cit., 4/702. Para. 3, MUH., 4/284-85. L.8, ( نغر ): It is ( تعز ) Ta'iz Sa'da is situated in Yaman; see Khaz., 1/359. Para. 4, MUH., 4/287. Para. 5, ibid., 4/393. Para. 6-, ibid., 4/451-53.

Page No. 103.

Para. -1, MUH., 4/480-5.

Page No. 104.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/31. L.4, ( جامع دمشق ): It is possibly the 'Umayyad mosque in Damascus. Para. 2, MUH., 1/61. Para. 3, ibid., 1/93. Para. 4, ibid., 1/93. Para. 5, ibid., 2/21-3. Para. 6, ibid., 2/102-4.

Page No. 105.

L.3, ( بحر جـنـة ): The Red Sea. Para. -1, MUH., 2/257; see also Hammer, op.cit., 4/702. Para. 2, MUH., 2/364. Para. 3, ibid., 2/377-78. Para. 4, ibid., 3/314-16. Para. 5, ibid., 3/350-52. Para. 6, ibid., 3/352-3. Para. 7, ibid., 4/76-7. Para. 8, ibid., 4/168-69.

Page No. 106.

Para. 1, cf. IBI, 4/144. Para. 2, MUH., 1/390-94. Para. 3, ibid., 1/93-94. Para. 4, ibid., 1/131-5. Para. 5, ibid., 1/156. Para. 6-, ibid., 1/222-25.

Page No. 107.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/365-65. Para. 2, ibid., 1/397. Para. 3, ibid., 1/488-89. Para. 4, ibid., 2/27-29.

Page No. 108.

L.1, ( ايدنجك ), Edincik (T.) is situated in N.W. Turkey; see Pitcher, op.cit., map VIII-B1. L.2, ( كليبولى ), Gelibolu (T.),

Kallipolis (Gk.), Gallipoli is situated in Turkish Romeli, near the Sea of Marmara; ibid., map XXVI-B2. L.2, ( ايوب ), The village of Eyoub is situated near the Horn; see Map of Constantinople in BZTI. L.2, ( زغره ) or ( اسكى زغره ), Eski-Zagra (T.), Zagora, Stara Zagora (Sl.), is situated in Rumeli. It is situated in Bulgaria today; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXVI-B1. L.2, ( رشيد ) Rashid or Rosetta is situated in Egypt; see ibid., map XXXIV-A1. Para. 1, MUH., 2/40-5. L.4, ( ارزون ) Arazun: It is possibly Erzarum in Turkey, or Arzano city in Bosna; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXVIII-B1. L.5, ( سردار ), Serdar (T.), Military chief; general. L.10, ( نهر الدجيل ), Dujail Rev. is situated in Northern Baghdad; see Taq, p.56.

#### Page No. 109.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/72-3, for details about Hasan Pasha Yemishci (? - 1603 A.D.; see I.AN., 5.1/330-34. Para. 2, MUH., 2/128. L.8, ( مدرسة الشاه زاده ), Shah-Zadeh Medr. in Istanbul; see BZTI, E6-6. Para. 3, MUH., 2/162. Para. 4, ibid., 2/407. Para. 5, ibid., 4/121-2.

#### Page No. 110.

Para. 1, Muhammad III, thirteenth Sultan of the Ottoman Empire; he was born on May 16, 1567, and reigned from January 27, 1593 until his death, December 22, 1603; for historical details, see En I, vol. III, p.660. L.10, ( بشته ), it is possibly Pest, city opposite Buda, known together as Buda-Pest, the capital of Hungary; Pest appears in Shaw, op.cit., map in vol. No. I. On the other hand, ( بشته ) is possibly Paszto in North Hungary; see NOA, map on p.43, Q-13. L.13, ( قودار ) and ( قورتان ): I was not able to locate these two castles. L.14, ( خطان ), Hatvan Castle is situated in Hungary; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-B2. L.14, ( واج ),

Waag Castle is situated in Hungary; ibid., map XXIX-B1. Para. 2, MUH., 4/239-48. Para. 3, ibid., 4/435. Para. 4, ibid., 4/459.

Page No. 111.

L.1, ( التبن ), Ttin (Ldv) from Tutun (T.), it is Tobacco.  
 Para. 2, cf. Savory, op.cit., pp.86-7. Para. 4, cf. ibid., pp.88-9.  
 Para. 6, MUH., 1/496-500. L.16, ( ابن الفارض ), for details;  
 see En 2, 111/763-4.

Page No. 112.

Para. 2, MUH., 2/108-9. Para. 3, ibid., 2/129. L.5,  
 ( خداوردی ), Khudā (P. + T. + K.); Lord, master or God.  
 Para. 4, MUH., 2/196-9. L.13, " يضيء كأنه بدر منير " appears written as: " بروض اينعت فيه السرور " in ibid., 2/197.  
 Para. 5, see Hammer, op.cit., vol. 4, App. VIII, p.702. Para. 6-,  
MUH., 2/319-322.

Page No. 113.

Para. 1, ( محمد باشا البوسنوي ): He is Lala Muḥammad Pasha; for historical details, see I.AN., 1/161. Para. 3, MUH., 4/507-8.  
 Para. 4, ( سنان باشا بن جنال ): He is Cagala-Zadeh Sinan Pasha; see I.AN., 1/161; see also Parry in his article "The Successors of Sulaiman, 1566-1617", A history of the Ottoman Empire to 1730, p.129.  
 L.13, ( خان جنال ) Khān Ghigāl in Baghdad, it is known as "Khān Ghigān; see GHA., p.171, n. Para. 7, MUH., 1/17-18.  
 Para. 8, ibid., 1/51.

Page No. 114.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/110. Para. 2, ibid., 1/111-112. Para. 3, ibid., 1/139-140. Para. 4, ibid., 1/166-70. LL.14-15, al-Muḥibbī does

not mention those two verses; cf. loc. cit. Para. 5-, ibid., 1/281-88.

Page No. 115.

L.3, ( مات الى جهنم المصارع ) is p. his. (= 1012 A.H.). L.6, ( ان المصارع في الجحيم مقره ) is p. his. (= 1010 A.H.). Para. 1, MUH., 1/500-501. Para. 2, ibid., 2/122. Para. 3, ibid., 2/126-28. L.19, The full and correct titles of these two books appear written in MUH. as : "بغية المسالك الناسك" ; "فيما يتعلق بآداب السفر وادعية الناسك" ; and "شفاء الصدر ببيان ليلة القدر" ; cf. MUH., 2/126.

Page No. 116.

Para. 2, MUH., 2/149-155. L.9, The correct title of ( كتاب دمية القصر ) is ( كتاب سانحات دمي القصر ) ; cf. ibid., 2/149. Para. 3, ibid., 2/172; see also IBL, 4/148-9. Para. 4, MUH., 2/359-60. Para. 5, ibid., 2/378. Para. 6, ibid., 2/406-7.

Page No. 117.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/454-6. Para. 2, ibid., 2/473. L.4, ( قيصر ) Qaysar, Qaysāriyah or Caesarea. It is situated in Palestine; see Yāqūt, 2/291. Para. 3, MUH., 3/8-9. Para. 4, ibid., 3/185-6. L.8, ( الخضر ) al-Khudr, for details; see MAN., 2/33-41; it is jāmi' al-Khudr or The Red Mosque in Mosul; see Daiwachī, Jawāmi'... , pp.57-72. Para. 5, MUH., 4/77. Para. 7-, ibid., 4/270-71.

Page No. 118.

L.4, The second hemistich of this verse appears written in MUH. as, ( لا دراك شئ منه يخطئ في القصد ) ; cf. ibid., 4/271. Para. 1,

ibid., 4/287-88. Para. 2, see I.AN., 1/161; Yāvūz 'Alī Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1012-13 A.H.; see Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. IV., p.464. Para. 3, MUH., 4/428. L.17, ( وارات ), Varad (T.); Nagyuarad (Hung.); Grosswardein (Ge.); Oradea (Roum.), a city in the Danube lands (Transylvania); see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-C2. L.18, ( قاسنه ): I was not able to find the situation of this castle. L.18, ( اويار ); It is possibly Uyvar (T.), Ujvar, or Ersekujvar (Hung.), Neuhausel (Ge.), a city in Bosna of the Danube lands, see ibid., map XXIX-B3. Para. 7, cf. Creasy, op.cit., p.239. L.20, ( نجحوان ), Nakhichevan. Ancient Naxuana. Capital of Nakhichevan in Azerbaijan under the USSR at present; see Moore, The Encyclopedia of Places, p.537. Para. 8, MUH., 2/84-6.

#### Page No. 119.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/157. Para. 2, ibid., 1/187-9. Para. 3, ibid., 1/451. L.21, ( العراد ), 'Arād. This place is situated in Syria, but there is another place called Arad which is situated in Transylvania; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-C3; Arad, a town in Rumania today; see Moore, op.cit., p.45.

#### Page No. 120.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/172. Para. 2, ibid., 2/243-4. Para. 3, ibid., 2/256-9. Para. 4, ibid., 2/261-2. Para. 5, ibid., 2/424-5. Para. 6, ibid., 2/101-2. Para. 7, ibid., 4/11.

#### Page No. 121.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/159. Para. 2, ibid., 4/288; He is Lala Muḥammad Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1013-15 A.H., see Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. IV, p.464. L.4, ( امير اخور ) Imrakhor (T.), The Deputy Grand Master of the Horse; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1584.



Para. 3, MUH., 4/363. Para. 4, ibid., 4/393-5. Para. 6, ibid., 4/849. Para. 8, Dervish Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1015 A.H.; see Spiridonakis, loc. cit.

Page No. 122.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/154-6. Para. 2, ibid., 1/453-4. Para. 3, ibid., 1/485-88. LL.17-18, (عدوه ، العصاة ، وداعه ، برص ) are situated in Yaman; see Yāqūt, 1/580, and 4/910.

Page No. 123.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/261. Para. 2, ibid., 3/90-93. Para. 3, ibid., 3/254. Para. 4, ibid., 3/322-33. L.24, The full title of شرح )  
( تنزيل الآيات على الشواهد من الآيات " is شواهد الكشف )  
cf. ibid., 3/322.

Page No. 124.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/31-3; see also IBI, 4/159-60. Para. 2, MUH., 4/159-160. Para. 3, ibid., 4/357; see also I.AN., 8/652; Kayuçu Murād Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1015-1020 A.H.; see Spiridonakis, loc. cit. Para. 4, MUH., 4/357. Para. 5, ibid., 4/453-55.

Page No. 125.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/217-18. L.3, ( مocha ), Mocha city is situated in Yaman; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXIV-B2; see also, C. Niebuhr, Reisebeschreibung nach Arabian und andern umliegende Lendern, 1908, 1/Tab. LXXII. Para. 2, cf. IBI, 4/160-61. Para. 3, ( قوه محمد باشا ) Hammer and Spiridonakis do not mention this Grand Vizir; cf. Spiridonakis, loc. cit. and Hammer, op.cit., 4/701.

Para. 4, MUH., 1/257-9. L.11, The full title of ( اعذب المشارب ) is " اعذب المشارب في السلوك والناقص "; cf. loc. cit. Para. 6, ibid., 2/109-111. Para. 7, ibid., 2/209-210. Para. 9, ibid., 2/256-59; see also Hammer, op.cit. 4/702.

Page No. 126.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/357. Para. 2, ibid., 3/420-7. Para. 3, ibid., 3/439. Para. 4, ibid., 3/488-90. Para. 5, Muḥammad Efendi, son of Sa'ddedīn; see Hammer, op.cit., 4/702. Para. 6, MUH., 4/289-90. Para. 7, cf. IBI., 4/101.

Page No. 127.

Para. 1, cf. Hammer, op.cit., loc. cit. Para. 2, cf. Brock, G II, 382; S II, 515. Para. 3, MUH., 1/62. L.16, ( النبتيتي ) comes from Nibtīt, a village in al-Sharqiyya district of Egypt; see loc. cit. Para. 4, ibid., 1/112.

Page No. 128.

L.2, In his book, MUH. mentions " تبسط في دمشق " 1st. ( تبسط بالهندي ); cf. MUH., 1/112. Para. 1, ibid., 1/144. Para. 2, ibid., 1/233-34. Para. 3, ibid., 1/282. Para. 6; ibid., 2/116-18. Para. 7, ibid., 2/204. Para. 8, ibid., 3/63-4. Para. 10, ibid., 3/221-3. L.24, The full title of ( جوامع الاعراب ) is : " جوامع الاعراب وهوامع الآداب " cf. ibid., 3/222.

Page No. 129.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/353-4. Para. 2, ibid., 3/439-40. Para. 3,

ibid., 3/490-92. L.7, ( البونسي ) comes from Būna, a town in Tunis; cf. loc. cit. Para. 4, ibid., 4/9. L.12, ( الحديدة ) Hudayda, a city situated in Yaman; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXIV-B2. Para. 5, MUH., 4/43. Para. 6, ibid., 4/355. Para. 7, ibid., 4/460-61. Para. 8-, ibid., 4/478-80. L.20, ( الكركسي ) comes from Kerk al-Shuwaik; cf. loc. cit.; it is situated in Lebanon. It is written as ( كرك سويد ) in Dalil, p.248; or it is possibly ( شويكه ) which is also situated in Lebanon; cf. ibid., p.223.

#### Page No. 130.

Para. 3, MUH., 1/79-81. Para. 4, ibid., 1/209-10. L.15, ( تاريخ الدول ): The full title of this historical book is: " اخبار الدول واتسار الاول "; cf. ibid., 1/210. Para. 5, ibid., 1/436. L.21, ( جامع الصابونية ) al-Ṣābūnī Jāmi' in Damascus; see I.TU., 1/191-92. Para. 6, MUH., 1/451.

#### Page No. 131.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/45-51. L.10, ( غزير ) Ghazīr is situated in Lebanon; Dalil, p.239. Para. 2, MUH., 2/76-8. Para. 3, ibid., 3/49-50. Para. 4, ibid., 3/51-2. L.19, ( مدرسة محمد باشا ) Muḥammad Pasha Nīshānī Madr. in Istanbul; see ibid., 3/52. Para. 5, ibid., 3/102-3.

#### Page No. 132.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/239-40. Para. 2, ibid., 3/354-5. Para. 3, ibid., 3/492. L.7, The cities: Tarīm, Shaḥar and Gharfa are situated in Yaman and Ḥadramawt; see Niebuhr, op.cit., 1/313-342, and his Tab. No. LXX; see also Khaz., 1/209, 184; and Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXIV-B2. Para. 4, MUH., 4/233-34. Para. 5, ibid., 4/234-35. L.13, The full title of al-Andalusiyya is : " الاندلسية في علم العروض والاوزان الشعرية " .

by Muḥammad Abī al-Jaish al-Anṣārī al Andalusī; see Ahlwardt., op.cit., MS No. 7141. L.14, ( ام البراهيـن ) written by al Sanūsī. Para. 6, MUH., 4/263.

Page No. 133.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/290. Para. 2, ibid., 4/290-94. Para. 3, ibid., 4/485. Para. 4, ibid., 4/501-3. Para. 5, ibid., 1/161-62. Para. 6, ibid., 1/456. L.23, ( الطائفة البكتاشية ) Biktāshiyya Order of Sūfī's, connected with or called after the holy Saint Ḥājǧī Biktash; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.375.

Page No. 134.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/176. Para. 2, ibid., 2/218-19. L.10, ( القسطل ) Qaṣṭal is situated in Syria between Ḥama and Ḥims; see Taq. p.233. L.10, ( العيصرة ), al-Mu'aysara is a village situated in Lebanon; see Dalil, p.267. Para. 3, MUH., 2/220-21. Para. 4, ibid., 2/310-16. L.19, ( دار الحديث ), known as "al-Ashrafiyya"; see ibid., 2/310. Para. 5, ibid., 3/103-4.

Page No. 135.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/135-40; see also P.K. Hitti, Lebanon in History, pp.375-76. L.2, ( عزاز ) 'Azzāz is situated in Syria; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-A2. L.3, ( الغوير ), The Glour-Dāgh is situated in Syria; see G.L. Bell, Syria, London 1919, p.288. L.4, ( ادنه ), Adana, a city situated in Southern Turkey; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-C2. Para. 2, MUH., 3/208. Para. 3-, ibid., 3/288.

Page No. 136.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/288-92. Para. 2, ibid., 4/160. Para. 3, ibid.,

4/160-61. Para. 5, ibid., 4/162. Para. 6, loc. cit. Para. 7, ibid., 4/350-58; see also I.AN., 8/651-54.

Page No. 137.

LL.4-5, For more details about buildings and bazaars which have been built by Vazīr Murād in Damascus; see MUH., 4/356-57. Para. 1, ibid., 4/448-51; Naṣūḥ Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1020-23 A.H., he was appointed after Kuyuch Murād Pasha 1015-20 A.H.; see Spiridonakis, loc. cit.

Page No. 138.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/62-3. Para. 2, ibid., 2/256-9. Para. 3, ibid., 3/166. Para. 4, ibid., 3/209-210. Para. 5, ibid., 3/244. Para. 6, ibid., 3/355. Para. 7, ibid., 4/294. Para. 8, ibid., 4/294. Para. 9, Na'īma, Ta'rikh, 1, 1-11/154; see also Hammer, op.cit., 5/51.

Page No. 139.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/485-8. L.4, ( ذمار ) Dhamār is situated in Yaman; see Niebuhr, op.cit., 1/324; see also Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXIV-B2. Para. 2, MUH., 2/109. Para. 3, ibid., 2/129-30. Para. 4, ibid., 2/193-5. L.22, ( الزبد ), al-Zabad, written by Ibn Raslān. L.23, ( التحفة الوردية ) al Tuhfa al-wardiya written by Ibn al-Wardī; see Ahlwardt., op.cit., MS No. 6703. L.23, ( الارشاد ) is al-Irshād fī al-Nahū by al-Sa'd al-Taftazānī.

Page No. 140.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/456-7. L.3, the full title of ( الرحبينة ) is al-Farā'id al-Rahbiyya, or " بغية الباحث عن جمل الموارث " by Muḥammad b. 'Alī b. Muḥammad b. al-Ḥusain al Rahbī; see Ahlwardt.,



Page No. 144.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/209. Para. 2, ibid., 3/201. Para. 3, ibid., 4/44-7. L.11, ( البرد ) is a qas̄ida written by al-Būs̄irī.  
 Para. 4, MUH., 4/168-9. L.18, ( اكرى ), Egrī is situated in Hungary; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-C2; it is Erlan in En I, IV/524.

Page No. 145.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/506-7. Para. 5, ibid., 1/369-71. Para. 6, ibid., 1/485-88. Para. 7, ibid., 2/73-6. Para. 8, ibid., 1/109.  
 Para. 9, ibid., 2/237.

Page No. 146.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/344. Para. 2, ibid., 2/418-21. Para. 3, ibid., 3/37. Para. 4, ibid., 3/53. L.17, ( رودس ) or ( رودس ) in DUR.; Rhodes or Rhodos (Gk.), for details, see W.C. Moore, op.cit., p.653. Para. 8, MUH., 1/16-17.

Page No. 147.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/63-4. Para. 2, ibid., 1/112-13. Para. 3, ibid., 1/371-2. Para. 4, ibid., 1/374. Para. 5, ibid., 2/120-21.

Page No. 148.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/190-91. Para. 2, ibid., 2/210. Para. 3, ibid., 2/212-13. Para. 4, ibid., 3/17-19. L.6, ( جامع التوريزية ) al-Tawriziyya Jami' in Damascus; see loc. cit. Para. 5, ibid., 3/66. Para. 6, ibid., 3/195-7. Para. 7, ibid., 3/356. Para. 8, ibid., 3/356. Para. 9, ibid., 3/473. Para. 10, ibid., 3/474-5. L.24,

"تَشْنِيف" ( شرح مجمع البحرين ), the title of this work is: "تَشْنِيف"  
 "المسمع في شرح المجمع"; cf loc. cit. or "تَشْنِيف"  
 "المسمع في شرح جمع الجوامع", written by al-Shaikh Badr al-Dīn  
 al-Zirkashī; see Ahlwardt, op. cit., MS No. 4402.

Page No. 149.

Para. 2, MUH., 1/284-92; the Sultan Aḥmad I, died 23 Dhul-Qa'da  
 1026 A.H. = 22 Nov. 1617 A.D.; see, En 2, 1/267-8. Para. 3,  
MUH., 4/363-5; Muṣṭafā I, the fifteenth Ottoman Sultan, was born in  
 the year 1000 A.H. = 1591 A.D., son of Muḥammad III, see En 1,  
 III/759-60. Para. 5-, MUH., 4/363-5.

Page No. 150.

Para. 2, MUH., 1/87-8. L.14, ( الدرويشية ) al-Darwīshīyya  
 Jāmi' in Damascus; see En 2, II/map of Dimashk. Para. 3, MUH.,  
 1/259. Para. 4, ibid., 1/266.

Page No. 151.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/485-8. Para. 2, ibid., 2/24-7. LL.4-5,  
 ( جاووش السلطان ), Chawush-Sultan (T.), "A halberdier of the  
 bodyguard that escorts the Sultan on state occasions"; see Redhouse,  
op. cit., p.711. Para. 3, MUH., 2/407-10. L.9, The title of  
 ( تاريخ ابن خلكان ) is: "Wafiyāt al-A'yān", a biographical  
 dictionary, 4 vols. Para. 4, MUH., 3/66-7. L.16, The full title  
 Rashf al-Darab is: "رشف الضرب من لسان العرب";  
 cf. loc. cit. L.17, ( الشباطية ) al-Shāṭibīyya, by  
 al-Qāsim b. Firā b. Khalaf al-Shāṭibī; see Ahlwardt, op. cit., MS No.  
 594. L.17, ( عقود الجمان ); There are at least three  
 known works under this title:



1. ( عقود الجمان في عدم صحة ابناء الزمان ) by Murtada Bey b. Mustafā Bey b. Hasan Bey al Kurdī; see ibid., MS No. 5429;
2. ( عقود الجمان في علمي المعاني والبيان ) by 'Abdul-Raḥmān al-Siyūtī; see ibid., MS No. 7262;
3. ( عقود الجمان فيما يلزم وليّ البيمارستان ) by 'Abdul-Wāḥid al-Maghribī; see ibid., MS No. 6329. Para. 5, MUH., 3/402-3. Para. 6, ibid., 3/463-4. Para. 7, After the Ottoman government previously arranged the peace with Iran, the Ottomans were directed against Poland, under the leadership of the governor of Oczakov (Ozi), Iskender Pasha; Shaw, op.cit., vol. 1, "The Polish War", pp.191-2. L.22, ( الليه ), Lehistan, "Poland", or the Polish people, see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1646; 'Imād A. Ra'ūf wrongly states that al-Liyeh is Crimea Bilād al-Qarm; cf. ZUB., p.222, n.3. L.22, ( بغداد ), Boghdan (F.) "Moldavia"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.372; Boghdān was a tributary state; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIV.

Page No. 152.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/31-2. Para. 2, ibid., 1/243-6; ( الشناوى ): the correct name of this scholar is: " الشيخ احمد بن علي بن عبد القدوس بن محمد ابو الواهب المعروف بالشناوى "; cf. ibid., 1/243. L.6, ( الجواهر ) written by al-Ghawth al-Hindī; cf. ibid., 1/244. L.9, ( السودی ) al-Sawdī; see Ahlwardt, op.cit., p.211. Para. 3, MUH., 1/481-2. Para. 4, ibid., 1/483.

Page No. 153.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/485-8. Para. 2, MUH., 1/501-2. Para. 3, ibid., 2/78. Para. 5, ibid., 3/307-8. Para. 6, ibid., 3/57. Para. 7, ibid., 3/307-8. Para. 8, MUH., 3/463-4. L.27, for ( العمادى ); see Ahlwardt, op.cit., p.280.

Page No. 154.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/46-7. L.5, ( اَبَات الاحكام ) written by Mallā Ahmād al-Ardabīlī; see Ahlwardt, op.cit., MS No. 4808.

Para. 2, MUH., 4/500-501. Para. 3, The two Grand Vizirs of the Empire are: 1. Khalīl Kaiseriyei Pasha (1026-28 A.H.) and 2. Qara Muḥammad Pasha (1028-29 A.H.); see Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.464.

Para. 5, MUH., 4/110-111. L.11, MUH. states that ( البرهانپوری ) comes from Birhanābūr in India; cf. loc. cit. Para. 6, ibid., 4/159-60.

Para. 7, ( ابن ابي اللطف ) MUH. states that this scholar died in 1028 A.H.; ibid., 4/272. Para. 9, ibid., 3/140-41. LL.18-19, Celebi 'Alī Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire (1029-30 A.H.; see Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.465. L.19, ( گوزلجه ), Gyuzelje (T.) "Fair or pretty well". Para. 10, MUH. 1/143-44.

Page No. 155.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/292-4. Para. 2, ibid., 2/14-15. Para. 3, ibid., 3/39-40. Para. 4, MUH., 3/140-41. Para. 5, ibid., 3/198-9.

Para. 6, ibid., 3/286. LL.25-6, ( جامع السلطان بايزيد ) "Sultan Beyazıt Camii" in Istanbul; see BZTI, D7/11.

Page No. 156.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/356-9. L.1, ( طاشكیبری ) Tash-Kyupru (T.): "A bridge made of stone". Para. 2, MUH., 4/26-7. L.6, ( انا اعطيناك الكونر ) Qur'ān, 1/108; it is also, p. his (= 960 A.H. Para. 3, MUH., 3/271. Para. 4, SAL., loc. cit. Para. 5, MUH., 4/358-61. LL.15-16, al-Muḥibbī gives all the titles of these fifty works; cf. ibid., 4/359-60. L.23, ( خليج اسلابول ): The Thracian Bosphorus; or the harbour of Constantinople, the Golden Horn; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1453.

Page No. 157.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/105-9; Muḥammad, brother of Sultan 'Uthmān was born 1013 A.H. = 1605 A.D., executed 1030 A.H. = 1621 A.D.; see Alderson, op.cit., Tab XXXIV. Para. 2, Husain Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1030 A.H.; Dilawar Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1030-31 A.H.; Dāwūd Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1031 A.H.; see, Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.465. Para. 3, MUH., 1/11-12. L.10, ( للحنفية ) appears as " في فقه الحنفية " in ibid., cf. 1/11. Para. 4, ibid., 1/68-70. L.14, the full name of ( البوريني ) is: al-Ḥasan al-Burīnī. Para. 5, ibid., 1/140-2. L.23, ( جبل الزعفران ): The Za'farān mountain is situated in Tunis; see loc. cit.

Page No. 158.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/246. Para. 2, ibid., 1/396-98. Para. 3, ibid., 2/412-18. Para. 4, ibid., 2/225-6. L.9, Sultan Aḥmad of Morrocco; see Bosworth, op.cit., Tab. No. 15, p.38. Para. 5, MUH., 3/440-55.

Page No. 159.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/165-6. Para. 2, ibid., 4/231-3. Para. 3, ibid., 4/234. Para. 4, ibid., 4/296-9. Para. 5, ibid., 4/503.

Page No. 160.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/510. Para. 2, cf. Hammer, op.cit., 7/429; see also S.K. al-Jamīl, article No. 2, pp.17-18, for further details, see Longrigg, op.cit., pp.192-3. Para. 3, MUH., 3/107-8; "The Janissaries broke into the palace, May 19, 1622"; see Shaw, op.cit., 1/192-3. L.18, ( ان عثمان شهيد ) is p. his. (= 1031 A.H.); Sultan 'Uthman was taken to the Castle of Yedi Kule where he was executed in

the evening of May 20, 1622; see En 1, 111/1007. Para. 4, For historical details about Dāwūd Pasha, see Kātib Ḥalabī, Fezleke, Istanbul 1286, 11/13, v.d.; see also I.AN., 3/498; Dāwūd Pasha married the daughter of Sultan Muḥammad II, or sister of Sultan Muṣṭafā I. In his book, Alderson was not able to find her name; cf. Alderson, op.cit., Tab. No. XXXIII; Ḥasan Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1031 A.H.; see Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. No. IV, p.465. Muṣṭafā Pasha, also was the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1031-32 A.H.; see loc. cit. Para. 5, MUH., 4/108. Para. 6, cf. Hammer, op.cit., 7/429-30. Para. 7, MUH., 4/49-54.

Page No. 161.

Para. 1, cf. S.K. al-Jamīl, article No. 2, pp.18-19. Para. 2, MUH., 1/170-2. Para. 3, ibid., 1/185-86. L.9, ( ابن العماد ). see Ahlwardt, op.cit., MSS No. 8507, 49. L.11, ( منظومة السيوطي ) is entitled ( منظومة في المجتهديين ); see ibid., MS No. 1833. Para. 3, MUH., 1/273-74. Para. 5, ibid., 2/81-4. Para. 6-, ibid., 2/118.

Page No. 162.

L.1, The name of ( مفتي دمشق ) is: " ابو المعالي درويش محمد الطالوي "; cf. ibid., 2/118. L.1, ( الشاطر ) appears as ( علي الشاطر ); cf. loc. cit. Para. 1, ibid., 2/213. Para. 2, ibid., 2/342. Para. 3, ibid., 2/381. Para. 4, ibid., 2/321. Para. 5, ibid., 3/56-7. Para. 6, ibid., 3/186-7. L.16, ( اليونسية ) al-Yūnisiyya Madr. in Damascus; see, I.TU., 1/21. L.16, ( الكوجانية ), Kūjāniyya Madr.; see, ibid., 1/221. L.16, ( الضيائية ), al-Diṣyā'iyya Madr. in Damascus; see ibid., 1/237. L.17, The full titles of these two works are: "مقدمة and الانهر شرح على فرائض ملتقى البحار" "العلائية في تجويد التلاوة القرآنية".

cf. MUH., 3/186. Para. 7, ibid., 3/235-6; ( المالكي ): His full name appears in MUH. as: عيسى بن عبد الرحمن " ; cf. loc. cit. Para. 8, ibid., 4/47-9. L.21, ( قونية ), Konya (T.); Iconium (Gk.), it is situated in the centre of Anatolia; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-B2. Para. 9, MUH., 4/77-8. Para. 10, ibid., 4/212-14. L.26, ( ازمير ) Izmir (T.); Smyrna (Gk.), City in Western Anatolia; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-B2.

#### Page No. 163.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/229-31. Para. 2, ibid., 4/222. Para. 3, ibid., 4/375. Para. 4, ibid., 4/509; ( الدمشقي ): The full name of this scholar appears written in MUH. as: " يوسف بن يوسف بن كرم الدين الدمشقي "; cf. loc. cit. Para. 5, cf. Savory, op.cit., p.83. Para. 6-, MUH., 1/382-4; see also Longrigg, op.cit., pp.51-6; also S.al-Jamīl, article No. 2, pp.18-19. L.16, ( حانظ احمد باشا ): The Wālī of Damascus; see MUH., 4/509.

#### Page No. 164.

L.12, ( ارول ) Arwīl, as it is written in Niebuhr, op.cit., p.267. Arwīl is the Mosulī (Ldv) for Arbīl, the city in Northern Iraq. The Kurdish (Ldv) for Arbīl is Hāwrīl; see M.A. Zakī, Tārīkh al-Kurd wa Kurdistan, Cairo, 1936, p.226; see also Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-B2. LL.12-17, cf. ZUB., pp.65-6. L.15, ( الجزيرة ) al-Jazīra: It is probably Jazīrat Ibn 'Umar; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-B2; or Bādiyat al-Jazīra in Western Iraq between Sinjār and 'Āna. LL.16-17, ( قلعة القمري ), Qal'at 'al-Qamarī is situated in Northern Iraq; see ZUB., p.66, n.2. L.17, ( السادة ), The Sādah of Mosul are the Naqībs, Fakhrīs, Moftīs and 'Ubaīdīs, descended from Sayyid 'Abdullāh of the A'rajī House, who were brought to Mosul by the Turks in the middle of the sixteenth century by using

his holy qualities to pacify the recalcitrant inhabitants of the city; see Sā'igh, Tārīkh-al-Mawsil, vol. 1, pp.266-7; and see H. Batatu, The Old Social Classes and the Revolutionary Movements of Iraq, Princeton 1978, pp.156-7, from Great Britain, personalities, Mosul, Arbīl, Kīrkūk, and Sulāimaniyyah (1922), pp. 1,2,22 and 75. L.19, "Merre Husain Pasha", the Grand Vizir of the Empire (1032 A.H.); Kamankesh 'Alī Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1032-3 A.H.; see Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. IV., p.465. Para. 2, MUH., 4/363-5; the new Grand Vizir was Kimānkish 'Alī Pasha, together with the Muftī, deposed the Sultan on Sept. 10, 1623 and called Aḥmad's son Murād to the throne; see En 1, III/760. L.24, ( مراد خان العادل ) is p. his. (= 1032 A.H.). Para. 3, MUH., 1/296-7.

Page No. 165.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/97. L.3, For ( الشريشيه ); see loc. cit. Para. 2, ibid., 1/122-3. LL.5-6, The full titles of these works appear in MUH. as : " الفتح البين في شرح ام البراهين " and " فوح العطر بترجيح الفرض في الكعبة والحجر " ; cf. ibid., 1/122. Para. 3, ibid., 1/157-58. Para. 4, ibid., 1/172-3. Para. 5, ibid., 1/179-80. L.21, ( تيمور حصار ), Temur-hisar is situated in Rumeli; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXVI-B1. L.21, ( زغرة العيفة ) or Eski-Zaghra is situated in Romeli; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXVI-B1. It is situated in Bulgaria at present. L.21, ( هزار عراد - ) 'Arād is situated in Western Romania; see NOR, (R-13), p.43. L.21, ( سروز ), Siroz (T.), Serrai (Gk.) is situated in Rumeli; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXVI-B1. Para. 6, MUH., 1/294-6.

Page No. 166.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/248-9. Para. 3, ibid., 2/433-4. Para. 4, ibid., 2/457-64. Para. 5, ibid., 3/286-7. L.20, ( ابو عريش ) 'Abū 'Arīsh is situated in Yaman; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXIV-B2.

Para. 6, MUH., 3/299-303. L.23, ( بساتين الرسوه والمزوه )  
 Rabwa and Mizza are situated in Damascus; see Yāqūt, 2/752 and  
 4/522. Para. 7, MUH., 3/482.

Page No. 167.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/169-70. Para. 2, ibid., 4/174. Para. 3, ibid.,  
 4/294-6. Para. 4, ibid., 4/461. Para. 5, For historical details,  
 see Savory, op.cit., pp.89-90. Para. 6, Cerkes Muḥammad Pasha,  
 the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1033-34 A.H.; see Spiridonakis, op.cit.,  
 App. IV, p.465. Para. 7, MUH., 1/39. Para. 8, ibid., 1/297-98.

Page No. 168.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/390-94. Para. 2, MUH., 2/95-8. Para. 3,  
ibid., 2/305-6. L.20, " برئت من كل سقم " is p. his (= 952 A.H.).  
 Para. 4, ibid., 3/155-6. Para. 5, ibid., 2/267-9.  
 Para. 6, Hāfiẓ Muḥammad Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1034-5  
 A.H.; cf. Spiridonakis, loc. cit.

Page No. 169.

Para. 1, 'Izzat Efendi, the Muftī of the Ottoman Empire; see Hammer,  
op.cit., 5/750. Hammer does not mention Muḥī al-Dīn b. Zakariya;  
 cf. loc. cit. Para. 2, MUH., 1/64. Para. 3, ibid., 1/113-14.  
 Para. 4, ibid., 1/116-17. Para. 5, ibid., 1/368-9. Para. 6, ibid.,  
 1/394.

Page No. 170.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/396-98. Para. 2, ibid., 2/29-30. Para. 3, ibid.,  
 2/62-3. Para. 4, ibid., 2/172-3. Para. 5, MUH., p.73; see SAL.,  
 p.62. L.24, For ( سور الموصل ); see S. Daiwachī, Sur

al-Mawṣil, SUMER, 3/1947. L.24, ( خرت بـرت ), Khirt-Birt (Hīṣn-Ziyād), is situated in Anatolia; see Yāqūt, 3/415.

Page No. 171.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/104-5. Para. 2, ibid., 3/156-7. Para. 3, ibid., 3/230-3. Para. 4, ibid., 3/303-5. L.12, ( الخطائي ): He is probably 'Umar b. Aḥmad b. 'Alī. Para. 5, MUH., 3/475. LL.15-16, al-Muḥibbī does not mention these two verses; cf. loc. cit. Para. 6, ibid., 4/44. Para. 7, ibid., 4/174-7. Para. 8, ibid., 4/299-300.

Page No. 172.

Para. 1, On the night of November 28, 1623 A.D., considerable numbers of Persian troops entered Baghdad under the leadership of Shah 'Abbās I; see Longrigg, op.cit., p.56. Para. 2, MAN., 1/136. Para. 3, MUH., 1/203-4. L.6, ( البرقونية ), al-Barqūṣiyya Madr. in Cairo, for details; see En 2, IV/432. L.6, ( دار الشفاة النصوري ) Māristān of al-Mansūr Qalā'un; see ibid., IV/426, map of Cairo 43 G-4. Para. 4, MUH., 2/208-9. Para. 5, MUH., 3/14. Para. 6, ibid., 3/214-5. Para. 7, ibid., 3/475-6. L.13, ( شرح العقائد العنصرية ) by Mallā Jalāl al-Dawānī. L.13, ( جهة الوحدة ) by al Ghizzī. Para. 8, MUH., 4/9-11. Para. 10, ibid., 1/145-8.

Page No. 173.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/186-7. Para. 2, ibid., 1/298-9. L.16, ( السعدية ): The Sa'diyya is a family claiming Sa'd al-Dīn al-Jibāwī b. Yūnus al-Shaibānī, for details, see J.S. Trimmingham, op.cit., p.73, n.2. Para. 3, MUH., 1/301. Para. 4, loc. cit. Para. 5, ibid., 1/425-8. Para. 6, ibid., 2/27.



Page No. 174.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/366. Para. 2, ibid., 2/369. Para. 3, ibid., 3/61. Para. 4, ibid., 3/87-8. L.12, ( شرح الارشاد ) by Ibn Hishām, but the correct title of this book is: شرح شمس الارشاد ; cf. ibid., 3/87. Para. 5, ibid., 3/210-11. Para. 6, ibid., 3/212-14. Para. 7, ibid., 3/468-9. Para. 9, ibid., 4/300-1.

Page No. 175.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/297. Para. 2, Khalīl Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1035-6 A.H.; Khusrū Pasha was appointed after him 1036-40 A.H.; cf. Spiridonakis, op.cit., App. IV, p.465. Para. 4, MUH., 1/145. Para. 5, ibid., 1/165-6. Para. 6, For historical details; see L.L. Bellan, Chah Abbas I, Paris 1932, p.176; and see En 2, 1/8.

Page No. 176.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/378-9. Para. 2, ibid., 3/178. Para. 3, ibid., 4/78-9. Para. 4, ibid., 4/227. Para. 6, ibid., 1/12-13. Para. 7, ibid., 1/114-6. Para. 8, ibid., 1/239-41. Para. 9, ibid., 1/302. L.24, The full title of al-Kāfil is: الكافل بنيل السؤل , and the full title of Marqāt al- Uṣūl is: مرقاة الوصول الى علم الاصول .

Page No. 177.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/308-9. Para. 2, ibid., 1/385-8. Para. 4, ibid., 3/187. Para. 5, ibid., 3/223. Para. 6, ibid., 3/276-7. Para. 7, ibid., 3/309-11. Para. 8, ibid., 4/214. Para. 9, ibid., 4/248-9. L.25, ( رقى الى قفل بيت الله ) is p. his. (= 1039 A.H.) .

Page No. 178.

Para. 1, Na'ima, Tārīkh, VI/74, 91. Para. 2, MUH., 1/402.  
 Para. 3, ibid., 1/470-3. Para. 4, ibid., 2/109. Para. 5, ibid.,  
 2/199. Para. 6, ibid., 2/405. L.21, ( السلسل ):  
 It is possibly " السلسل في غريب لغة العرب ". Para. 7,  
MUH., 2/440-3.

Page No. 179.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/464-7. L.3, ( قضيبة البنان ): The tomb  
 of Qadīb al-Bān is situated near Bāb Sinjār in Mosul; see MAN., 2/116;  
 see also MUN., p.111. LL.7-8, The full title of Nāqūs is:  
 " ناقوس الطباع في اسرار السماع "; cf. MUH., 2/465.  
 Para. 2, ibid., 3/36-7. Para. 3, ibid., 3/96. Para. 4, ibid.,  
 3/235. Para. 5, ibid., 3/405-8. Para. 6, ibid., 3/492-3.

Page No. 180.

Para. 2, MUH., 4/361-2. Para. 3, cf. En 2, 1/904, see also  
 Longrigg, op.cit., pp.55-63. Para. 7, MUH., 1/6-9. L.19,  
 ( اللغاني ) comes from Luḡāna, a village in Egypt; see loc. cit.

Page No. 181.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/53-7. " المهتارى " died in 1071 A.H.; see  
Baghdadi, 5/33. Para. 2, MUH., 1/959-62. Para. 3, ibid.,  
 1/302-12; see also Baghdadi, 5/157. LL.10-14, the full titles of  
 al-Tilimsānī's works are given by Baghdadi as follows:

- (1) نفع الطبيب في غصن اندلس الرطيب واخبار الوزير لسان الدين ابن الخطيب
- (2) فتح المتعمال في وصف النعمال
- (3) اضاءة الدجنة في عقائد اهل الجنة
- (4) قطف المهتار في اخبار المختصر
- (5) انحاف المغربي في تكميل شرح الكبرى

- " عرف النشيق في اخبار دمشق " (6)  
 " روض الآس العاطر الانفاس في ذكر من لقيته من اعلام مراکش وفاس " (7)  
 " الدر النبين في اسماء الهادى الاميين " (8)  
 Para. 4, MUH., 1/380-5; see also I.AN., 5.1/71-77.

Page No. 182.

LL.1-5, cf. IBI, 4/165-8. Para. 1, MUH., 1/406-8. Para. 2, ibid., 2/166-167; see also Baghdadi, 5/369. L.'20, ( الهبتي )  
 This name derives from the Abū al Haytam quarter in Cairo; cf. MUH., 2/166. Para. 4, ibid., 2/235; Baghdadī wrongly states that this Faqīh ( العبدروس ) died in 990 A.H.; cf. Baghdadi, 5/419.  
 Para. 5, MUH., 3/2-8.

Page No. 183.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/10-13; see also Baghdadi, 5/612. Para. 2, MUH. 3/38-9. Para. 3, ibid., 3/166-68. Para. 4, ibid., 3/189-191; see also Baghdadi, 5/755. LL.12-13, ( الاتحاد في اختصار التحفة ) by Ibn Hajar; ( الديباج ) by al-Nawawī; ( كشف النقاب ) by al Harīrī. Para. 4, MUH., 4/27. Para. 5, ibid., 4/301. Para. 6, ibid., 4/301-2; see also Baghdadi, 5/276-7. L. 26, ( شارع النجاة ), the subject of this book is Hikma, not Fiqh, as the author Yāsīn has mentioned.

Page No. 184.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/448. Para. 2, ibid., 1/418; al-Muhibbī states that al-Shaikh Ismā'īl al-Rūmī died in 1042 A.H., cf. loc. cit.  
 Para. 4, Rajab Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1040 A.H. See, Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.465. Para. 6, MUH., 1/97-99. Para. 7, ibid., 1/135-9. Para. 8, ibid., 1/359-64.

Page No. 185.

Para. 1, For historical analysis; see Hitti, op.cit., p.383. Para. 2, MUH., 2/120. Para. 3, ibid., 2/189-90; see also Baghdadi, 5/379. L.16, ( الشفا ) by Qādī 'Ayād. Para. 4, MUH., 3/80-83. Para. 5, ibid., 3/228-230.

Page No. 186.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/236-9. Para. 2, ibid., 3/354-7. Para. 3, ibid., 3/339-40; the correct name of ( القاسم بن محمد ) is: " محمد بن أبي القسم " " بن محمد "; cf. loc. cit. Para. 4, ibid., 3/493. Para. 5, MUH., 4/11-14; see also, Baghdadi, 6/277.

Page No. 187.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/265-6. LL.4-5, These two verses are to be attributed to Muhammad b. Yāsīn al Manūfī al Shāfi'ī, not to the author mentioned; cf. the biographies of these two scholars ibid., 4/265-70. It seems that the author left out the biography of al-Manūfī in his DUR. 1, and DUR. 2. Para. 2, MUH., 4/406-7; but Baghdadi is wrongly written that al-Balkhī died in 1040 A.H.; cf. Baghdadi, 6/467. Para. 3, Na'īma, op.cit., 11/167. Para. 4, MUH., 1/29-30. Para. 5, ibid., 1/246-248.

Page No. 188.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/312. Para. 2, ibid., 1/375. Para. 3, ibid., 1/386-7. L.17, ( قبر الياس ), Qabr-Ilyās is situated in Lebanon; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXIII-B2. L.18, ( قلعة جزين ), Jazīn Castle is situated in southern Lebanon; see Dalil, p.186. Para. 4, MUH., 1/388. L.23, " تكية خارج باب الله " is situated in Damascus near al Qadam village; see loc. cit. L.26, " هذا السبيل الاحمدى قد بدا " is p. his. (= 1043 A.H.).

Page No. 189.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/109-111. Para. 2, ibid., 2/129. Para. 3, cf. Sykes, op.cit., 2/171. Para. 4, MUH., 3/16-17; see also Baghdadi, 5/617. Para. 5, MUH., 3/191. Para. 6, ibid., 3/234. Para. 7, ibid., 3/266-71. L.21, ( الشوف ), al-Shūf is situated in Lebanon, for geographical details; see Niebuhr, op.cit., 2/367. L.22, ( الشقيف ) al-Shaqīf is situated in Syria; see Taq., 244-5. L.23, ( كسريوان ) Kasriwān is situated in Lebanon; see Dalil, p.181. LL.26, الجولان al-Julān; حوران Hūrān; الحصن al-Hiṣn, الرقاب al-Marqab; سليمة Salīma are Syrian villages.

Page No. 190.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/293-97. LL.4-8, For details, see L. Poole, op.cit., p.103; see also Bosworth, The Islamic Dynasties, pp.71-2. Para. 2, MUH., 4/177-81. Para. 3, ibid., 4/218; see also Baghdadi, 6/415.

Page No. 191.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/459-60. Para. 2, cf. En 1, III/731. Para. 6, Muḥammad Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1041-46 A.H.; see Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.465; the execution of Shaikh al-Islam, Akhī-Zadeh Husain took place in 1633 A.D.; see En 1, III/731. Para. 7, MUH., 1/164-5; see also Baghdadi, 5/158. Para. 8, MUH., 1/218-19. Para. 9, ibid., 1/225-226. Para. 10, MUH., 1/312-15; see also, Baghdadi, 5/158. L.22, ( المدرسة الاشرفية ) al-Ashrafiyya Madr. in Egypt; see MUH., 1/312. L.23, ( ام البراهين ) written by Imām Muḥammad al-Sunūsī. L.24, the full title of ( مقدمة الشعراني ) is " المقدمة النحوية في علم العربية ".

Page No. 192.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/404-5. Para. 2, ibid., 3/122-24; see also Baghdadi, 5/700-06. L.12, ( السيرة ) is entitled " انسان العيون في سيرة النبي المأمون " L.13, ( كتاب التصريف ) is entitled " حاشية على شرح التصريف "; cf. MUH., 3/123.

Para. 3, ibid., 3/359-61. Para. 4, ibid., 3/460-63. Para. 4, ibid., 4/281-82. LL.26-27, ( الحكم ) written by Ibn 'Atā'ullāh.

Page No. 193.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/332-33. Para. 2, ibid., 4/333-4; see also Baghdadi, 6/423-24. Para. 3, This is the Erivan Expedition against the Safavids; the campaigns into the Caucasus and Azerbaijan were successful; Erivan was captured on August 8, 1634 and Tabriz was captured on Sept. 15. For historical details, see Shaw, op.cit., vol. 1, p.199. Para. 4, MUH., 4/354-55. Para. 6, ibid., 1/197-201. Para. 7, ibid., 3/310. Para. 8, MUH., p.73; see also SAL., p.61; for further details, see MAN., 1/135-36. L.23, ( سوق الكبير بالوصل ), for details, see E. Ives, Journey from Persia to England by an Unusual Route, London, MDCCLXXIII, p.322. Para. 9, MUN., pp.73-74; see also SAL., loc. cit., and MAN., 1/136.

Page No. 194.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/234-6; see also Baghdadi, 5/158. Para. 2, MUH. 1/315. Para. 3, ibid., 1/315-16. Para. 4, ibid., 1/375-80.

Page No. 195.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/64. Para. 2, ibid., 3/303. Para. 3, ibid., 4/263-64; see also E.J.W. Gibb, op.cit., IV/192. Para. 4, MUH., 4/302-3. Para. 5, ibid., 4/508. Para. 6, ibid., 2/157. Para. 7,

Na'īma, op.cit., III/334; "As soon as Sultan Murād IV took his army back to the capital for the winter, the Safavids re-occupied Caucasus and Azerbaijan"; Shaw, op.cit., 1/199. Para. 8, MUH., 1/156-7. L.19, ( ران ), Revan (T.) Erivan, the Armeinian capital, see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXI-C3.

Page No. 196.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/368. Para. 3, MUH., p.74; see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 4, MUH., 1/385-8; see also E.J.W. Gibb, op.cit., V/101 n.4). Para. 5, MUH., 2/23-4. Para. 6, ibid., 2/80-81. Para. 8, ibid., 2/200-2; see also Baghdadi, 5/381-2. Para. 9, MUH., 3/223-5. Para. 10, ibid., 4/181. L.23, ( الحرزمي ) comes from Hīrz, a village in Ghūṭa of Damascus; cf. loc. cit. L.24, ( جامع السلطان سليمان ) is al-Sulaimānyya Jāmi' in Damascus. L.25, ( العزيزية ), al 'Azīziyya Madr., in Damascus; see I.TU., 2/28.

Page No. 197.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/455-8. Para. 2, ( اردلان ), "Ardalan: this name was formerly used for the ill-defined province of Persian Kurdistan, the major part of which at present is the district of Sanāndadj (formerly Senna)"; see En 2, vol. 1, p.626 (Shahristan), article "Ardalān"; see also Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-C2. Para. 3, MUH., 1/39-42; see also Baghdadi, 5/31.

Page No. 198.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/266-71. Para. 1, ibid., 1/271-3; see also Baghdadi, 5/159. Para. 3, MUH., 2/249-52; see also Baghdadi, 5/428. Para. 4, MUH., 2/264-7. L.18, ( الصباحي ) comes from Balḍa Ṣabāḥ, a village situated in Yaman; cf. loc. cit. Para. 5, ibid., 2/365-6. L.22, ( قضاة بلدته ) is Tarīm; see loc. cit. Para. 6, ibid., 3/308-9.

Page No. 199.

Para. 2, Sultan Murād left Istanbul on Nov. 23, 1047 A.H.; see I.AN., 8/626, for historical details about the second Ottoman conquest of Baghdad; see S. al-Jamīl, article No. 2, pp.17-18, see also Rawdat al Abrār fī fatih Baghdad "MS", written by Qara Chalabī-Zadeh Abdul-Azīz Efendī, No. 2089, Süleymaniye Library, Istanbul; see also I.AN., 8/626-. L.6, ( العاديّة ) al-'Amādiyya is situated in N. Iraq; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-B2. L.15, ( يارمجة ) Yārimja is a village situated on the left bank of the Tigris, south of Mosul; see Rich, Narrative of a Residence in Koordistan, London, 1836, 2/349. LL.15-23, Na'ima, op.cit., 111/81-106; see also I.AN., 8/226-8; and Kātib Chalabī, op.cit., 2/198. Para. 4, MUH., 1/18-19; see also Baghdadi, 5/31. L.25, ( شرح نظم الاجروميّة ) written by al 'Amrūfī.

Page No. 200.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/70-71. L.4, ( دولة اباد ) or ( دولتا بان ), is situated near Shīrāz in Iran; see Yāqūt, 2/624. Para. 2, MUH., 1/97-110; see also Baghdadi, 5/240. Para. 3, MUH., 1/182. Para. 4, ibid., 1/182-3. Para. 5, ibid., 2/201-3; see also Baghdadi, 5/109. Para. 6, MUH., 1/217-18. L.26, ( المرف ) al-'Urf is situated in Yaman; see Yāqūt, 3/647-8.

Page No. 201.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/248-50. Para. 2, ibid., 1/262-66. Para. 3, ibid., 1/419-22. Para. 4, ibid., 2/39-40. Para. 5, ibid., 2/78. Para. 6, ibid., 2/195-6. Para. 7, ibid., 2/299-300. Para. 8, ibid., 2/377-78. Para. 9, ibid., 2/410-411; see also Baghdadi, 5/563.



Page No. 202.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/41-2. Para. 2, ibid., 3/93-4. Para. 3, ibid., 3/118. Para. 4, ibid., 3/403-4. L.13, ( كجده كرشه ) appears written as " المعروف جده بكرشه " in ibid., cf. 3/403. Para. 5, ibid., 4/2-9. Para. 6, ibid., 4/108-110. Para. 7, ibid., 4/432. Para. 8, I.AN., 8/634. L.28, for ( طيار باشا ), see IBI. 4/223.

Page No. 203.

Para. 1, Sultan Murād IV died soon afterwards on February 8, 1640, just after his return from Baghdad; En 1, III/731-2. Para. 2, MUH., 1/13-16; see also En 2, III/983. L.11, ( استعنت بالله ) is p. his. (= 1049 A.H.). Para. 3, MUH., 1/16. Para. 4, ibid., 2/188. Para. 5, ibid., 2/252-6.

Page No. 204.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/168. Para. 2, ibid., 4/228-29. Para. 3, Na'ima, op.cit., 4/11. Para. 4, cf. IBI, 5/20-21 from GUL., 1/80. Para. 5, cf. Muḥammad Thuraiya, Sijilli Osmani, Istanbul 1308 A.H., 3/134. Para. 7, MUH., 1/94-5. Para. 8, ibid., 1/262. Para. 9, ibid., 1/316-17.

Page No. 205.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/464-70. Para. 2, ibid., 2/104-5. Para. 3, ibid., 2/358-59. Para. 4, ibid., 2/434. Para. 5, ibid., 3/62-3. L.14, ( الشبيكة ) Shabika is situated in the centre of Mecca. Para. 7, MUH., 3/464-65. In his biography, al-Muḥibbī states that al-Dimashqī died in 1065 A.H.; cf. MUH., 3/465. Para. 8, ibid., 4/79. Para. 9, cf. IBI., 3/23 from GUL., 2/80.

Page No. 206.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/85; see also Baghdadi, 5/240. Para. 3, MUH., 1/179; see also Baghdadi, 5/159. Para. 4, MUH., 1/250-251. L.9, ( الحبرني ) comes from al Muhayrith in Yaman; cf. ibid., 1/250. Para. 5, ibid., 2/15-16. Para. 6, ibid., 2/94-8. Para. 7, ibid., 2/325-27; see also Baghdadi, 5/507. L.19, ( شرح البداية ) written by al Marghinānī. Para. 8, MUH., 2/380-9; see also Baghdadi, 5/549.

Page No. 207.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/178-79. Para. 2, ibid., 3/143-6. Para. 3, ibid., 3/366-75; see also Baghdadi, 6/280. Para. 4, MUH., 3/361-66. Para. 5, ibid., 4/426. Para. 6, ibid., 4/503-505.

Page No. 208.

Para. 1, cf. Bosworth, The Islamic Dynasties, p.184. Para. 2, Muhammad was born 1051 A.H. = 1642 A.D., cf. Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XXXVII; Alderson does not mention Maḥmūd b. Sultan Ibrāhīm. Para. 3, MUH., 4/249-257; see also Baghdadi, 6/286; but al-Muhibbī states that Ibn al-Durra died in 1065 A.H.; cf. MUH., 4/257. Para. 4, I.AN., 5.2/881-2. L.13, ( أزق ) Azak (T.), Azov, Tona Don is situated to the North of the Black Sea; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXX-B2. Para. 5, MUH., 1/183-84. Para. 6, ibid., 1/237-38. Para. 7, ibid., 3/23-36.

Page No. 209.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/234. Para. 2, ibid., 3/257-66. L.10, ( وقوله ضنا ) : Thus in DUR., but the original reading in MUH. appears written as: " تضمينه المشهور لصراع ابن سينا " ; cf. MUH., 3/266. Para. 3, ibid., 4/24-26. Para. 4, ibid., 4/33. Para. 5, ibid., 11/80-81.

Page No. 210.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/81-82. Para. 2, cf. Savory, op.cit., pp.228-29.  
 Para. 3, Coçik Hasan Pasha was appointed as Wālī of Baghdad for the second time on 19th Muḥarram 1052 A.H., see GUL., 2/80; see also M. Thuraiyā, op.cit., vol. 3, p.134. Para. 4, MUH., 4/273.  
 Para. 5, ibid., 1/71-78. L.14, ( الغرر ) written by Muḥammad b. Khurd; see ibid., 1/72. L.14, ( تاريخ ابناء عصره ), thus in DUR., but al-Muhibbī states the following information: "وشرع في جمع تاريخ عام لاهل عصره وما جريات دهره لكنه لم ينتم"; cf. loc.cit. Para. 6, ibid., 1/210-17. Para. 6, ibid., 2/389-90.  
 L.18, ( الجفقيه ) al-Chaqmaqgīeh Madr. is situated in Damascus; see I.TU., 1/101.

Page No. 211.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/37-38. Para. 2, ibid., 3/376. Para. 3, ibid., 4/123-24. L.9, ( مالتة ), Malta Island of the Mediterranean Sea; for historical Turkish details, see I.AN., 7/260-66. Para. 7, Qara Mustafā Pasha, the Grand Vizir 1048-1053 A.H.; Sultan Zadeh Muḥammad Pasha, the Grand Vizir 1053-1055 A.H.; see Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.465. Para. 8, cf. Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XXXVII.  
 Para. 9, Dallī Husain Pasha ruled Baghdad from 25th Muh., 1054 A.H., until 9 Rajab of the same year; see IBI, 5/26-27. Para. 11, MUH., 1/10. Para. 12, ibid., 1/22-23. Para. 13, ibid., 1/48-49.

Page No. 212.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/219-20. Para. 2, ibid., 2/345, see also GUL., p.45. Para. 3, MUH., 2/380, see also GUL., pp.45-46. Para. 4, MUH., 2/427-32. Para. 5, cf. E.J.W. Gibb, op.cit., 1/60.  
 Para. 6, MUH., 3/120-21. Para. 7, ibid., 3/172-73. Para. 8, ibid., 3/270-71.

Page No. 213.

Para. 2, MUH., 4/181-84. Para. 3, ibid., 4/460. L.14, ( النجب ) al-Nujub is situated in Yaman; see Khaz., 1/23. L.14, ( المحرق ) al-Mahraq is situated in Yaman; see loc. cit. Para. 4, MUH., 4/462. L.15, ( المدرسة الغزالية ) al-Ghazāliya Madr. is situated in Damascus; see I.TU., 1/202. Para. 5, MUH., 4/467-472. L.19, ( مدرسة ام السلطان مــــراد ) "Valide Medr. is situated in Uskudar"; see BZTI., T4/10. L.20, ( بولاق ), Būlāq is situated in Egypt; see Yāqūt, 4/675. Para. 6, "Crete Island seems to have been under the rule of the Venice Government before its occupation by the Ottomans. The war came in September 1644, and ended July 7th, 1647"; Shaw, op.cit., 1/201-202.

Page No. 214.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/16. Para. 2, ( الوزير موسى باشا ) was known as Coçik Mūsā Pasha; see IBI. 5/30; Mūsā Pasha ruled Baghdad from 24 Rajab 1055 A.H., until 15 Sha'bān 1056 A.H.; see GUL., 2/81. Para. 3, MUH., 1/14-15, see also Na'ima, op.cit., IV/174-78. L.7, ( خانية ) Khānya or Hanya is a castle in W. Crete Island; see W.G. Moore, op.cit., p.205. The great port of Hanya (Conea) was taken by the Ottomans on August 19, 1645; see Shaw, op.cit., 1/201; 'Azzāwī wrongly called this city ( حانية ); cf. IBI. 5/27,31. L.7, ( قلعة ايا نوار ), I was not able to find the situation of this castle. L.7, ( قلعة رتمو ), Ratmu Castle; it is on Patmas Island in Sporadhes (Dodecanese); see TAW., plate 83, H/7. L.8, ( توغراد ), I was not able to find the situation of Tūghrād. L.8, ( بانبره ), Partibra: it is possibly Bandırma on the sea of Marmara, see TAW., plate 83, J/4. L.8, ( میران بولى ), It is possibly Kolpos Merabellou in Crete Island. L.8, ( قنديه ), Candia, the capital of Crete Island, Gīrid (T.); Candia (It.); see Pitcher, op.cit., map XIV-B3. L.9, ( دالى حسين باشا ), Dālī Husain Pasha, the former ruler of Baghdad, Bosna, and Būda; see

Na'imā, op.cit., 4/204-5; see also MUH., 1/131. L.11, ( مريم ), Marīma is situated S. Yaman or Ḥaḍramaut; see loc.cit. Para. 5, MUH., 3/210. Para. 6, ibid., 1/173-4. Para. 7, ibid., 1/411. Para. 9, ibid., 2/238, the biography of Ṣāliḥ b. 'Alī.

Page No. 215.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/239-240. L.2, ( الاشباه ), al-Ashbāḥ wa al-Nazā'ir; There are at least four different books under this title. (1) - by Ibn al- Sabkī; (2) - by al-Suyūṭī; (3) - by Ibn Ṭulūn; (4) - by Ibn Nujaim. LL.2-3, ( تحفة اللوك ), No. (1), *Tuḥfat al Mulūk fī al Furū'*, written by Muḥammad b. Abī Bakr b. 'Abdul-Qādir; No. (2) *Tuḥfat al-Mulūk wal Salāṭīn*, written by Muḥammad b. 'Abdul-Latīf. Para. 2, MUH., 2/240. Para. 3, ibid., 2/362-3. Para. 4, ibid., 2/474. Para. 5, ibid., 3/117-118. Para. 6, ibid., 2/412.

Page No. 216.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/27-8. L.2, ( الروحا ), al-Rawḥā' is a village situated near Baghdad; see Yāqūt, 2/829. L.4, ( الاعصوم ), al-A'was is a famous village situated in Yaman; see MUH., 4/27. L.7, ( محمد باشا ): He is Sultan Zadeh Muḥammad Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1053-5 A.H.; see Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.465. Para. 3, cf. Savory, op.cit., p.84. Para. 5, MUH., 1/368-9. L.16, ( قاضي القضاة الشهاب احمد الخفاجي ): His full name is ( القاضي القضاة الشهاب احمد الخفاجي ), cf. ibid., 1/309. Para. 6, MUH., 1/42-4.

Page No. 217.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/118-19. Para. 2, ibid., 1/123. Para. 3, ibid., 1/317-24. Para. 4, ibid., 1/366. Para. 5, ibid., 1/496. Para. 6, ibid., 1/418. Para. 7, ibid., 4/210, see also I.AN., 7/587. Para. 8, MUH., 2/167-8. L.28, The full name of ( محمد الحرفوش ) is: " محمد بن علي الحرفوشي شراح الفاكهي "; see loc.cit.

Page No. 218.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/195. Para. 2, ibid., 3/201. Para. 3, ( البهائي ) was appointed as Qādī of al-Shām in 1048 A.H., and deposed in 1050 A.H., then he was appointed as Qādī - of Edirne, Istanbul, 'Askar-Anadolu and 'Askar-Rumeli in 1056 A.H.; cf. MUH., 4/4. Para. 4, ( محمد باشا ) He is Muḥammad Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire; see Hammer, op.cit., 5/749. Para. 5, MUH., 4/493-500.

Page No. 219.

Para. 2, "The Ottomans had captured Crete Island July 7, 1647, after a long and debilitating siege of Candia, capital of the Island;" Shaw, op.cit., vol. I, "The Expedition of Crete", pp.201-2. Para. 3, see Na'imā, op.cit., 4/245. Para. 4, MUN., p.74, see also SAL., Tab. of Vālīs. Para. 5, This biography of Yūsuf b. Abī al-Fath al-Hanafī al-Dimashqī has been repeated here by the author himself; cf. Text, Para. 5, p.218 and Para. 5, p.219. L.15, ( الفتى العماد ) is 'Abdul-Raḥmān al-'Imādī; see MUH., 4/498. Para. 6, ibid., 1/162-63. L.23, ( قطر الندى ) written by Ibn Hishām.

Page No. 220.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/221-2. Para. 2, ibid., 1/368-69. LL.12-13, ( مدرسة علي باشا ), Madr. 'Alī Pasha al-Jadīda in Istanbul; cf. ibid., 1/368, see also BZTI, map C4/14. L.13, In MUH., ( احدى مدارس السلطان سليمان ) appears written as ( مدرسة السلبيانية ); cf. MUH., 1/368. Para. 3, ibid., 1/475-79. L.19, ( للقاضي ) is Qādī Tāj al-Dīn al-Mālikī, cf. ibid., 1/477.

Page No. 221.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/344-45, see also KHU., fol. 45b. Para. 2,

MUH., 2/367-69, see also KHU., loc. cit. Para. 3, MUH., 2/433. Para. 4, ibid., 2/474-75. Para. 5, ibid., 3/20-3. Para. 6, ibid., 3/173-74. Para. 7, ibid., 3/246-54. L.24, Qara Muṣṭafā Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1048-53 A.H.; see Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.465.

Page No. 222.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/292-93. Para. 2, ibid., 376-83. Para. 3, cf. Daiwachī, Jawāmi'..., pp.212-19; see also MUN., pp.90-92, and Majmū', pp.154-57; Aḥmad al-Khaiyāt, Tarjamat al-Awliyā' fi al-Mawṣil al-Hadba', Mosul, 1966, pp.36-8; and see Kemp, op.cit., p.114. L.13, ( والي الموصل ) the Wālī of Mosul was Muṣṭafā al-Nīshānchī; see SAL., loc. cit. Para. 4, MUH., 3/375-6. Para. 5, ibid., 4/4. Para. 6, ibid., 4/82-9.

Page No. 223.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/177. Para. 2, ibid., 4/184. L.8, ( العونية ) al-'Awniyya is situated near Qanāt al-'Awnī in Damascus. Para. 3, MUH., 4/184-9. L.12, ( انموذج اليبب ) written by al-Suyūṭī. L.13, ( فتح الوهاب بنظم رسالة الآداب ) written by al-'Idd. L.13, ( شرح الازكار ) written by al-Nawawī. Para. 4, MUH., 4/334-36. Para. 6, Ibrāhīm Pasha Wālī of Baghdād 1056-57 A.H. was killed in Yedi Kule by the Sultan order; see GUL., 2/82. Para. 7, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 8, Ṣāliḥ Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1055-57 A.H.; see Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.465; see also Hammer, op.cit., 5/749.

Page No. 224.

Para. 1, "Sultan Ibrāhīm, the eighteenth Ottoman Sultan, was born 12 Shawwāl, 1024 = 4 November 1615"; En 2, III/983; "disaffection

and rebellion spread among the Janissaries and Spahis, and also among the Ulemas and all classes of people at Constantinople ... Sultan Ibrāhīm was promptly put to death and his son Mahomet IV was installed as Sultan"; Lord Eversley, The Turkish Empire from 1288 to 1914, London 1923, pp.162-63. Para. 2, MUH., 1/502. Para. 3, MUH., p.75; see also ZUB., pp.70-71. L.12, ( اليزيديّة ): "Yazidis, the religion of the Yazidis, who are a people of Kurdish origin, is basically synthetic and comprises Zoroastrian, Manichean, Nestorian, Moslem, and other elements. The centre of their religious life is the sanctuary of their Saint, Shaikh 'Ādī, near 'Aīn Sifnī to the north-east of Mosul, and the countryside of Sinjar." See S. al-Damlūchī, al-Yazīdiyya, Mosul 1949, see also Gordon Waterfield, Layard of Nineveh, London 1963, pp.150-55. Para. 4, Wazir Hasan Pasha ruled Baghdad 1060-61 A.H.; see GUL., 1/84. Para. 5, MUN., p.74; and SAL., loc. cit. L.19, ( زينل باشا ) Zaynal Pasha is given by the author as Zinbīl Pasha, in MUN., cf. loc. cit.; while the name appears Zaynī Pasha in SAL., cf. loc. cit.

Page No. 225.

L.3, ( قلعة ميخات ): Thus in DUR, Mihalīc (T.), Miletopolis (Gk.), situated in West Anatolia; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-A1. It appears " قصبة ميخاليس " in MUH., 2/123. Para. 1, ibid., 4/393-94. L.7, ( بشلمه ) Beshlimeh is situated in Rumeli; ibid., 4/393. L.12, ( جامع السلطان احمد ) "Sultan Ahmet Camii in Istanbul; see BZTI, map F8/4, and pp.470-74. Para. 2, MUH., 2/186-87. Para. 3, ibid., 3/146. Para. 4, ibid., 4/462-3. Para. 7, MUH., 1/475. Para. 8, ibid., 2/356.

Page No. 226.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/364-65. Para. 2, ibid., 3/218. Para. 3, ibid., 4/4. Para. 4, ibid., 4/49. Para. 5, ibid., 4/264. Para. 6, ibid.,



4/303-4. Para. 7, ibid., 392-93. Para. 8, "Shah Djahān's army occupied Kandahar in 1047 = 1047 = 1637 A.D., the last transfer was in 1058 = 1648 A.D., when Shah 'Abbas II took it, and the Muḡhol Emperors were never again able to conquer this Afghānī's province"; En 1, 1/711. Para. 9, Ṣufī Muḥammad Pasha 1058-59 A.H., and Murād Pasha 1059-60 A.H., the Grand Vizirs of the Empire; see Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.465. Para. 10, Malak Aḥmad Pasha ruled Diyār-Bakr before Baghdad; see 'Avliyā' Chalabī, op.cit., 4/259. Para. 11, MUN., loc. cit.; see also SAL., loc. cit.

Page No. 227.

Para. 1, 'Abdul-Raḥīm deposed in Rajab 1059 A.H. = 18th July, 1649 A.D.; Hammer, op.cit., 5/750. L.7, ( جامع نبی اللہ یونس ), Nabī Yūnus (Jonah) Mosque, stands on the historical mound of Nineveh. It is one of the ancient mosques built in Mosul; see Daiwachī, Jawāmi' al-Mawsil, pp.73-107; see also JAOS, vol. 2, 1851, p.111. L.13, ( قوہ صرای ) Qara Ṣarāy is a high castle situated in Mosul. It was the palace of Badr al-Dīn Lu'lu', the Governor of Mosul, 630-657 A.H.; see MAN., 1/121; see also SUMER, 3/125-26. Para. 3, MUH., 1/130-31. Para. 2, ibid., 1/158. L.20, ( الاحدیہ ) al-Aḥmadiyya Madr. is situated in the eastern side of al-Amawī mosque in Damascus; see loc. cit. L.21, ( فوہ ) Fuwwa is situated in Egypt; see loc. cit. Para. 3, ibid., 452-53.

Page No. 228.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/456-57. L.13, ( باب العراق ) Bāb al-irāq was an old Gate in southern side of Mosul; see SUMER, 3/125-26; see also Kemp, op.cit., map No. 3. L.15, ( جامع الجوبجی ), al-Chuwatjī Jāmi' in Mosul; see Daiwachī, Jawāmi' ..; see also Kemp, op.cit., p.114. L.17, p. his (= 1059 A.H.). Para. 3, MUH., 3/114-15. Para. 4, ibid., 3/197. Para. 5, ibid., 3/383. Para. 6, ibid., 3/479. Para. 7, ibid., 4/33-34. L.28, ( مدرسة ام السلطان مراد ) *Is Valida Sultan Medr. in Uskudar.*

Page No. 229.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/396. Para. 3, cf. IBI, 5/43. Para. 4, MUN., p.75, and SAL., loc. cit. Para. 5, MUH., 1/85-86. Para. 6, ibid., 1/184. Para. 7, ibid., 1/402-4. Para. 8, ibid., 2/162-64. Para. 9, ibid., 2/262-63. Para. 10, ibid., 3/52-3. LL.25-26, The author does not mention these two verses in DUR. 2, nor does al-Muhibbī mention this; cf. MSS of DUR. 2 and MUH., 3/52-53.

Page No. 230.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/421-24; Qara Chalabī-Zadeh deposed in Ramzān 1061 A.H. = Sep. 1651 A.D., see Hammer, op.cit., 5/750. Para. 2, MUH., 3/83-84. Para. 8, ibid., 3/121-22. Para. 4, ibid., 3/191-92. Para. 5, ibid., 4/54-55. Para. 6, ibid., 4/55-56. Para. 7, ibid., 4/189-200. Para. 8, ibid., 4/304-6.

Page No. 231.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/365-71. Para. 2, ibid., 4/491-92. L.11, ( شرح النظر ) written by al-Fākīhī. L.12, ( شرح التهذيب ), written by al-Khabīsī. Para. 3, ibid., 4/510. Para. 4, The Grand Vizirs of the Empire are: Murād Pasha 1059-1060 A.H.; Milik Aḥmad Pasha 1060-61 A.H.; and Siyāvūsh Pasha 1061 A.H.; see Hammer, op.cit., 5/549, see also cf. Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.465 and Text, p.234, Para. 3. Para. 5, MUH., 1/422-23.

Page No. 232.

Para. 1, MUN., p.75; and SAL., loc. cit. Para. 2, cf. Kemp, op.cit., p.107; see also MAN., 1/230-31. L.5, The name of ( والي الموصل ) is Muṣṭafā Pasha; see SAL., loc. cit. Para. 3, MUH., 1/78-79. Para. 4, ibid., 1/142-43. Para. 5, ibid., 1/408-10. L.23, ( شرح النهاج ) written by Ibn Hajar.

Page No. 233.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/332. Para. 3, ibid., 2/16. Para. 4, ibid., 2/193. Para. 5, ibid., 2/351-57. Para. 6, ibid., 2/411-12. L.13, ( الخخالي ) appears as " حسين الخخالي " in loc. cit. L.14, "Sultan Ahmet Medr."; see BZTI, pp.470-74. Para. 4, MUH., 2/435. Para. 8, ibid., 3/60-61. Para. 9, ibid., 3/114-16. Para. 10, ibid., 3/383-84. L.24, ( المفري ) is 'Abū al-'Abbās Ahmad.

Page No. 234.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/384-85. L.2, ( امارة العدين ) is 'Adīna in Yaman; see Khaz. 2/61. L.3, ( حيس ) Hais is situated near Zabīd in Yaman; see ibid., 2/10, see also Yāqūt, 2/380. L.4, ( بندر مخا ), the famous harbour of Makhā in Yaman. Para. 3, "Milik Ahmad Pasha deposed (7 Sha'bān 1060 A.H. = 5 August 1650 A.D. Siyavush Pasha appointed after him as the Grand Vizir of the Empire but deposed 15dhul-qī'da 1061 A.H. = 30 October 1651 A.D.; cf. Hammer, op.cit., 5/749. Para. 4, MUN., loc. cit., and SAL., loc. cit. Para. 6, MUH., 1/5-6. L.19, ( انطال ) or ( انطاليه ) Antalya is: " بلدة كبيرة على ساحل البحر الرومي باراضي قرمان "; see MUH., 1/5; Antalya (T.), Adalia is situated in Southern Anatolia in Mediterranean Sea; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-B2. Para. 7, MUH., 1/324. L.20, ( الابجي ) comes from ( ايج قلعه ), the Iranian town; see ibid., 1/324. L.23, ( الاحدييه ) al-Ahmediyya Madr. in Damascus; see loc. cit. Para. 8, ibid., 3/34-36.

Page No. 235.

L.3, al-Muḥibbī does not mention this verse; cf. MUH., 2/34-35. Para. 2, ibid., 2/157. L.6, ( روان ) Rewan or Erivan, capital of Armenia; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXI-C3. Para. 2, Darwīsh

Muhammad Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire; see Hammer, op.cit., 5/749. Para. 3, MUH., 2/236-37. L.21, ( بندر الشحر ) Bindar al-Shihr, sea port of al-Shihr in Ḥaḍramawt. Para. 4, MUH., 2/318-19. LL.7-8 ( الفوائد النسفية ) written by al-Sa'd. Para. 5, MUH., 2/351. L.10, ( الناصرية ) al Naṣiriyya Madr. in Damascus; see loc. cit.

Page No. 236.

Para. 1, Ḥusām-Zādeh 'Abdul-Rahīm was appointed as Muftī of the Empire in 1065 = May 1655; see Hammer, op.cit., 5/750. Para. 2, MUH., 2/357-58. Para. 3, ibid., 3/110-111. Para. 4, ibid., 3/219-220. L.18, ( فتاوى عادت الى البهائي ) is p. his. (= 1063 A.H.). Para. 5, MUH., 4/318-19. Para. 8, ibid., 4/322-24.

Page No. 237.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/443-4. L.5, ( مجمع البحرين بين المذهبين ) this title appears written in MUH. as: " مرج البحرين والجمع بين المذهبين "; cf. loc. cit. Para. 3, Chardchī Muhammad Pasha was appointed as Grand Vizir after Siyāwsh Pasha, and deposed on 12 Rajab 1062 A.H. = 19 June 1652 A.D.; cf. Hammer, op.cit., 5/749. L.11, ( قلعة كوزل حصار ) "Guzel-hiser, on the Boxphorus"; Guzelce Hisari "Anadoluhisari - Akce Hisar"; see BZTI, pp.332-33. Para. 6, MUN., loc. cit. and SAL., loc. cit. Para. 7, MUH., 1/482-483. Para. 8, ibid., 1/500. Para. 9, ibid., 2/132. Para. 10, ibid., 2/289.

Page No. 238.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/469. Para. 2, ibid., 3/109. Para. 3, ibid., 4/2-9. Para. 4, ibid., 4/306. Para. 5, For Ibshīr Muṣṭafā Pasha, see Hammer, op.cit., 5/749. L.19, ( وزير الخير ) is p. his. (= 1064 A.H.).

Page No. 239.

LL.1-4, "Tarchundschi Ahmad Pasha was appointed as Grand Vizir after Chardachī Muhammad Pasha and he was deposed 20 Rabi al-Awwal 1063 A.H. = 20 March 1653"; Hammer, loc. cit. Para. 3, MUN., loc. cit., and SAL., loc. cit. Para. 4, MUH., 1/129-130; the author does not mention the name of this literary man. According to MUH. his full name is: ..... توفي ابو السماع البصير المصري الشاعر البديهي " وكان مشهور الخلقه قبيح النظر فقال فيه بعض الادباء " ; see loc. cit. Para. 5, ibid., 1/324-25. Para. 6, ibid., 2/157-58; see also Hammer, loc. cit.

Page No. 240.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/363. Para. 2, ibid., 3/225-27. Para. 3, ibid., 3/297-99. Para. 4, ibid., 4/36-37. L.24, ( سوق الطواقي ) Sūq al-Tawwaqīyya is situated in Damascus. It is " الطواقين " in I.TU., 1/41.

Page No. 241.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/395-96. L.6, ( ادلب ) Adlab is situated in Syria. L.9, ( ابن النقيب ) : His full name is Ahmad b. al-Naqīb; see MUH., 4/395. Para. 2, ibid., 4/508. Para. 3, The Grand Vizir of the Empire were: Murād Pasha, deposed 19 August 1655; Sulaimān Pasha, deposed 8 March 1656; cf. Hammer, op.cit., 5/749; see also Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.465. Para. 4, Na'īmā, op.cit., IV/243. L.22, ( سلنه ) Salna: It is possibly Selinus (Gk.), or Selinunte in Sicily Island. L.22, ( ينوه ) Yanwah, I was not able to find its situation; it is possibly Genoa in Italy. Para. 5, Dallī Husain Pasha and Surḥasan Muṣṭafā Pasha were appointed as Grand Vizirs of the Empire before Siyawūsh Pasha; cf. Hammer, op.cit., 5/749; see also Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.465. Para. 6, According to IBI, Āq Muhammad Pasha ruled Baghdad during 1065-67 A.H.; cf. IBI, 5/52, from GUL., 1/87.

Page No. 242.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/174. Para. 2, ibid., 1/325. L.4, The full title of ( الشذور ) is: " شذور الذهب " written by Ibn Hishām. Para. 3, MUH., 1/457. Para. 5, ibid., 3/157-160. L.24, ( الاجهورى ) comes from ( اجهور الورد ) a village in Egypt.

Page No. 243.

LL.1-3, Qur'ān, 7/200. L.5, This is possibly a Sūfī. Para. 1, MUH., 3/316-18. Para. 2, ibid., 4/56. Para. 3, ibid., 2/351-57. Para. 4, ibid., 4/226-28. L.17, ( بوابين السلطان ) from Bevvab, "an usher or chamberlain; especially an usher or chamberlain in a Royal palace"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.390. Para. 5, MUH., 4/308. Para. 6, ibid., 4/308-9. L.25, ( الار ) is Laristan, name of the south-westernmost province of Persia; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1618.

Page No. 244.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/423-25. Para. 3, The Grand Vizir Siyāwūsh Pasha was removed from his office on 25 April 1656, "Bojuni Egrī Mohammed Pasha" was appointed after him as Grand Vizir of the Empire; Hammer, op.cit., 5/749. Para. 4, MUH., 2/164-66. Para. 6, MUN., loc. cit., and SAL., loc. cit. Para. 7, MUH., 1/327. Para. 8, ibid., 1/454-55. Para. 9, ibid., 2/111-112. L.20, ( عين توما ) is a village near Damascus; see ibid., 1/111.

Page No. 245.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/125-26. Para. 2, ibid., 2/434-35. Para. 3, ibid., 3/152-55. Para. 4, ibid., 3/455-56. Para. 5, ibid., 4/316-17. L.15, ( سلطان الدكن ) appears written as " ملك الهند " in loc. cit. Para. 6, ibid., 4/316. Para. 8, ibid., 4/453.

Page No. 246.

Para. 3, MUN., loc. cit., and SAL., loc. cit. Para. 4, MUH., 1/81-82. Para. 6, ibid., 2/199. Para. 7, ibid., 2/303-05.

Page No. 247.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/357. Para. 2, ibid., 3/292. Para. 4, ibid., 3/473-74. L.8, (السراي) : comes from Misrābā, a village in Ghūtā of Damascus. L.9, (ايا صوفيه) Ayasofya (= Hagia Sophia) of Istanbul; for geographical details, see BZTI, G7/6; for historical details, see I.AN., 1/47-55. Para. 5, MUH., 4/273-86. L.13, (الدرسة العزمية), al'zzīyya Madr. is situated in al-Sharf al-A'lā in Syria; see ibid., 4/274. Para. 6, MUN., loc. cit., and SAL., loc. cit.

Page No. 248.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/175. Para. 2, ibid., 1/178. Para. 3, ibid., 1/327-331. Para. 4, ibid., 1/321-43.

Page No. 249.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/38-39. L.5, (الشربلالي) : comes from "شبرا بلولي" which is situated in Manūfiyya district in Egypt. L.5, (الدرر والغرر) written by Manlā Khīsrū. Para. 3, MUH., 2/98-99. L.16, (القرمخشدية), al-Qarmahshadiyya, Qasīda by Husain b. 'Abdul-Nabī b. 'Umar al-Halabī al-Dimashqī, known as Ibn al-Sha' 'āl; see Ahlwardt, op.cit., MS No. 7989.

Page No. 250.

L.12, ( وقد شرحها بعض الادباء ), thus in DUR. but MUH. gives more details. al-Muhibbī writes: " وقد شرحها الاديب ابو بكر العمري شرحا مستوفيا لخرافات ابتدعها "

see MUH., 2/99. L.12, ( القاموس ) al Qāmūs al-Muḥīṭ, written by Majd al-Dīn al-Faīrūz-Abādī. L.12, ( الصحاح ) al-Sihāḥ written by Ismā'il b. Hammād al-Jawharī. Para. 1, ibid., 2/417-18. Para. 2, ibid., 3/157. Para. 3, ibid., 3/204-6.

Page No. 251.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/14-15. Para. 3, ibid., 4/442-43. L.21, ( كجرات ) Gujrāt, a reign in Western India; see M. Ashraf, Atlas, map of Hindistan.

Page No. 252.

Para. 3, MUH., 2/316-18. Para. 4, ibid., 2/421-24. L.23, ( الانغاز في فقه الحنفية ) is Arabic Text. L.24, ( تاريخ الدولة العثمانية ) is Turkish Text; see loc. cit.

Page No. 253.

-L.3, ( ساقر ), Sakiz (T.), Chios (Gk.), is an island in the Western Anatolia; see Pitcher, op. cit., map XXV-A2. Para. 1, MUH., 3/9-10. L.6, ( بني سـويف ), Bani-Suwayf is situated in Egypt; see Pitcher, op. cit., map XXXIV-A1. Para. 2, MUH., 3/151-52; but al-Muḥibbī cites the name of ( اللطفي ) as : " علي بن جـار الله بن ابي بكر بن محمد بن بني اللطف " ; see loc. cit. L.14, The full name of the Governor of Ghazza is: " حسين باشا بن حسن بن احمد بن رضوان الغزى " ; see ibid., 2/88. L.16, The title of ( تاريخ مكة ) is " الارح السكي والتاريخ المكبي ". Para. 4, MUH., 3/201. L.23, ( الجامع الصغير ) written by al-Suyūṭī. L.23, ( شرح التحرير ) written by al-Qādī Zakariyyā. L.24, ( شرح الغاية ) written by Ibn Qāsim. Para. 5, MUH., 4/28-31. L.27, ( الكشكول ) written by al-Bahā' al-'Āmilī.



Page No. 254.

L. 8, For details about الخلوئي , see MUH., 4/103. Para. 2, ibid., 4/111-115. Para. 3, ibid., 4/428-29. Para. 4, ibid., 4/458-59. Para. 5, ibid., 4/505.

Page No. 255.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/145. L. 6, ( للرضي ) is p. his. (= 1070 A.H.). Para. 2, ibid., 1/148-52. L. 11, ( لامية العجم ) is a famous Qaṣīda written by al-Tughrā'ī. Para. 3, ibid., 2/260-61. Para. 4, ibid., 1/242-43. L. 20, ( اليونسية ) and ( القجاسية ) are two schools in Damascus. Para. 5, MUH., 1/343. Para. 6, ibid., 1/343-46. L. 24, ( الانسان الكامل ) written by al-Jīlī.

Page No. 256.

Para. 3, MUH., 1/428-33. L. 10, ( عدى بن مسافر ) 'Adī b. Musāfir. Sūfī leader, settled in Laylāsh near Mosul before 505 A.H. = 1111 A.D.; he was quite orthodox Muslim; En 2, 1/195; for the relation between the historical Shaikh 'Adī and his role in the religion of the Yazīdīs; see En 1, IV/1163-70; also al-Damlūchī, op. cit., pp. 76-79. Para. 4, MUH., 2/283-85. Para. 5, MAN., 2/153-54. Para. 6, MUH., 2/291-98. L. 25, ( المدرسة الصلاحية ) al-Salāhiyya Madr. in Jerusalem; see loc. cit. L. 26, ( منتزه العيون ) is " منتزه العيون ". L. 26, the full title of ( الالباب ) is: " الالباب في بعض المتأخرين من اهل الآداب "; cf. MUH., 2/292. L. 27, ( شرح الهزيمة ) written by Ibn Hajar. L. 27, the full title of ( والسؤال ) is: " السؤال بالتشريف بذكر نسب الرسل "; L. 28, ( في البديع ) is " في علم البديع "; cf. ibid., 2/293.

Page No. 257.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/363. L.6, ( قونية ) Konya, ancient Iconium. Capital of Konya province in Turkey, conquered by the Seljuk Turks in the 11th century, under them it became capital of the Sultanate of Iconium or Rum and reached the peak of its fame in the 13th century; for details, see Ibrahim Hakki Konyali, Konya Tarihi, Konya, 1964. Para. 4, MUH., 3/266. Para. 5, ibid., 3/427-28. L.17, ( الجفترلى ) appears as " جفترلى " in loc. cit. Para. 6, ibid., 4/42-3. Para. 7, ibid., 4/89-102.

Page No. 258.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/332. Para. 2, ibid., 4/372. Para. 3, ibid., 4/372-73. Para. 4, ibid., 4/453. Para. 6, Hammer, op.cit., 5/749. L.15, ( الجبر ), the Hungarians, or Hungary. L.15, ( طوپال محمد پاشا ) Topal Muḥammad Pasha was the Kapudan Pasha (an admiral of the sea military force); 1068 A.H. = 1657 A.D., see Hammer, op.cit., 6/765. He was not Topal Muḥammad Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1731-1732 A.D., cf. Shaw, op.cit., 2/241. Para. 7, MAN., 1/230, also SAIF., fol. 77a, and MUN., p.83, SAL., loc. cit. Para. 8, MUN., loc. cit., and SAL., loc. cit.

Page No. 259.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/127-29. Para. 2, ibid., 4/209-211, see also "The Koprulu years, 1656-1683" in Shaw, op.cit., vol. 1, pp.207-209, and "The Rule of Viziers" in N. Barber, The Sultans, New York 1973, pp.97-110; Hammer states: "Kōprili Mohammed Pasha, gestarben am 7. Rebiul-ewwel 1072 A.H. = 31 Oct. 1661 A.D."; Hammer, op.cit., 6/764. L.13, ( جدّة السلطان ): The grandmother of the Sultan was "Kosem Mahpeyker", wife of Sultan Aḥmad I. She was born in 993 A.H. = 1585 A.D.; died 1061 A.H. = 2nd September, 1651; see

Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XXXIV. L.18, ( ينوه ) Yanwa Castle is Genoa, the seaport in N.W. Italy, see Notes of page 241, L.22.

Para. 3, MUH., 2/16. Para. 4, ibid., 2/105-108.

Page No. 260.

L.5, ( البلطجية ) from Baltaji (T.): "A woodcutter or a halberdier, anciently attached to the Sultan palace"; Redhouse, op.cit., p.334.

Para. 2, MUH., 2/209. Para. 3, ibid., 2/269-70. Para. 4, ibid., 2/426-27. Para. 5, ibid., 3/128-130. Para. 6, ibid., 3/339.

Para. 7, ibid., 3/399-400.

Page No. 261.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/408-411. Para. 2, ibid., 3/475. Para. 3, ibid., 4/15-18. L.19, ( الغرب ) al Garb, "un grand district en Liban"; Niebuhr, op.cit., 2/368. L.19, ( الجرد ) "Ds jurd, un grand district fur le mont Liban"; see ibid., 2/367. L.19, ( المتن ), "El matein, Dans ce district on trouve des Druses, des Chretien des Mohometans" (Lebanon); see ibid., 2/369. L.19, ( كسروان ) "Kesroan, une province un Liban", see ibid., 2/369. Para. 6, MUH., 4/462. Para. 7, ibid., 4/510.

Page No. 262.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/31. Para. 2, ibid., 1/92-93. Para. 3, ibid., 2/156. L.14, ( الولوية ): "Mevlevi", pertaining to Mevlana Jelālu 'd-Dīn-i-Rūmī, or to the order of Dervishes founded by him; especially, a dervish of the order of whirling Dervishes"; Redhouse, op.cit., p.2036. Para. 4, MUH., 2/175-76.

Page No. 263.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/188-189. Para. 2, ibid., 2/211-212. Para. 3, ibid., 2/301-303. Para. 4, ibid., 2/341-342. Para. 5, ibid., 3/100-101. Para. 6, ibid., 3/192. Para. 8, ibid., 4/429-430.

Page No. 264.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/477-78, "Minkarlsade Jahja Efendi;" Hammer, op.cit., 6/766. Para. 2, MUH., 4/510-511. L.3, The full title of ( حينية المتبسي ) is: " الصبح النبوي عن حيثية المتبسي ", ed. in Cairo, 1963. Para. 3, MUH., 4/511. L.13, ( باش اجع ) (T.) is Bareheaded. Para. 6, MUH., 1/82. L.17, ( بيجانفور ), It is possibly Jaipur in India; see Ashraf, op.cit., map of Hindistan. Para. 8, MUH., 1/346-47.

Page No. 265.

Para. 1, For historical details about the war with Austria; see Creasy, op.cit., p.277, see also I.AN., 6/903. Para. 2, MUH., 1/389-90. Para. 3, ibid., 2/155-56. Para. 4, ibid., 3/160. Para. 5, ibid., 3/476-77. Para. 6, ibid., 4/511. Para. 10, ibid., 1/251-52.

Page No. 266.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/252-53, the correct and full name of ( الحكيمي ) is: " الشيخ احمد ابو العباس بن علي بن محمد بن ابراهيم مطير الحكي البمني الشافعي "; see loc. cit. Para. 2, ibid., 1/455-56. Para. 3, ibid., 2/133-34. Para. 4, ibid., 2/210-211. Para. 6, MUH., 2/231.

Page No. 267.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/283. Para. 2, ibid., 3/50. Para. 3, ibid., 4/264. Para. 4, ibid., 4/271-72. L.7, ( المنرى ) is

" محمد بن يوسف " Shaikh of " الحافظ ابا العباس "; see loc. cit. Para. 5, ibid., 4/329-330. Para. 6, ibid., 4/385. Para. 7, ibid., 4/472-74. Para. 8, ibid., 4/475-76. L.17, " الامير يحيى بن علي باشا الاحمدي "; cf. loc. cit. Para. 9, This is the famous St. Gotthard War between the Ottoman and the Austrians. On August 1, 1664, the two armies met near to the Convent of St. Gotthard. Prince Charles of Lorraine was the Commander of the Austrians. The Ottomans lost ten thousand men, many of whom were driven into the River Raab and were drowned. The Grand Vizir of the Ottomans was able to draw off the main body of his army without further loss. The Austrian losses were heavy. Lord Eversley follows his statement, and writes: "The battle, however, was of supreme importance, for it was the first great defeat of the Ottomans in the field by the Austrians. It broke the prestige of the former, which had been unquestioned since the battle of Mohacz in 1526"; Lord Eversley, op.cit., p.172. L.21, ( نهر تونسه ), Tuna (T.), Danube River; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX; it is Raab River, cf. Lord Eversley, loc. cit. Para. 12, MUN., p.76; and SAL., loc. cit.

#### Page No. 268.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/30-31. Para. 2, ibid., 1/32. L.6, The full name of ( ابن علان ) is: " محمد بن علان "; see loc. cit. Para. 3, ibid., 1/90-92. Para. 4, ibid., 1/398-99. Para. 5, ibid., 1/419. L.19, ( الكلشيني ), al-Gulshiniyya is one of the principal Turkish Sūfī Order; see Trimingham, op.cit., p.184. Para. 6, MUH., 2/90-94. L.22, ( چاندار ) Chāndār (P.); is a defender. Para. 7, MUH., 2/99-100.

#### Page No. 269.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/230. L.4, ( الطريقة البدوية ): The Badawīyya Ṭarīqa of Ahmad al-Badawī, who died 1276 A.D.; for details, see Trimingham, op.cit., p.14. Para. 2, MUH., 2/242-43.

L. 6, ( البوسنة تاري ) comes from Mastura, a town in Bosna of Danube lands; see loc. cit.; Mastura is situated in W. Yugoslavia at present; see TAW., map 94-8H. There is another town called "Masturāh", it is situated in W. Arabia; see ibid., map 33-C5.

L. 9, ( صوفية ) Sofiya, the capital of Bulgaria at present; see ibid., map 82-H3. Sofiya was occupied by the Ottomans in 1383 A.D. Para. 3, MUH., 3/41-4. Para. 4, ibid., 3/332-34. Para. 5, ibid., 3/397-99.

Page No. 270.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/404-5. Para. 2, ibid., 3/436-37. Para. 3, ibid., 3/456-59. Para. 4, ibid., 4/103. L. 22, ( القرنة ) al-Qurna is situated in S. Iraq; see TAW., map 34-p7. Para. 7, MUN., p.76, and SAL., loc. cit.

Page No. 271.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/44-45. Para. 2, ibid., 1/86-87. Para. 4, ibid., 2/113. L. 16, ( الدرسة الجركسية ) al-Chirkasiyya Madr., in Ṣālīhiyya of Damascus; see loc. cit.; the En 2, does not mention this school; cf. En 2, vol. II, pp.277-91. Para. 5, MUH., 2/176-86. Para. 6, ibid., 2/214. Para. 7, ibid., 2/219-20. L. 23, Muṣṭafā Pasha al Khannāq was the Nā'ib of al-Shām in 1033 A.H.; cf. ibid., 2/330. L. 24, ( سردار ) Serdar (T.), Military Chief; General. L. 24, ( باش جاووش ) Bāsh-Chāwush (T.), The Commander of the Corps of a Sergeant Major in the army; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.711.

Page No. 272.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/226-230. Para. 2, ibid., 2/306-310. L. 6, ( ابن حزم ), " 'Abū Muḥammad 'Alī b. Aḥmad b. Sa'id was born at Cordova in 384 A.H. = 994 A.D.; he died at Manta Līsham in 456 A.H.

= 1064 A.D."; for further details about his life and works, see En 2, vol. III, pp.790-99. L.6, ( الشافعي ) appears as ( الظاهري ) in MUH., 2/208. Para. 3, ibid., 3/339. Para. 4, ibid., 3/469-72. Para. 5, ibid., 4/39-42; see also Baghdadi, 6/290. Para. 6, MUH., 4/406, see also Baghdadi, 6/463. L.24, The full title of ( تاريخ امامات اليمن ) is: " الجوهرية في تاريخ الخلافة الموحديّة "; see MUH., loc. cit.; but the title of this book appears in Baghdadi as: " تاريخ اليمن في احوال ووقائع الائمة الثلاثة القاسم والمؤيد محمد والمتوكل اسماعيل "; cf. Baghdadi, 6/463. Para. 7, MUH., 4/432-33.

#### Page No. 273.

Para. 2, MUN., p.76; and SAL., p.63. Para. 3, MUH., 1/23-25. Para. 4, ibid., 2/63-64. Para. 5, ibid., 2/140, and Baghdadi, 5/362. L.16, The full and correct titles of these works appear in MUH., and Baghdadi, as follows: " تحفة اولى الالباب ", also " الجواهر السنية في اصول طريقه الصوفية ", also " تحفة السميع والبصر بصادق الخبر ". Para. 6, MUH., 2/231-35. Para. 7, ibid., 2/238, see also Baghdadi, 3/423.

#### Page No. 274.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/285; see also Baghdadi, 5/496. LL.3-4, The correct titles of these two works appears written in MUH. as : " السيوف الصقال ", and " الرمز في شكل الكنز "; " في رتبة من ينكر كرامات الاولياء بعد الانتقال "; Para. 2, MUH., 2/416-17, see also Baghdadi, 5/571. Para. 3, MUH., 3/172. Para. 4, ibid., 3/415-18. Para. 5, ibid., 4/280, see also Baghdadi, 6/291. L.21, ( البيضاوي ) in his Tafsir. L.23, The full name of ( الكازروني ) is: " مظهر الدين الكازروني "; cf. MUH., 4/281. L.24, ( شرح الارشادات ) written by al-Tusi, cf. Baghdadi, 6/291.

Page No. 275.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/20-21. Para. 2, ibid., 1/45-46. Para. 3, ibid., 1/416-18. Para. 4, ibid., 1/490-94. Para. 5, ibid., 2/17-18, see also Baghdadi, 5/295. Para. 7, Baghdadi, 5/294.

Page No. 276.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/34-36. Para. 2, ibid., 2/237. LL.8-9  
( (میرباد) is (میربار) (P), means: "The Grand usher or Master of Ceremonies to Sovereign"; Redhouse, op.cit., p.2053.  
Para. 3, MUH., 2/467. Para. 4, ibid., 3/44-48. Para. 5, ibid., 3/432-34. Para. 6, ibid., 4/57-59.

Page No. 277.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/77. Para. 2, ibid., 4/200. Para. 3, ibid., 4/373-75. Para. 4, ibid., 4/385-87. Paras. 5-6, "Qandiya, the town on the north coast of Crete, was captured by the Ottomans in 1080 A.H. = 1669 A.D. after a twenty-seven month siege by the Grand Vizir Koprülüzade Fāḍil Aḥmad Pasha"; for historical details and description of Qandia; see Evliya Celebi, op.cit., viii/478-98. L.22,  
( (في عام الف وثمانين عام) is p. his. (= 1080 A.H.). Para. 7, MUH., 3/220.

Page No. 278.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/227. L.2, ( (نیشانجی) Nīshānjī (T.), "former title of an officer of the Ottoman Government, whose duty it is to inscribe the Sultan's imperial Cypher over all imperial letters - patent"; Redhouse, op.cit., p.2082. Para. 3, MUH., 4/201.  
Para. 4, ibid., 4/409-23. Para. 5, ( (الدرسة العبدالية) al-'Abdāliyya Madr. in Mosul. Para. 6, ( (جامع الحاج منصور التاجر) Hāj Mansūr al-Tājir Jāmi' in Mosul; see Majmū', p.17 n3, see also S. Daiwachi, Jawāmi'.



Page No. 279.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/158. Para. 2, ibid., 2/301-7. Para. 3, ibid., 1/423. Para. 4, ibid., 2/133. Para. 5, ibid., 2/134-39. Para. 6, ibid., 2/223-25.

Page No. 280.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/240-42. L.2, ( السلطان محمد ) is Muḥammad IV, the nineteenth Sultan of the Ottoman Empire; see App. 2. Para. 3, MUH., 2/390-404. L.8, ( الرحانة ) is Raiḥānat al-Albāb written by al-Khaffājī. Para. 4, MUH., 2/467-69. Para. 5, ibid., 3/389. Para. 6, ibid., 3/480; his full name is given by MUH. as follows: " ابن عبد الحسين بن ابراهيم المكنى بابي " ; عبد الله بن ابي شهابه الحسيني البحراني " ; cf. loc. cit.

Page No. 281.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/212. Para. 2, ibid., 4/212-13. Para. 3, ibid., 4/430-31. Para. 4, ibid., 4/444. L.9, ( الويد بالله ), Imām Muḥammad b. Ismā'il of Yaman. Para. 5, MUH., 4/434. L.20, ( قنجه ) is Kamieśk, a city situated in Poland; see TAW., plate 62, map of Poland, L/4. Para. 6, For historical details about the Ottoman-Polish relations, see Na'īmā, II, Evliya' Celebi who described many of the military expeditions of this period; see also Text, p.282, Para. 3, n .

Page No. 282.

Para. 2, MUN., loc. cit.; see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 3, "This is a third war which was undertaken in 1672 by the Grand Vizir Aḥmad Fāḍil Pasha Kiuprili against Poland in support of the Cassacks of the Ukraine. The Czar of Russia joined with the King of Poland against the Ottoman. In this campaign, the important city of Kaminiec, the

capital of Podolia, (Podolsk) was captured after a several days' siege";  
En 1, 111/660-61, see also Lord Eversley, op.cit., pp.174-75.

Para. 4, MUH., 2/298-99. Para. 5, ibid., 3/14-16. Para. 6,  
ibid., 3/111. Para. 7, ibid., 3/277-86. Para. 8, ibid., 3/487-88.  
 Para. 9, ibid., 4/60-63.

#### Page No. 283.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/228. Para. 2, ibid., 4/219-20. Para. 5, Jāmi'  
 'Abdāl is situated in Mosul; for details, see Daiwachi, Jawami' ...,  
 p.153.

#### Page No. 284.

L.3, ( الغبن ) is p. his. (= 1083 A.H.). Para. 2, MUH., 1/21-22.  
 L.5, ( هداية الحائر ), Thus in DUR., but al-Muhibbī gives us another  
 title which appears as: " آية الحائر الى الفك من احرف الدوائر "; cf. ibid., 1/22.  
 Para. 3, ibid., 1/25-28. Para. 5, ibid., 2/237-38. Para. 6, ibid.,  
 2/473-77. Para. 7, ibid., 3/401-2.

#### Page No. 285.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/227-28. Para. 2, ibid., 3/389-90. L.8,  
 ( العبادى ) comes from 'Ubādah, a village in Egypt. Para. 4,  
ibid., 3/493-99. L.14, ( المنفارى ) is given by Hammer as  
 "Minkarisade Jahja Efendi," the Muftī of the Empire; see Hammer,  
op.cit., 6/766; see also MUH., 4/477-78. Para. 5, ibid., 4/213.  
 Para. 6, ibid., 4/472. Para. 8, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL.,  
 loc. cit.

#### Page No. 286.

Para. 1, "In the summer of 1672 A.D. = 1082 A.H., Fādīl Aḥmad Pasha  
 turned his attention to Poland and took Kamieniec Podolsk after a siege

of several days, but the Grand Vizir lost the next battle, that of Chotin (T.) Chocim (Pol.)"; En 1, 11/ "Koprulu", pp.1059-1062. Para. 2, MUH., 3/271-72. Para. 3, ibid., 4/330-31. Para. 4, ibid., 2/199-200. Para. 8, ibid., 3/189-191. Para. 9, ibid., 82-84. L.18, ( مناسك الحج ) written by al-Khatīb al-Shirbīnī. Para. 10, MUH., 1/218.

Page No. 287.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/236. Para. 2, ibid., 1/348-49. Para. 4, ibid., 2/79. Para. 5, ibid., 2/193. Para. 6, ibid., 2/346-47. LL.23-4, The metre here is obscure. Para. 7, MUH., 2/469. L.26, ( السعد ) appears as ( السعدى ) in loc. cit.

Page No. 288.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/68-69. Para. 2, ibid., 3/435-36. L.9, He is ( عبد المجيد السيوامي ); cf. loc. cit. Para. 3, ibid., 4/105-108. Para. 5, ibid., 4/238. Para. 6, see GUL., 2/102.

Page No. 289.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/270-83. Para. 2, MUN., loc. cit.; see also SAL., loc. cit. L.7, ( جامع نبي الله جرجيس ) Nabī Jerjīs Jāmi' in Mosul; see Kemp, op.cit., map No. 6; for historical and topographical details; see Daiwachī, Jawāmi' ..., p.176, see also Rich, op.cit., 11/104. Para. 3, MUH., 1/176-77. Para. 4, ibid., 1/253-56. L.14, The full titles of ( منهل السوراد ) and ( تحفة الملوك ) appear in MUH. as: " منهل السوراد في الحث على قراءة الاوراد " and " تحفة الملوك لمن اراد تجريد السلوك "; cf. loc. cit. Para. 5, ibid., 1/349-52. L.16, The full title of ( سلافة العصر ) is ( سلافة العصر ).

Page No. 290.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/299. Para. 2, "Qara Mustafā Pasha had an opportunity for attacking Austria. He collected an enormous army at Adrianople, and in the spring of the year, 1682, he crossed the Danube with two hundred and seventy-five thousand men"; see Shaw, op.cit., "war with Austria", 1/212, see also Hammer, op.cit., 6/178, and Lord Eversley, op.cit., p.177. For historical details, see I.AN., 7/552. L.7, ( حافظ ): sic in MSS; فاضل Fādīl is meant. cf. En 1, 11/1059-62, and I.AN., 7/552. Para. 3, MUH., 3/334-36. Para. 4, ibid., 4/492. Para. 5, GUL., 1/103, see also IBI, 5/111. Para. 6, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 7, "On the way to the imperial camp, Fādīl Aḥmad Pasha died on 22nd Sha'bān 1087 A.H. = October 30, 1676 A.D., at the farmplace of Qara Biber near the bridge of Erkene - between Burghas and Edrianople -"; see, I.AN., 7/552, see also En 1, 11/1061. L.20, ( جورلى ) Corlu (T.) is situated in the western side of Turkey; see TAW, map 38 -j/3. L.22, ( محمد باشا كوبرلى ), Koprili Muḥammad Pasha, the first member of the family who held the Grand-Vezirate, he was raised to that office in 1066 A.H. = 1656 A.D. when he was seventy years of age. He went of the lines of Murād IV. He was succeeded by his son Koprili-Zadeh Aḥmad Pasha, surnamed, on account of his many noble qualities, Fāzīl Aḥmad; see En 1, 11/1059-62, see also I.AN., 7/552.

Page No. 291.

Para. 2, MUH., 2/113-16. Para. 3, ibid., 2/132. Para. 4, ibid., 2/161-62. Para. 5, ibid., 2/213. Para. 6, ibid., 2/300-301. Para. 7, ibid., 2/345-46. Para. 8, ibid., 2/437. Para. 9, ibid., 3/193-95. Para. 10, ibid., 3/465-68.

Page No. 292.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/902. Para. 5, ZUB., p.73. Para. 7, MUH., 1/46-48. Para. 9, MUH., 1/411-16.

Page No. 293.

L.1, ( جامع الاصول ) appears to have been written by Ibn al-'Athīr. Para. 1, MUH., 2/18-21. Para. 2, ibid., 2/156-57. Para. 3, ibid., 2/164. L.12, The full and correct name of "مولای رشید بن رشید بن علی الحسنی" appears as: علي الرشيد الشيرازي الحسني; cf. loc. cit. For historical details about the Shurafā' of Morocco; see Muḥammad al-Qādirī, Nashr al-Mathānī, ed. by Norman Cigar, Oxford 1981. L.13, ( تافيلات ) Taqīlāt. It is Tafilalt in usual European form, or Tāfilālt, a city situated in Morocco; see ibid., p.lxvii. L.14, ( فاس ، مكناس ، القصر ) : Kasr el-Kebīr, Meknes, and Fes are situated in Morocco, loc. cit., and see also TAW, map 88, L4-5. Para. 4, MUH., 2/270-83. Para. 5, ibid., 3/390-91. Para. 6, ibid., 4/34.

Page No. 294.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/63-65. L.3, The titles of ( شرح ملتقى الابحر ) is ( افاضة الانوار ) ( شرح المنار ) ( الدر المنتقى ); cf. ibid., 4/63. Para. 2, ibid., 4/202-203. Para. 3, ibid., 4/260. Para. 4, ibid., 4/464-65. Para. 5, ibid., 4/477-78. Para. 6, "Muṣṭafā Pasha Merzifonlu Kara, Osmanlı Sadrazam 1634-83 A.D."; see I.AN., 8/736-37.

Page No. 295.

L.1, ( قرية السلامه ) Sallāma village is situated in al-Hijāz. Para. 2, MUH., 4/444. Para. 3, ibid., 2/340-41. Para. 4, ibid., 3/414-15. Para. 5, ibid., 2/187-88. Para. 6, ibid., 3/96. Para. 7, ibid., 4/435. L.20, ( رام حمدان ) Rām Ḥamdān is a village situated in Syria; see loc. cit. Para. 8, MUH., 2/48.

Page No. 296.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/319. Para. 3, ibid., 3/202-3. LL.8-9, ( سبتة ) Ceuta (Sp.) or Sabta; ( سلا ) Salā, are situated in Morocco; see al-Qadiri, op.cit., p.Ixvii; ( مرسية ) Murcia; ( اشبيلية ) Sevilla are situated in Spain. ( اغمات ) Aghmāt, ( افادير ) or ( اغادير ) Agādīr; ( قاروت ) Qārūt are situated in Morocco; see loc. cit. Para. 5, MUH., 3/472-73. L.10, ( محمد بن سعيد المغربي ) the correct name of this scholar is: " محمد بن سعيد المريفتي "; cf. loc. cit. L.12, ( الفشتالي ) appears written instead of ( الفشتالي ) which is Maghribi writing. Para. 6, MUH., 4/362-63. L.17, ( اوراء ), al-Muḥibbī gives us the meaning of that, he says: " معنى الاوراء في الاصل الامر بالتفتيش على الصيد ثم اطلق في عرف الروميين على المنفرد " cf. ibid., 4/362. Para. 7, ibid., 4/371-72.

Page No. 297.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/476-77. Para. 2, MUN., loc. cit.; SAL., loc. cit. Para. 3, MUH., 1/87. L.5, ( ابو بكر بن كمال الدين المعروف ), The correct name is " ابو بكر بن عبد الله المعروف "; cf. loc. cit. Para. 4, ibid., 1/163-64. Para. 5, ibid., 1/229-30. Para. 6, ibid., 1/367. L.16, ( الكرمي ) comes from ( طور كرم ) Tūrkarm is a village situated in Palestine; see ibid., 1/367. Para. 8, ibid., 4/37-38.

Page No. 298.

Para. 2, MUH., 2/160-61. Para. 3, ibid., 3/113-14. Para. 4, ibid., 3/141-42. Para. 5, ibid., 4/375-76. Para. 6, ibid., 4/377-85.

Page No. 299.

L.12, In his book, al-Muḥibbī does not mention this verse; cf. ibid., 4/385. Para. 1, ibid., 4/423. Para. 2, GUL., 2/104. Para. 4, MUH., 1/180-1. Para. 5, ibid., 1/220-1. L.22, ( مطلع البدور ): The full title of this work is: " مطلع البدور ومجمع البحور "; cf. loc. cit. Para. 6, ibid., 230-32.

Page No. 300.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/133-34. L.12, ( الصنين ) al Ṣanamain is situated near Damascus; see Taq. p.253. L.12, ( مزرب ) al-Muzīrīb is situated in Syria; see Map of Syria, G.L. Bell, Syria, the desert, the sown, London 1919. Para. 2, MUH., 2/222-3. Para. 3, ibid., 4/462-63. Para. 4, cf. 'Alī Amīrī, Tadhkirat Shu'arā' Āmid, p.258; see also, The Jalīlī family tree, Tab. No. XIII. Para. 5, MUH., 2/242. Para. 6, ibid., 2/444-51.

Page No. 301.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/131-41. L.4, ( الشهير بعزتي ) appears written in MUH. as: " الشهير بشيخ محمد العربي "; cf. ibid., 4/131. L.5, ( مدرسة اسمه سلطان ) See Esma Sultan Cesmesi in BZTI, p.283 and p.317. L.5, ( مدرسة الشاه زاده ) Shahzade Camil, (Shehzade Mahmut, son of Mehmeds III); see ibid., E616, pp.479-83. Para. 2, MAN., 1/224. Para. 3, ibid., 1/224-25. Para. 4, MUH., 1/95. Para. 6, ibid., 1/399-402.

Page No. 302.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/436-50. Para. 2, ibid., 2/238. L.18, ( صالح الخلوتي ): The correct full name appears in MUH. as: " صالح بن عبد القادر الخلوتي "; cf. loc. cit. Para. 3, ibid., 2/451-54. Para. 4, ibid., 3/321.

Page No. 303.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/336-38. L.2, ( له تاريخين ): One of his two historical works entitled " نفائس الدرر "; cf. loc. cit.

Para. 2, ibid., 3/482-87. Para. 3, ibid., 4/65-73. Para. 4, ibid., 4/488-89. Para. 5, Hammer, op.cit., 6/417-20, see also Creasy, op.cit., p.291. Para. 6, MUH., 3/243-44. Para. 7, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit.

Page No. 304.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/9-10. Para. 2, ibid., 1/119-20. Para. 3, ibid., 1/367. Para. 4, ibid., 1/433-36. Para. 5, ibid., 2/64. Para. 6, cf. Na'īmā, op.cit., 111/98, see also Notes of Para. 5, Text, p.281. L.16, ( بلاد الليمة ) Bilād al-Liyya is Poland, see Note of L.21, Text, p.281. Para. 7, MUH., 3/203. L.24, ( شرح الشمسية ) written by al-Qutb. L.24, ( شرح عقائد النسفي ), written by al-Taftazānī. Para. 8, MUH., 4/204-8. L.26, ( التحرير في اصول الحنفية ) written by Ibn al Humām. L.27, ( المفتاح ) is " مفتاح العلوم " written by Yūsuf b. Abī Bakr al-Sikākī.

Page No. 305.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/249-57. Para. 2, ibid., 2/64. Para. 3, This is the second siege of Vienna under the leadership of Qara Muṣṭafā Pasha, 1683, July 17 - Sept. 12. "Violent assaults on the walls; extensive mining operations; valiant defence by the garrison under Rudiger von Stahremberg. Successful relief of the city by a united German and Polish army under Charles of Lorraine and John Sobieski"; see "Internal disintegration following the failure at Vienna" in Shaw, op.cit., 1/218-19. For historical details; see also John Stoye, The Siege of Vienna, Collins, 1964, pp.150-73. L.13, ( الافلاق ) Eflak (T.): It is Wallachia; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIV. L.13, ( بوغدان )



Boghdan (T.): It is Moldavia; loc. cit. L.13, ( الاردل ) Erdel (T.): It is Transylvania; loc. cit. LL.13-14, ( ملك الانكروس ); The King of Hungary was Imre Tokolli; see EWB, p.518. Para. 4, ( عمر باشا ): The full name is: " اوکوز عمر باشا "; see Salihdār Tārīkh, 2/267. Para. 5, MUH., 1/28-29. Para. 6, ibid., 1/95-6. Para. 7, ibid., 1/365-66. L.25, This sentence appears written in MUH. as: " بعدة مدارس بقسطنطينية الى ان وصل الى " cf. ibid., 1/366. L.25, ( وفا ) Vefā Camil is situated in Istanbul; see BZTI, E5/27.

#### Page No. 306.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/168-171. Para. 2, ibid., 2/349-51. Para. 3, ibid., 3/70. L.10, ( بالعباسي ): The correct full name appears written in MUH. as follows: " عبد الله بن محمد ظاهر بن محمد صفا التاشكندی الاصل: cf. loc. cit. Para. 4, ibid., 3/130-32. Para. 5, ibid., 3/459-60. Para. 6, ibid., 4/396-7. Para. 7, ibid., 1/190-97.

#### Page No. 307.

Para. 1, MUH., 4/475-76. Para. 2, see QUR. fols. 70b-71a; see also MUN., loc. cit., and SAL., loc. cit. L.2, ( اللّحسا ) al-Laḥsā', or ( الحسا ) al-Ḥasā, or ( الاحسا ) al-Aḥsā' (OASIS): "The Sanjaq of Hasa oasis, a detached province of the Ottoman Empire, situated on the coast of E. Arabia between the Kuwait principality on the north and the promontory of Qatar and the Jafurah desert on the south; on the east it is bounded by the sea, and on the west by the track known as Summān"; For geographical details about the boundaries, climate population and inhabited places, see J.G. Lorimar, Gazetteer of the Persian Gulf: Oman and Central Arabia, vol. II, Geographical and Statistical, Calcutta 1908 (Republished in 1970), pp.642-678. Para. 2, QUR., fol. 21b, see also MUN., p.77 n.1; SAL., loc. cit. For

historical details, see "Alī Pasha Arabci" in I.AN., 1/324-25.  
 L.15, ( طي ) Tay, it is a great Arab tribe residing between Syria and Iraq. L.20, ( الشيخ محمد الغزلاني ): The Tomb of Shaikh Muhammad al-Ghizlānī is situated in S. Mosul; see MUN., pp.115-17. Para. 3, MUH., 1/19-20.

Page No. 308.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/238-39. Para. 2, ibid., 1/394-96. Para. 3, ibid., 2/434. Para. 4, ibid., 3/70-80. Para. 5, ibid., 3/148-150.

Page No. 309.

Para. 2, MUH., 3/437-39. Para. 3, ibid., 4/104-5. Para. 4, ibid., 4/213-14. Para. 6, ibid., 4/485-86. Para. 7, ibid., 4/486-88. L.22, ( ام البراهين ) written by al-Sanūsī. L.23, ( شرح التسهيل ) written by Ibn Mālik. L.25, ( ابو محمد ) Abū Muḥammad. I was not able to find the situation of this place. L.25, ( القرافة ) al-Qurāfa is situated in Egypt. Para. 8, ibid., 4/73-74.

Para. No. 310.

Para. 1, MUH., 1/232-33. Para. 2, ibid., 1/256-57. Para. 3, ibid., 1/404-06. Para. 4, ibid., 2/259-60. L.18, ( سريم ) Sirmīn is a village situated near Aleppo; see Yāqūt, 3/315. Para. 5, MUH., 2/469-72. Para. 6, ibid., 3/396-97. Para. 7, ibid., 3/411-12. L.24, ( الرملة ) Ramle is situated in Palistain; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-A3.

Page No. 311.

Para. 2, MUH., 4/431-32. Para. 4, MUN., loc. cit., and SAL., loc. cit. Para. 5, MUH., 1/51-53. Para. 6, ibid., 1/181-82.

Para. 7, ibid., 1/494-95. Para. 8, ibid., 2/158-59. L.21,

The correct title of ( حاشية على النهج ) is:

" هداية السالك " . L.22, The full title of ( هداية السالك ) is: " هداية السالك الذى رضى السالك "; cf. loc. cit.

Page No. 312.

Para. 1, MUH., 2/405-06. Para. 2, ibid., 3/94-96. Para. 3, ibid., 3/393-94. Para. 4, ibid., 4/208-211. Para. 5, ibid., 4/314-15. L.21, ( انكوريه ) Angūriyya from Ancyra (Gk. + Lat.); Anqira, and Ankūriyya in (T.). It is Qal'at al-Salāsīl in (Old A.); "Enguriye, Enguri, Enguru; (forms which also occasionally appeared on coinage), town in the district of Galatia, in Central Anatolia, modern capital of Turkey"; En 2, 1/509-511. Para. 6, MUH., 4/376-77. Para. 7, ibid., 4/493.

Page No. 313.

Para. 1, ( عرب علي باشا ) : He is 'Alī Pasha Arabcī in Turkish sources, see I.AN., 1 Cilt, pp.324-25. 'Alī Kaddūm in Arabic historical sources, see MUN., p.77 and QUR., fol. 21b. al-Daiwachī wrongly cites that this wālī belongs to Rabī'a tribe and died in 1085 A.H.;

MUN., p.77, n.1. This wālī comes from Tay tribe and died in 1108 A.H. Para. 2, MUH., 1/190-97. Para. 3, ibid., 1/474. Para. 4, ibid., 2/278. Para. 5, ibid., 2/328-40. Para. 6, QUR., fol. 26b. Para. 7, "Sultan Muhammad IV, was born on December 30, 1641, and was placed on the throne on August 8, 1648 and died on December 17, 1692; see En 1, 111/660-61. Para. 9, IBI, 5/124-25. Para. 10, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit.

Page No. 314.

Para. 1, Hammer, op.cit., VI/519; see also I.AN., 8/737-38. L.3, ( ازورنيق ) Izvornik (T.), Zvornik (Sl.). It is situated in Ottoman Rumeli. It is called Loznica at present and situated in Yugoslavia; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXVI-A1. L.4, ( آق كند ) Āqh-Kend (T.), or al-Ṣīramūn ( الصيرمون ): It is a village, situated in Southern Mosul. Para. 3, Hammer, op.cit., 6/522-3. Para. 4, MUH., 1/356-9. Para. 5, ibid., 2/437-8. Para. 6, ibid., 3/275-6. Para. 7, ibid., 3/338-9. Para. 9, ZUB., p.74, see also MUN., p.176.

Page No. 315.

L.4, ( مصرية ) prol. of ( مصرية ): Misriyya is a coin = three Ottoman Akçe. Para. 1, 'Abdāl Jāmi' is situated in Mosul; for historical details, see Daiwachī, Jawāmi'., and Majmū', pp.47-50. L.6, 'Abdāl Madr. in Mosul; for details see SUMER, vol. 18, 1962, pp.13-14. Para. 2, MUH., 1/394-. Para. 3, Qara Muṣṭafā Pasha was born in 1044 A.H. = 1634-35 A.D.; executed on December 13, 1693; for historical details, see Silahdār, Tārīkh 11/119, see also I.AN., 8/736-37, and MUH., 4/397. L.18, The full name of ( ابو ايوب خالد بن زيد ) is: " ابو ايوب خالد بن زيد ". "He was Muḥammad's first host on his arrival at Madīna. He fought in all first Muslem battles, and died during the first Arab siege of Constantinople about 672 A.D. His grave is marked by a mosque in the suburb of Constantinople called Eyyub. In this mosque the Sultans of the Ottoman Empire gird on the sword at their accession"; Redhouse, op.cit., p.312. Para. 6, ( خرموش ) appears instead of ( حرموش ) in ZUB., cf. p.223. Para. 7, ( دباغ زاده ) "Debbagsade Mohammed, zum zweyten mahle, abgesetzt im Ramasan 1101 (Junius 1690"; see Hammer, op.cit., 6/766.

Page No. 316.

Para. 2, MUH., 1/12-13. Para. 3, "Sultan Sulaimān II died of bydropsy on June 22, 1691. He was replaced by Ibrāhīm's third son, Aḥmad II 1691-95"; see Shaw, op.cit., 1/222; But the En 1, cites that Sulaimān's death was on June 23, 1691 A.D., cf. En 1, IV/527. Para. 4, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 5, "In 1690 fortune turned in favour of the Ottomans assisted by a Tatar army. They retook Nish, Semendria and Belgrade on Oct. 8, during the reign of Sultan Suleymān II"; En 1, IV/527. Para. 6, Hammer, op.cit., 6/499-560. Para. 7, ( فيض الله افندي ) "Faḍḍullāh Efendi," Muftī of the Empire 1101-1103 A.H. The Muftīs of Sultan Aḥmad II were: 'Alī Efendi, 1103-1105 A.H.; Faḍḍullāh Efendi, 1105-1106 A.H., and Ṣādiq Muḥammad Efendi 1106 A.H.; ibid., 6/766. Para. 8, GUL., 2/114, see also IBI, 5/133.

Page No. 317.

Para. 2, MAN., 1/232. Para. 2, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 6, loc.cit. Para. 7, GUL., 1/115. L.14, ( باب جب علي ) Cıbalı is situated in Istanbul; see BZTI, E4/2, p.309. Para. 11, cf. Silḥadār, op.cit., 2/620-22.

Page No. 318.

Para. 3, cf. E.S. Creasy, op.cit., pp.310-11. L.12, In his book, I.A. Ra'uf has misnamed this poet as: al-Ḥāj 'Alī b. Jārā llāh al-Mawṣilī; cf. Ra'uf, op.cit., p.292. nn.(1), (2).

Page No. 319.

L.2, ( البزازستان ) "Bezzazistan or Bedestan": It is a quarter in Istanbul; see BZTI, pp.345-49. Para. 2, Ṣādiq Muḥammad Efendi, the Muftī of the Empire; see Hammer, op.cit., 6/766.

Para. 3, ibid., 6/585-86. Para. 4, "Sultan Aḥmad II died of dropsy, 22 D̲j̲umādā II, 1106 = 6 Feb. 1695 at Adrianople"; see En 2, 1/268. L.11, ( السلطان مصطفى ): "He is Muṣṭafā II, the son of the deposed Muḥammad IV. He was born in 1664, succeeded his uncle Aḥmad II when the Empire was at war with Austria, Poland, Russia and Venice. The new Sultan was the twenty-second Ottoman Sultan"; see En 1, 111/760, see also E.S. Creasy, op.cit., pp.311-22. Para. 6, MUN., loc. cit, and SAL., loc. cit. L.23, ( عايشه سلطان ) 'Āyshe Buyuk 1107-1165 = 1696-1752 A.D., married the Grand Vizir Nu'mān Koprūllū; see Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XL.

Page No. 320.

Para. 1, See Hammer, op.cit., 6/766. Para. 4, see IBI, 5/138. Para. 5, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 6, "In October, Azof was delivered from the Russians"; see En 1, III/760. L.17, ( جَسَّان ) Jaṣṣān and ( بدران ) Badrān, or Badra are situated in S.E. of Iraq; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-C3. Para. 8, MUN., loc. cit.; and see SAL., loc. cit. Para. 10, SHAM., p.89, n.2.

Page No. 321.

L.2, ( كَافِدْ خَانَسَ ), Kyaghīd - Khāna: The valley of the "sweet waters of Europe" at the head of the Golden Horn; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1517. Para. 2, IBI, 5/141-42. L.11, ( مصطفى باشا الكوبري ): He is "Koprīlizade Muṣṭafā", son of Muḥammad Koprīlī's; see Hammer, op.cit., 6/765. LL.17-18, This is an Ḥadīth Nabawī; see A.J. Wensinck and J.P. Mensing, Concordance Et Indices De La Tradition Musulmane, vol. 2, Leiden - Brill 1943, p.236.

Page No. 322.

L.1, ( الكوبري محمد ): He is Muḥammad Koprūllū Pasha, Grand

Vizir of the Ottoman Empire; he was born in 991 A.H. = 1583 A.D., died in 1661 A.D. at Adrianople; see En 1, 11/1060. L.13, "Kopruluzade Fādīl Aḥmad Pasha"; son of the preceding Ottoman Grand Vizir; he was born 1045 A.H. = 1635 A.D., died 1087 A.H. = 1676 A.D.; for historical details, see ibid., 11/1060-61, see also Aḥmad Rafīk, Koprūlūler, 11, Istanbul 1331.

Page No. 323.

L. 2, ( شہر امینی ) "Shehremīnī" is a quarter situated in Istanbul, see BZTI, map B. 5/12. Para. 5, Muḥammad (1110-1115 A.H. = 1698-1703 A.D.); Ḥasan (1110-1145 A.H. = 1699-1733 A.D.); Ḥusain (1110-1112 A.H. = 1699-1700 A.D.); cf. Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XL. Para. 6, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 10, cf. Longrigg, op.cit., pp.327-40, see also IBI, 5/144-45. L. 21, ( الحویزہ ): al-Ḥawīzeh is situated S. Karkhah river in 'Arabistān of Irān; see A.H. Keane, Asia with Ethnological Appendix, London 1882, map No. 5, pp.108-9.

Page No. 324.

Para. 2, In his book, 'Azzāwī states that Duldubān Muṣṭafā Pasha appointed as Wālī of Baghdad in 1111 A.H. = 1697 A.D.; cf., IBI, 5/144-45, from GUL., 2/117. L.6, ( البیرہ ) Bīra (A.); Bīrecik (T.) is situated S. Turkey; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-A2. Para. 4, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 5, cf. I,AN., 8/698. L.20, ( ہتن ), Hotin is situated in N. Moldavia; Pitcher, op.cit., map XXX-A2. The present Khotin is situated in Ukraine of the Soviet Union; see TAW., plate 46, F-S. ( ماہتن ): It is the Dnestr River.

Page No. 325.

Para. 1, ( محمد بن فيض الله ): He is Saiyyd Faḍḍullāh, the Muftī of the Empire; see Hammer, op.cit., 7/624. Para. 3, cf. ibid., 6/765. L.10, ( عوجيه زاده ) 'Amūcha-Zāheh Husain Koprili, the Grand Vizir of the Empire; see ibid., 7/623. Para. 4, see GUL., 2/122. Para. 5, MUN., loc. cit.; see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 6, "Sultan Muṣṭafā II, died on December 31, 1703 and was buried in the Aya Sofia"; see En l., 111/760. L.19, Sultan Aḥmad III, brother of Muṣṭafā II. L.21, He is Rāmī Muḥammad Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire; see Hammer, op.cit., 7/623. L.21 ( حسن باشا ): He is Dāmād Hasan Pasha, Sultan Aḥmad III, appointed Nishanchī Aḥmad Pasha as a Grand Vizir of the Empire in 1115-1703 A.D.; cf. loc. cit. Para. 7, GUL., 1/123. Para. 8, MUN., loc. cit.; see also SAL., loc. cit.

Page No. 326.

Para. 3, Fātma Sultan (1116-1145 A.H.) was married to Ibrāhīm Pasha; see Alderson, op.cit., Tab., XLI. Para. 4, ( كلالى ) "Kalalliko Ahmed Pascha, "the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1116-1118 A.H.; see Hammer, op.cit., 7/623, see also Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.466. Para. 5, cf. IBI., 5/161, also Longrigg, op.cit., p.123. L.10, ( خانوكة ) al-Khānūga or "Khānūza" is situated on the right bank of the Tigris in Hamreen Hills"; Rich, op.cit., 1/139. Para. 7, 'Īsā Sultan Ibn Sultan Aḥmad 1117-1118 A.H. = 1706-1707 A.D.; 'Alī, son of Sultan Aḥmad 1118-1118 = 1706-1706 A.D.; and Muḥammad 1117-1118 = 1705-1706 A.D.; cf. Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XLI. Para. 8, cf. I.AN., 1/165.

Page No. 327.

Para. 1, MUH., 3/101. Para. 2, ( تبردار محمد باشا ), "Baltadschi Mohammed Pascha", the Grand Vizir of the Empire; see Hammer, op.cit., 7/623; ( جورلىلى علي باشا ), "Tschorlilli Ali Pascha,



abgesetzt am 17. Rebiul - achir 1122 = 15. Junius 1710"; see loc. cit., see also I.AN., 1/165. Para. 3, MUN., loc. cit., SAL., loc. cit. Para. 4, cf. IBI, 5/120. L.13, ( جامع نور الدين الشهيد ), al-Kabīr (The Great) Mosque, or al-Nūrī Mosque was founded by Nūr al-Dīn Zingī in Mosul, 566-568 A.H. = 1170-1172 A.D. This mosque was built by Shaikh 'Umar b. Muhammad al-Mallā', and still is one of the famous mosques in Iraq. The most prominent part of this mosque is its famous fifty metre high "Leaning Minaret" with its beautiful ornamentations; for further details; see Daiwachī, Jawami' al-Mawsil, pp.16-20. Para. 9, Ruqaiya 1119-1119 A.H., daughter of Sultan Ahmad; Mustafā and Murād 1119-1120 A.H., sons of Sultan Ahmad; see Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XLI; Alderson tells us that Sultan Mustafā was born in 1120 A.H. = 1717 A.D.; cf. loc. cit.

Page No. 328.

Para. 1, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 2, ( تبردار محمد باشا ): He is Rāmī Muḥammad Pasha; Hammer, op.cit., 7/623; for details, see I.AN., 9/623-24. L, 8, ( خواجه باشا ) Hoça Pasha is a quarter in Istanbul; see BZTI, map F6/13, p.324. L.13, ( امينه سلطان ) Amīnah Sultan, daughter of Sultan Mustafā II married the Grand Vizir (Corculu Ali Pasha) in 1115 A.H. = 1703 A.D.; see Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XL. L.14, ( عايشه سلطان ) "Ayse Sultan (Buyuk)", daughter of Sultan Mustafā II married the Grand Vizir Nu'mān Koprülü Pasha in 1114 A.H. = 1702 A.D.; see loc. cit. Para. 9, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit.

Page No. 329.

LL.3-4, ( نهر الزاب ): It is possibly the Little Zab River in N. Iraq. L.6, ( عبد الملك ) 'Abdul Malik Ibn Sultan Ahmad III, was born in 1121 A.H. = 1709; died in 1123 A.H. = 1711 A.D.; see Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XLI. L.6, ( زينب سلطان ), Zainab

Sultan was the third of Sultan Aḥmad III's daughters to be called Zainab, was named (Zeyneb Asima). The first Zainab was born in 1119 A.H. = 1708 A.D., died in 1120 A.H. = 1708 A.D. The second Zainab was born in 1121 A.H. = 1710 A.D.; died in 1122 A.H. = 1710 A.D. The third Zainab (Zeyneb Asima) died in 1188 A.H. = 1774 A.D.; see loc. cit.; Alderson does not mention the birthday of (Zeyneb Asima) cf. loc. cit. L.7, ( سليم ): He is the second Salīm, son of Sultan Aḥmad III, was born in 1127 A.H. = 1715 A.D., died in 1130 A.H. = 1718 A.D. The first Salīm was born in 1118 A.H. = 1706 A.D.; died 1120 A.H. = 1708 A.D., cf. loc. cit. L.7, ( خديجة سلطان ), Khadīja Sultan, the first Khadīja of Sultan Aḥmad III was born in 1118 A.H. = 1707 A.D., died in 1119 A.H. = 1708 A.D. The second Khadīja of the same Sultan was born in 1122 A.H. = 1710 A.D., died young, cf. loc. cit.

Page No. 330.

Para. 1, ZUB., pp. 80-81. L.5, ( مير ) mīr (P.) from ( امير ) Amīr (A.): "Title given to a feudal chieftain or even to a chief personal attendant"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p. 2053. Para. 2, MUN., pp. 93-4, see also MAN., 1/64. Para. 3, MANH., fol. 104b, 105a; see also SHAM., pp. 71-4, n.2. L.19, ( الاردب ), al-Ardab (A.), "An Egyptian measure of corn, of about five English bushels"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p. 65. Para. 5, MAN., 1/237.

Page No. 331.

Para. 5, MUN., loc. cit.; see also SAL., loc. cit.

Page No. 332.

Para. 1, cf. Amīrī, op.cit., No. 4, p. 259, see also MAN., 1/142. L.3, ( العفر ): al-'Aqir or 'Aqra, is a small Kurdish town situated

in N. Iraq; see Rich, op.cit., pp.22-3. Para. 3, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 4, SALK., 2/209, see also SHAM., p.228 n.1; ( الدادنجي ) appears written ( الداديخي ) in SALK., and SHAM. L.14, ( الفاوخي ) from Qāwaq (T.): "A hollow thing of a definite shape; specially, a bladder"; see Redhouse, op.cit., pp.1726-27. Para. 8, Salīm: son of Sultan Aḥmad 1127-1130 A.H. = 1715-1718 A.D.; Ṣāliḥa, daughter of Sultan Aḥmad 1127-1192 A.H. = 1715-1778 A.D.; cf. Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XLI, see also Hammer, op.cit., VII/119. L.23, ( جامع بايزيد ), Beyazīd Cami in Istanbul; BZTI, map E7/1; and cf. pp.384-390.

Page No. 333.

Para. 1, cf. IBL, 5/192, from al-Swaydī, pp.65-6. LL.2-3, ( جبل سنجار ): The mountain of Sinjār is situated in Western Mosul; see map by Major H.I. Lloyd, "Mosul Boundary" in The Geographical Journal, vol. LXVIII, London 1926. L.4, ( غزا حسن ) is p. his. (= 1127 A.H.). Para. 2, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 4, Hammer, op.cit., XII/342. "Sari Ahmed, the Beylerbey of Anatolia commanded. The Janissaries who had hitherto combated valiantly, gave way, and retreated towards Belgrade"; Creasy, op.cit., p.343. For further details about Belgrade; see ibid., pp.343-45. Para. 5, Hammer, op.cit., VII/345. L.14, ( الاكراد البهدينان ) Bahdīnān Kurds, the origin of the Bahdīnān family is obscure; the local tradition traced its descent to the caliphs of Baghdad; see Rich, op.cit., 1/153-54; "Bahdīnān, the Kurdish territory to the north and north-east of the Mosul plain. From the latter years of the second era of the 'Abbāsīd Caliphate 600 A.H. = 1200 A.D., until the middle of the 13th = 19th century"; see En 1, 1/920. For historical details about Bahdīnān family, and their stage role in the history of Iraq; see Longrigg, op.cit., p.37, 42, 159, 209, see also S. al-Damlūchī, Imārat Bahdīnān al-Kurdiyya, Mosul 1952. Para. 7, cf. Creasy, op.cit., p.345, see also "Ahmad III"

article written by H. Bowen in En 2, 1/269. L.18, ( خليل باشا ), Khalīl Pasha Arnanui 1655-1733 A.D. For historical details; see I.AN., S.1/161-62. His troops approximately 150,000 Janissaries; see loc. cit. Para. 8, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit.

Page No. 334.

Para. 1, "The Austrians laid siege to Belgrade, and notwithstanding the most vigorous resistance, the city 'on the morning of the 16th of August 1716', with all its camp, artillery and military stores, was captured; over 10,000 Turkish troops being supposed to have lost their lives in this desperate fight"; see, "Belgrad" article in En 2, 1/269. For historical details; see I.AN., 2/479. L.5, ( الافـرال ): He is Eugene of Savoy, died in 1736. On the 5th August, 1716, Eugene of Savoy won a victory at Peterwardin and captured Belgrade 1717; see EWB, "Tab. of the house of Savoy 1553-1946" p.495 and p.519. Para. 2, SHAM., pp.80-3, see also RAW., 1/177, and MAN., 1/230. L.25, The full name of ( ابن مقله ): Ibn Muqla is: " محمد بن علي بن الحسين مقله - ابو علي الوزير - "; see Ibn Khallikān, Wafiyat .., 2/61. Para. 3, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit.

Page No. 335.

L.5, ( الخابور ), al-Khābūr River of Syria; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII, B2. L.5, ( عرب الوالي وعرب العكيدات ) al-Mawālī and al-'Ugīdāt are two Arab tribes. L.14, ( ابي ايوب ) is village of Eyoub, near the Golden-Horn in Istanbul. See n.L.18, p.315.

Page No. 336.

L.3, ( نعمان باشا كوبرلى زاده ): He is Nu'mān b. Muṣṭafā b. Muḥammad Koprülü, the Grand Vizir of the Empire; see Hammer, op.cit.,

7/623. Para. 2, SHAM., pp.145-50, see also MAN., 1/252, and RAW., 1/411. Para. 4, SHAM., p.48, see also SALK., 4/3.  
L.26, ( باهت بك يا علينا الفتيا ) is p. his. (= 1126 A.H.).

Page No. 337.

LL.2-4 ( سوق مصطفى باشا ) Sultan Salīm; ( مصطفى باشا ) Muṣṭafā Pasha Sūq; ( محلة حاج عيسى ) Hāj 'Īsā are situated in Istanbul; see Ernest Membourg, Istanbul Touristique, Istanbul 1951.  
Para. 2, MUN., p.80. L.8, ( الصاليان ) Ṣālyān (T. from p. الصاليان ): "A tax impost levied as a fixed sum"; Redhouse, op.cit., p.1162; also ZUB., p.133 n.6. L.18, ( السلطان احمد ) is Sultan Aḥmad III, ruled 1703-1730. LL.20-21, ( باب الجسر ) Bāb al-Jisr is situated in Mosul, western side of Tigris; see MUN., p.67 n.4. L.21, ( الكبرى ) or ( كويبرى ) is Kyupru (T.), a bridge; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1580.

Page No. 338.

L.2, ( ترسانة قاسم باشا ) "Kasim Pasa Turbesi" is situated in Istanbul; see BZTI., D6/20; p.254. Para. 2, MAN., 1/280.  
L.6, ( ملا عيسى الخطيب ); see ibid., 1/280-1 n.72. L.16, Nu'mān Sultan b. Sultan Aḥmad, 1135-78 A.H. = 1723-64 A.D.; see Alderson, op.cit., Tab. No. XLI. Para. 7, MAN., 1/223, see also RAW., 1/372, and SHAM., p.103. L.17, ( رئيس العلماء ), "The Ra'īs al-'Ulamā' is an honorary title and not a function; see Kemp, op.cit., p.105 n.4. L.18, ( المدرسة ), Yāsīn Efendi al-Muftī Madr. is situated in Mosul, near Bab al-Sarāy; for further details, see Datwachi, Madāris al-Mawṣil fī al-'Ahd al-'Uthmānī in SUMER, vol. 18, Baghdad 1962, pp.15-16.

Page No. 339.

L. 8, ( الدجيل ) al-Dujail is situated in N. Baghdad; see Niebuhr, op.cit., 2/267. Para. 2, ZUB., pp. 82-3, see also Dawha, p. 18; for further details about the death of Hasan Pasha, see al-Suwaīdī, Hadīqat al-Zawrā' fī Siyar al-Wuzarā', Baghdad, 1961, pp. 111-112. L. 14, ( کرمان شاه ) or ( کرمنشاه ), Kirmānshāh is situated in Western Iran; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-C2. LL. 16-22, The army commanded by Hasan Pasha occupied Kermanshah. Hasan Pasha died before the Spring of 1723. His son, Ahmad Pasha was appointed as Wālī of Baghdad; see Dawha, p. 8, see also GUL., 2/128 and Longrigg, op.cit., pp. 130-31, IBL., 5/211. L. 23, ( ملا جرجیس الموصلي ). Malla Jirjīs b. Darwīsh al-Mawṣilī; for further details see SAIK., 2/7, MAN., 1/295-97, and Ṣāliḡh, Tārīkh al-Mawṣil, Beirut, 1940, 2/140-45.

Page No. 340.

L. 3, ( الظهير ) is p. his. (= 1036 A.H.). Para. 1, MUN., p. 80, p. 81, n. 2; ( الدردلی ) appears written by the author himself ( الدردلی ) in MUN., cf. loc. cit. ( الدردلی ) comes from ( درنده ) Darende, is a Turkish town, situated in Sivas Eyalet, in central Anatolia; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-C2. Para. 2, see, The conquest of Western Persia by the Turks, A.D. 1724-1752, in Sykes, op.cit., vol. II, pp. 328-29; for historical details, see I.AN., 1/167. Para. 3, SALK., 4/45. Para. 4, cf. Longrigg, op.cit., p. 131. L. 13, the author wrongly states that Ahmad Pasha, the Wālī of Baghdad occupied ( روان ) Erivan, the Armenian capital, whereas he actually occupied Hamadan, the Iranian city; cf., GUL., 2/128. In his book, Longrigg wrongly states that Hasan Pasha was awarded the title of "Fatih Hamadān", see Longrigg, op.cit., p. 131, n. 2. L. 16, ( نایله سلطان ), Naile Sultan 1137-1139 A.H. = 1725-26 A.D.; cf. Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XLI. L. 17, ( السلطان عبدالحمید ) Sultan 'Abdul-Hamīd I was born on 20th March, 1725 A.D., see loc. cit. LL. 17-18, ( لطیفه سلطان )

Latīfa Sultan. In his book, Alderson does not mention her, cf. loc. cit. Para. 6, Sykes, op.cit., vol. II, p.329. L.20, ( قومه داغ ) Kara dagk is a town situated in N.W. Iran, see Niebuhr, op.cit., p.267. L.20, ( اردبیل ), Ardabīl is situated in Azerbaijan, N.W. Iran; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-C1. Para. 7, MANH., fols. 97b-100a, see also SHAM., pp.71-74; n.2 in p.71.

Page No. 341.

Para. 1, MAN., 1/270. Para. 2, SALK., 1/256. Para. 3, cf. IBI., 5/216. Para. 5, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. L.13, ( باب الجديد ) Bāb al-Jadīd is situated in southern Old Mosul; see present thesis, map No. VI. Para. 8, Dawha, p.14. L.14, ( شمر ) "Shammar Jarba, one of the big Arab tribe, wandered within bail of the western side of Mosul province in the Jazirah between Tigris and Euphrates rivers", H. Batatu, The Old Social Classes and the Revolutionary Movements of Iraq, Princeton, 1978, pp.67-9. L.17, ( الموران ), The Kurdish Šūrān or Sorans were between the lesser Zāb river and north-east of Mosul; for details see al-Makrīyānī, Ḥusain Hazny, Umarā' Sūrān, Baghdad, no date.

Page No. 342.

Para. 2, cf. IBI., 5/218-19. Para. 3, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. L.23, ( والصلح خير بالاسلام ) is p. his. (= 1140 A.H. LL.24-25, "Seyfeddin" 1140-45 A.H. = 1728-1732 A.D.; "Rabīa" 1140-1140 A.H. = 1727-1728 A.D.; "Zubeyde" 1140-1169 A.H. = 1728-1756 A.D.; see Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XLI.

Page No. 343.

Para. 1, MAN., 1/295-97, see also SHAM., pp.272-79, and SALK., 2/7-9. L.8, This verse appears omitted from SHAM., cf. p.274.

L.10, ( وهي طويلة ), The full qaṣīda appears mentioned in ibid., pp.273-75. LL.10-12, For further details; see Ṣ. al-Jalīlī, al-Iṣṭiyāf fī Hammām al-'Alīl, Mosul 1965. L.10, ( حمام علي ) or ( حمام العليل ) Hammām al 'Alīl is a summer residence of the people of Mosul. This rest centre is situated on Tigris, Southern Mosul; see Yāqūt, 4/165-66, see also Rich, op.cit., 1/114, and Niebuhr, op.cit., 2/Tab. XIV.

Page No. 344.

Para. 1, GHA., p.179, see also ZUB., pp.86-7. L.17, For further details about this Mawṣilī poet, Ḥasan 'Abdul-Bāqī; see Ṣ. al-Jalīlī, Dīwān Ḥasan 'Abdul-Bāqī al-Mawṣilī, Mosul 1967. L.18, ( والشاء قد سد باب المات بالفيل ): Thus in DUR. 1 and DUR. 2; also in GHA., p.179 and in ZUB., pp.86-8; the p. his. of this term (= 841 A.H.) is historically a mistake; to read it correctly, it should be written as " والشاء قد سد باب المشاء بالفيل ". The p. his. of that (= 1140 A.H.). It was the author's mistake but the commentator of GHA., and the editor of ZUB. did not correct it in their commentaries on the texts, and they wrongly make the following comment about ( مات ): " تدخل العامة (ال) الموصولة على الفعل الماضي ، والرمز من مصطلحات الشطرنج "; see GHA., loc. cit., and ZUB., p.88, n.1. Para. 2, MAN., 2/191, see also GHA., p.373. Para. 3, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit.

Page No. 345.

Para. 1, GHA., pp.179-80. Para. 2, MAN., 1/272. Para. 4, GHA., p.180. L.9, ( فرقة الاوتزير ) is a Turkish term. ( اوتوز ) Otuz (T.), Thirty, ( بير ) bir (T.) one; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.237, see also, Introduction, Tab. No. XI. L.10, " ( صفة ) Suffa, means originally, a porch or hall with benches on which to rest; but it means at present, a recess in a hall or ante-room, with a sofa on



its sides; ( اهل صفه ): The poor disciples who used to shelter themselves in a porch outside the prophet's cabin at Medina"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1179. The commentator of GHA. does not know the meaning of ( صفه ), and states "The meaning of this word which is repeated many times in GHA., is mysterious; cf. GHA., p.180, n.2. Para. 6, ATH., fol. 227 b; The death of Ashraf, 1142 A.H. = 1730 A.D.; cf. Sykes, op.cit., vol. II, pp.334-35. Para. 7, MAN., 1/288-89. Para. 8, ibid., 1/295.

Page No. 346.

L.1, ( الكولة ) al-Kūla or Kyule, a Mameluke; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1601. Para. 1, MAN., 1/284-85. L.5, ( علي الوقت ) : For 'Alī al-Muwaqqat; see SALK., 3/233-45. Para. 2, For further details about Jāmi' Nabī Jarjīs in Mosul; see, Daiwachī, Jāmi' al-Nabī Jarjīs fī al-Mawsil in SUMER, vol. 17, 1961, p.7; see also Kemp, op.cit., map No. 6. LL.10-12, see "The Iranian Wars (1)" in Shaw, op.cit., vol. I, pp.238-39. LL.13-26, This is the Patrona revolt in Istanbul, see ibid., vol. I, pp.239-40; for historical details, analysis and its outcome; see R. Olson, The Siege of Mosul and Ottoman-Persian Relations 1718-1743, Indiana, 1975, Chap. III "The Patrona Halil Rebellion", pp.65-88, see also Shaw, The Ottoman Empire, pp.17-36. L.27, ( سلطنة السلطان محمود ) On October 2, Sultan Aḥmad III was deposed and his nephew, Maḥmūd I (1730-1754), was proclaimed Sultan of the Ottoman Empire; En 2, 1/268-270.

Page No. 347.

L.1, ( السلطان محمود ) Sultan Maḥmūd I, b. Sultan the Ghāzī Muṣṭafā II, was born in 1696 A.D. = 1108 A.H., died in 1754 A.D. = 1168 A.H., for historical details; see Creasy, op.cit., pp.350-79, see also Shaw, op.cit., vol. I, pp.240-46. L.3, ( نطفة سلطان ), Fatma Sultan was born in 1704 A.D. = 1116 A.H. She was married twice, her first marriage with Komurcu 'Alī Pasha (died in 1128 A.H. =

1716 A.D.). Her second marriage with Nevsehirli Ibrāhīm Pasha was in 1129 A.H. = 1717 A.D.; see Alderson, op.cit., Tab. No. XLI. L.3, ( ابراهيم باشا المقتول ): The Grand Vizir Nersehirli Ibrāhīm Pasha was born in 1076 A.H. = 1666 A.D., ex. in 1143 A.H. = 1730 A.D.; cf. loc. cit. LL.8-28, cf. Shaw, op.cit., vol. I, pp.239-40, see also R. Olson, loc. cit., and R. Olson, "The Esnaf and the Patrona Halil Rebellion of 1730: A realignment in Ottoman Politics?" in JESHO 17, pt. 3 (1974): pp. 329-44. L.19, ( الصراى ) or ( السراى ) Serāy (P.) a house, a mansion; especially, a palace; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1048.

Page No. 348.

LL.1-11, For further information, see Munir Aktepe, patrona Isyani (1730), Istanbul 1958. L.8, ( مكنه ) Mangana (T.) "any mechanical appliance for exerting pressure or delivering a sudden blow; as, a press, a vice, a punch"; Redhouse, op.cit., pp.2013-14. Para. 2, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 3, MUN., p.178. L.18, ( الفرعية ) al-Far'īyya is a term which appears to have been used by the Mosul farmers. It means in Arabic: "هو ما ينبت من الزرع بعد حصده او بعد ييسه" (فتح الله المتولي): see ibid., p.178, n.1. L.18, ( وقع الفروع بنصف الاربعين ) see MAN., 1/293-95. L.19, ( نادر شاه طهماز ) is p. his. (= 1143 A.H.).

Page No. 349.

Para. 1, GHA., p.180. LL.1-2, Muḥammad Efendi al-Wayūda was the Mutasalim of Mardīn; see loc. cit. L.2, ( الحلبية ) al-Muḥallabiyya village is situated near Mosul, western side of Tigris; see, Yāqūt, 7/396, see also MUN., p.164. Para. 2, SALK., 2/230-31. Para. 3, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 5, MAN., 1/146-47, see also Dawha, p.38. L.12, ( نادر شاه طهماز ) Nādir Shah of Iran who born on 22nd October, 1688 A.D. = 28th Muḥarram

1100 A.H. belonged to the Kirklu - Afshār tribe. He was killed on 20th June, 1747 = 11th Jumada-1 thānī 1160 A.H.; see En 1, 111/810-12, see also W. Jones, History of the life of Nadir Shah, King of Persia, London 1773, see also I.AN., 9/21-31. L.15, ( الكاظم ) (the tomb of Mūsā al-Kāẓim): al-Kāẓim village is situated N. of old Baghdad. It is called al-Kāẓimiyya at present. LL.17-21, cf. Amīrī, op.cit., p.261, see also ZUB., p.88. Para. 7, MAN., 2/176, SHAM., pp.193-99; In his book, Murādī, wrongly states that this Shaikh died in 1044 A.H.; cf. SALK., 3/170.

#### Page No. 350.

Para. 1, MAN., 2/196-204. Para. 2, IBI., 5/241-42, see also Shay, op.cit., p.144, and Longrigg, op.cit., p.142. L.19, ( العظيم ) al-'Uẓīm is situated in northern Baghdad; see Le Strange, op.cit., p.114. L.25, ( قول مصر ), qol (T.), a wing of a military force of Egypt; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1492.

#### Page No. 351.

Para. 1, MUN., p.82 and n.1, see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 2, According to MANH., fol. 142b: The author mentions that this qādī died in 1141 A.H. Para. 3, GHA., p.180. Para. 4, MAN., 1/144-45. L.15, ( طوقات ) or ( طوغ ) Tūgh (T.) "a crest or pennant of horse-hair, attached to a helmet or flag-staff; especially, an ensign of rank formerly given to pashas"; Redhouse, op.cit., p.1256. Para. 5, MAN., 1/225-26; MANH., fol. 196a, see also SHAM., pp.71-79, n.2, pp.71-3, SALK., 3/231, and Ṣā'iqh, op.cit., 1/272. L.21, ( جبل القلوب ) Maqlūb mountain is situated in N.E. Mosul; see Rich, op.cit., 1/33. Para. 6, QUR., fol. 73a.

#### Page No. 352.

Para. 1, cf. Shay, op.cit., p.147, see also ZUB., p.90, Dawha,

p.35, and Longrigg, op.cit., pp.143-44. L.6, ( التختروان ) Takht-rewān (P.), an easy-paced horse; Redhouse, op.cit., p.513. L.7, According to other sources, the Serdar Vizir 'Abdullāh Pasha Köprülü was killed not in this battle (26th Oct. 1733 = 1146 A.H.) as the author said, but in another battle when he was fighting Nadirshah near Kars (18th June 1735); cf. Amīrī, op.cit., p.265, see also Olson, The Siege of Mosul ..., p.98, and Uzuncarşili, Osmanlı Tarihi, vol. 4, pts. I, Ankara 1956, p.230. Para. 2, al-Wazīr Ahmad Pasha was the Wālī of Tarābzūn; cf. Dawha, p.39. Para. 3, loc. cit. Para. 5, MAN., 1/147.

Page No. 353.

Para. 1, cf. En 1, 111/811. Para. 2, GHA., pp.180-1. L.4, ( فرقة الاكرومي يدى ) , see Introduction, Tab. No. XI. L.12, ( چرخ ) charq (T.) from (P.) ( جرّ ) Cerh, "A wheel, or anything that rotates like a wheel, or any complex kind of press"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.717. Para. 5, SALK., 3/30-38. L.21, ( جلق ) Jilliḡ, is a village situated near Damascus; see Yāqūt, 2/104; there is another place called Jelleḡ in Andalusia; ibid., 2/105. Para. 6, Dawha, p.40, see also GHA., p.181. Para. 7, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit.

Page No. 354.

Para. 1, For historical details; see Lockhart, Nadir Shah, London, 1938. Para. 2, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. L.13, ( كركا ) Kerek, means furrlery, ( كوركجي ) Kyurkou, a furrier; Redhouse, op.cit., p.1587. LL.17-20, GHA., p.181. L.23, ( نهر الخوسر ) al-Khaṣar is a small river across the plain of Mosul, east of the Tigris, passing through Nineveh; it is a tributary of the Tigris; see Yāqūt, 4/490, and MUN., pp.142-43; see also Rich, op.cit., 1/34 and 2/85.

Page No. 355.

Para. 1, GHA., p.181. L.8, ( اللّاوند ) Lāwand, a Kurdish people, cf. MUN., p.281 n.2. L.11, ( الخزندار ) or ( خزنه دار ) Khizane-dar (P.), a treasurer or a keeper; Redhouse, op.cit., p.845. Para. 4, ZUB., pp.91-2. L.25, ( عبد الله افندى الفخرى ) : For details; see SHAM., pp.118-24. L.27, See the whole *qaṣīda* which consists of 23 verses in loc. cit.

Page No. 356.

Para. 1, MAN., 1/149, see also MUN., p.179 and ZUB., p.91. Para. 3, "Sultan Aḥmad III died, in the retirement that was henceforth his lot, in 1149 A.H. = 1736 A.D. His nephew Sultan Maḥmūd I, succeeded him on 1 October = 18 Rabī' I 1143 A.H."; En 2, 1/270. Para. 6, MAN., 1/249, see also RAW., 1/402 and SHAM., pp.317-18. L.12, ( الشيخ عناز ) Shaikh 'Annāz tomb is situated in western old Mosul; see Daiwachī, Jawāmi'..., p.50; for further details, see MAN., 2/104-108. Para. 8, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 10, GHA., p.181.

Page No. 357.

Para. 1, MUN., p.179, see also ZUB., p.91. Para. 4, QUR., fol. 73b. Para. 5, MAN., 1/265-66. Para. 6, SHAM., pp.168-69 n.2. Para. 7-, ZUB., pp.94-97. L.22, ( بهرام باشا ) : He is Bahrām Pasha I, b. Sa'īd Khān Bey II, who ruled the Bahdīnān 'Abbasid Imārat in Amādiyya, northern Iraq 1126-82 A.H. = 1714-1768 A.D., see, al-Damlūchī, Imārat Bahdīnān., Mosul 1952, see also Dawha, p.63 and IBI, 5/263.

Page No. 358.

LL.1-24, ZUB., pp.94-97. L.8, ( قاسم الرامسي ) : Qāsim

al-Rāmī, a famous Adīb from Mosul; see SHAM., pp.259-65, see also MAN., 1/304. L.24, ( كرمانيج ) a Kurdish group, mentioned by Badlīsī in his Sharfnāma; see Idrīs al-Bidlīsī, al-Sharafnāmah, Cairo, 1958, see also ZUB., p.97, n.1. Para. 1, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 2, GHA., p.181. L.28, ( عرب المنتفك ): al-Muntafik ar al-Muntafiq 'Arab tribe, live in the Gharrāf and the lower Euphrates; see H. Batatu, op.cit., pp.65-8.

Page No. 359.

Para. 3, ZUB., p.97, see also MUN., pp.82-3. L.14, Hamra Khānim died in 1213 A.H. = 1798 A.D.; she was buried in the Zīwānī mosque in Mosul; see Majmū'..., p.11, n.1. Para. 4, MUN., p.179.

Page No. 360.

Para. 1, MUN., p.179. L.6, ( عبد الله المدرس ): He is 'Abdullāh al-Rutbakī al-Mudarris al-Kurdī, a famous teacher in Mosul, died in 1186 A.H.; see MAN., 1/250-2. Para. 2, SALK., 2/237; according to SALK., Nādir Shah of Iran sent nine elephants to Sultan Maḥmūd I during 1153 A.H. = 1740-41 A.D.; cf. loc. cit. L.16, ( السلطان محمود خان ) is Sultan Maḥmūd I. L.23, ( نادر ) is p. his. (= 1155 A.H.).

Page No. 361.

Para. 1-, Mosul was attacked in 1743 A.D. = 1156 A.H., by Nādir Shah of Iran with 300,000 men. This dramatic account, based on MAN., tells how Nādir Shah failed to capture Mosul and northern Iraq; this siege of Mosul is one of the most famous and crucial sieges in history. For historical details; see MAN., 1/149-63; SAL., pp.256-90; Olson, The Siege of Mosul and Ottoman-Persian Relations 1718-43, Chap. No. VII, pp.165-83, see also Ṣa'īgh, op.cit., 1/273-87; Niebuhr, op.cit.,

2/352 and State papers 97 - Turkey, letters from Mr. Stanhope Aspinwall to the Duke of Newcastle, vols. 24-32 (Public Record Office in London). For further details see Account of the Siege of Mosul by Nādir Shah, MS. in British Museum Library, Add. 7867, see also al-Qādirī, Maḥamat al-Mawṣil, Mosul 1965, and S. al-Jamīl, Article No. 2, p. 21; Longrigg, op.cit., p. 328. LL. 27-8, ( قرية يارمجه ) Yārimjah is a village on left bank of Tigris, south of Mosul"; Rich, op.cit., 2/349, see also MUN., p. 168. L. 28, ( فتاح باشا ): He is 'Abdul-Fattāḥ Pasha Ibn Ismā'īl Pasha al-Jalīlī; see Tab. No. XIII, and App. No. V.

Page No. 362.

L. 12, In Aspinwall's documents, 70,000 bombs; cf. Aspinwall, SP, letter dated 20 Nov. 1743. L. 16, In Aspinwall's documents, 1700 ladders suitable for the attack; cf. loc. cit. L. 17, ( الدبشي ) al-Dībshī is Ldv for Baṭṭikh (= water melon) it is used by the northern Iraqi Arabs of the villages. ( الشمرى ) al-Shimzī is the Ldv of Baṭṭikh (= water melon) as used by the Mawṣilī people. L. 18, ( العجور ) al-'Ajjūr (Ldv). It means a cheaper produce or smaller grade of water melon. L. 20, ( باب سنجار ) Bāb Sinjār is one of Mosul's Gates in the western side of Old Mosul; see MAN., 2/116, n. 2, see also Kemp, op.cit., map No. 3. L. 20, ( قضيبة البان ) Qaḍīb al-Bān tomb, is situated outside of Sūr al-Mawṣil, near Bāb Sinjār; see MAN., 2/116-29.

Page No. 363.

L. 7, ( قاسم افغا الجليلي ): He is Hāj Qāsim Agha al-Rawnaqī al-Jalīlī; for further details, see; RAW., 1/579; SHAM., pp. 134-39; MAN., 1/147, 161, 209; SALK., 4/8, and Dīwān Hasan 'Abdul-Bāqī al-Mawṣilī, ed. by S. Jalīlī, Supplement No. 2, p. 135. LL. 8-9, ( باب العمادي ) Bāb al 'Imādī was the northern Gate of Old Mosul

Kemp, op.cit., map No. 3; in his book, Olson wrongly writes this Gate as Bāb al Mahdī; cf. Olson, op.cit., p.173. L.13, ( المشهد ) al-Mashhad is the tomb of 'Alī b. Abī-Ṭalīb, in Najaf of Iraq. L.16, ( عبد الله السويدي ): He is 'Abdullāh b. Ḥusain b. Mar'ī b. Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Dūrī al-Baghdādī Abū al-Barakāt al-Suwaīdī, a famous Iraqi scholar, died in Baghdad 1174 A.H.; see SALK., 3/84, see also al-Ālūsī, al-Misk al-Adhfar, Baghdad 1348 A.H., pp.60-64. LL.16-26, For historical details in Persian, see Usturbadī, Cahangashāī Nādirī, ed. by S.A. Nawār, Tehran 1341, see also ZUB., p.105 and n.1.

Page No. 364.

L.3, ( گلبنده ) Gilband: I was not able to find the meaning of Gilband in Turkish; it is probably a special song used by Janissaries. It is mentioned by Longrigg as "the company-songs of the Janissaries"; see Longrigg, op.cit., p.283.

Page No. 365.

Para. 1, MAN., 1/165. L.3, ( السلطان محمود ) : He is Sultan Maḥmūd I. L.5, ( قرة قوش ) Qara qūsh is a village situated in east Mosul; see MUN., p.160, and n.1. Para. 6, Hasan Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire until 22 Rajab 1157 A.H. = 10 August 1746 A.D.; al-Ḥāj Muḥammad Pasha al-Tiryākī, the Grand Vizir of the Empire until 17 Sha'bān 1160 A.H. = 24 August 1747 A.D.; see Hammer, op.cit., 8/587, see also I.AN., 5/323-25.

Page No. 366.

L.5, ( جند القلعة اندى الزورا الوالي حسين ) is p. his. (= 1159 A.H. Para. 2, MAN., 1/297: QUR., fols. 17b-18a, see also SHAM., pp.200-202, n.1; for further details, see Dīwān, ed. by S. al-Jalīlī, op.cit., "The introduction, text and sections".



Page No. 367.

Para. 4, ZUB., p.229. Para. 5, GHA., p.324.

Page No. 368.

Para. 1, MAN., 1/250-52; SHAM., pp.189-90, see also SALK., 3/117-18 and al-Chalabī, Makhtūtāt al-Mawṣil, p.150. L.9, ( رتبع ) Ratbic, or Rabtīc, is a village situated north-east of Mosul near Shīkhān; see MUN., p.35, n.1. Para. 4, "Elhadsch Mohammed Pascha Terjaki, abgesetzt am 17. Schaaban 1160 = 24 August 1747"; Hammer, op.cit., 8/587. L.17, ( ابل ) icel (T.), Cilicia is a Turkish town situated in southern Anatolia; see Pitcher, op.cit., map No. XXI-B2. Para. 6, MUN., p.83, see also SAL., p.65. Para. 7, SALK., 4/265. Para. 8-, Nādir Shah assassinated on 20th June, 1747; see W. Jones, op.cit., p.146; In his article, V. Minorsky wrongly mentioned 20th June, 1147; cf. En 1, III/813.

Page No. 369.

Para. 1, SAIF., fols. 45b-46a; The Wālī of Baghdad, Aḥmad b. Ḥasan Pasha died on Thursday, 14 Shawwāl 1160 A.H. in Dallī 'Abbās, it is called Mansūriyya today. It is situated near Deyālā of Iraq. L.5, ( مات كبراء الدنيا ) is p. his. (= 1160 A.H.). Para. 2, QUR., fol. 20a. Para. 3, Amīrī, loc. cit. Para. 4, MAN., 1/276, see also SHAM., p.312. Para. 5, cf. IBI., 5/283. Para. 6, loc. cit.

Page No. 370.

L.1, MUN., loc. cit., SAL., loc. cit. Para. 2, loc. cit. Para. 3, SHAM., pp.99-102; MANH., fols. 98a-100b; MAN., 1/220-26. Para. 4-, This is the story of the Ottoman campaigns against the Austrians during the summers of 1738 and 1739 A.D. = 1151-52 A.H.,

cf. the text reported these events under the year 1162 A.H. = 1748-49 A.D. The author correctly asserts that the leader of this campaign was Ivaz Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire during 1151-53 A.H., see Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.466. "The Ottomans were largely successful in recapturing Belgrad, Semendria and Irsova"; see Shaw, op.cit., 1/244-45.

Page No. 371.

L.1, ( الطوبجية ) gram. ( طوبجي ) Topju (T.) "An artillery-man or a gunner"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1249. LL.10-13, This is a treaty of Belgrad, signed at Belgrad on 18th September, 1739: "The treaty stipulated that the Ottomans and the Austrians demolish the fortifications which the Ottomans had made for the fortress of Belgrade. The Austrians also agreed to demolish the 1200 purses worth of buildings which they had built; the Austrians also establishing the Sara and Danube once again as the boundary between the two empires"; see Ismail Uzuncarsili; op.cit., vol. 4, p.290. Para. 1, MAN., 1/273. Para. 2, cf. IBI., 6/12-13, from Tārīkh Nishātī.

Page No. 372.

L.1, ( قلمه جولان ) or ( قمره جولان ) "Kalla Dsjolan, eft la plus grande province de la partie due pais due Kurdistan, qui eft sujette au Sultan"; Niebuhr, op.cit., 2/268. Para. 2, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 4, loc. cit.

Page No. 373.

Para. 1, MAN., 1/283. L.2, ( تيمار ) Tīmār (P.); "tilling the earth, tending plants; agriculture; also it is a feudal fief of a yearly value less than 20,000 agche, formerly granted by the Ottoman's Sultan"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.619. Para. 2, MAN., 1/291-92, see also

SHAM., p.347. L.5, ( سراج ولي الموصل ) appears written " ولي السراج " in RAW., 2/58; and " سراج ولي زاده " in SHAM., p.347, n.1. Para. 3, MAN., 1/306, see also RAW., 2/403, and SHAM., pp.339-42. Para. 4, GHA., p.183. Para. 6-, MAN., 2/182-83.

Page No. 374.

Para. 1, MAN., 1/232, see also RAW., 1/246, and SHAM., p.352.  
Para. 2, MAN., 1/267-69, see also RAW., 2/36, and SHAM., pp.280-89.

Page No. 375.

L.1, ( نغل ) is p. his. (= 1080 A.H.). In MSS, it appears written by Fā' ( نفل ). L.2, ( انغل ) is p. his. (= 1081 A.H.). In MSS, it appears written by Fā' ( انفل ). The accurate p. his. is presented in the body of the text and the MSS versions in the apparatus. Para. 1, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit.  
Para. 2, MAN., 1/259-61; GHA., p.336; SHAM., pp.134-35; RAW., 1/579, see also SALK., 4/8 and Dīwān Ḥasan 'Abdul-Bāqī, op.cit., Suppl. No. 2, pp.127-30. Para. 3, MAN., 1/184. Para. 4, MUN., loc. cit., and SAL., loc. cit.

Page No. 376.

Para. 1, MAN., 1/162-63. Para. 5, ibid., 1/292-93.

Page No. 377.

Para. 1, cf. Sykes, op.cit., 11/372. L.7, ( شاه العجم ) is Karīm Khān of the Zand dynasty 1750-79 A.D.; see the biography of Karīm Khān Zand, and the historical analysis of his rule in John R. Perry, Karīm Khan Zand: A History of Iran 1747-79, Chicago, 1979. L.11,

( تومان ) Tūmān (P.) "The gold coin of Persia, valued at about eight shillings sterling and subdivided into ten thousand mites aqche"; Redhouse, op.cit., pp.614-15. Para. 3, Dawha, p.124, see also RAWD., fol. 166a. L.23, ( میرمیران ) Mīrmīrān: mīr from Amīr, mīrān is a lord, chief, or title given to a feudal chieftain or even to a chief personal attendant; Redhouse, op.cit., p.2053.

Page No. 378.

Para. 1, MAN., 2/170-71. Para. 2, ibid., 2/183. L.5, ( الرفاعي ): This is Aḥmad b. 'Alī b. Yahya al-Rifā'ī al-Husainī, Abū al-'Abbās; founder of the Rifā'ī Sūfī order, 512-78 A.H.; see Ibn Khalikān, 1/55. Para. 3, GHA., p.183. Para. 5, SALK., 4/179. Para. 7, SALF., fol. 46a. Para. 9, GHA., loc. cit., see also Longrigg, op.cit., p.169 and n.1. L.27, ( ابو ليله ) Abū Līlā: The historian Longrigg described his name. He says: "In most of his rapid and decisive campaigns whose midnight secrecy gained him the name of Abu Laila", Longrigg, op.cit., pp.168-69.

Page No. 379.

Para. 1, ZUB., pp.108-09. L.2, ( امين باشا ): This is Muḥammad Amīn Pasha al-Jalīlī. L.2, ( فتح بك ): This is Fattāḥ Bey b. Isma'īl Pasha al-Jalīlī, 1132-85 A.H. = 1729-72 A.D., see App. No. V. L.10, ( ناحية الهكاري ) or ( حكاري ) "Hakyārī (T.) vulg. hekyārī; name of a group of Kurdish tribes living in the mountains on the Persian frontier between Bayezid and Mosul; also, it is the name of a district in the province of Van"; Redhouse, op.cit., p.796. LL.13-16, "Maḥmūd I, twenty-fourth Ottoman Sultan reigned 1143-1168 A.H. = 1730-54 A.D. He was born on the 31st Muḥarram 1108 A.H. = August 2nd, 1696 A.D., the son of Sultan Muṣṭafā II; Maḥmūd died suddenly on Friday, 13th December 1754";

see En. 1, III/124-25. LL.17-19, " 'Uthmān III, twenty-fifth Sultan of the Ottoman Empire; son of Muṣṭafā II, succeeded his brother Maḥmūd I. on 14th December 1754"; see loc. cit.

Page No. 380.

Para. 1, ZUB., pp.230-32. Para. 2, MUN., loc. cit., see also SAL., loc. cit. Para. 3, It is called Jām' al-Pāshā in Mosul; cf. Daiwachī, Jawāmi'., p.180, see also Chalabī, Makhtūtāt.., p.46. L.21, ( مدرسة الباشا ): This school is known as al-Amīniyya Madr. in Mosul; see SUMER, vol. 18, 1962, pp.20-23. Para. 4, GHA., p.183., see also ZUB., p.110. Para. 5, loc. cit.

Page No. 381.

Para. 1, MAN., 2/194. Para. 2, ZUB., pp.112-13; MUN., p.84, 183, see also Lanza, op.cit., pp.36-37. Para. 3, MUN., loc. cit.; ZUB., p.114, see also Lanza, op.cit., p.34, and Ṣā'igh, op.cit., 1/290. L.15, ( مغلق ) is p. his. (= 1170 A.H.). Para. 4, cf. Lanza, op.cit., p.38. Para. 5, MUN., p.84, see also Lanza, op.cit., pp.37-38. L.18, ( عظم ) appears wrongly written ( عظيم ) in MUN., cf. loc. cit. Para. 6, loc. cit., see also SAL., p.86; In ZUB., the author ascribed this para. to the year 1169 A.H., cf. ZUB., p.111.

Page No. 382.

Para. 2, GHA., pp.183-84. L.7, ( الدنادية ) al-Danādīyya, the title of Yazīdī tribe living in the mountains of Mosul; see GHAR., p.100. Para. 3, SAIF., fol. 49b, see also MAN., 1/271 and SHAM., pp.335-338. L.12, ( جامع النوري ), al-Nūrī mosque or Jāmī' al-Kabīr, "The Great Mosque"; see above n, L.13, Text, p.327. Para. 5; MAN., 1/308, see also RAW., 2/420 and SHAM., pp.266-71.

Page No. 383.

Para. 1, QUR., fols. 72b-73a. LL.9-10, Sultan 'Uthmān III, died on 30th October, 1757; see En 1, III/1007-08; The principal source of Sultan 'Uthmān III's reign is (Tārīkh Wāṣif). LL.10-11, "Sultan Muṣṭafā III b. Sultan Aḥmad III, was born on 28th January, 1717 = 1129 A.H.; the twenty-sixth Sultan of the Ottoman Empire. He succeeded Sultan 'Uthmān III to the throne on 30th October, 1757 = 1171 A.H.; see Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XLIII, when he was forty years of age not fifty-two as the author Yāsīn records; cf. the Text with loc. cit. Para. 5, GHA., pp.333-34. Para. 6, ibid., p.338. Para. 7, MUN., p.84.

Page No. 384.

Para. 1, SALK., 1/51. LL.7-10, For historical details; see Lanza, op.cit., pp.42-44. LL.11-13, ibid., pp.44-6; The wazīr Ḥāj Husain Pasha al-Jalīlī died on 19th Dhul-qī'da, 1171 A.H. = 25th July, 1758 A.D.; see QUR., fol. 37a; SHAM., pp.88-91, n.2; Dīwān Hasan 'Abdul-Bāqī, Section No. 1, pp.115-16; Olson, op.cit., p.169; Longrigg, op.cit., p.157; IBI, 5/212, and Tārīkh Subhī, fol. 178, see also MAN., RAW., ZUB., ATH., SALK., and Dawha. L.15, (الروض النضر) for further details; see the introduction of RAW., 1/8-22. L.16, (راغب باشا) This is Rāghib Pasha, "Koca Mehmet" 1699-1763, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1756-63 A.D.; see Hammer, op.cit., 8/587; the historian Shaw states: "The only grand vezirate of any consequence during the period was that of Koca Mehmet Ragip Pasha 1699-1763, a learned and distinguished poet and an able administrator, although even he was not able to achieve permanent results"; Shaw, op.cit., 1/246. L.16, (دفتردار): "Defterdar: Head of the treasury". Para. 3, MAN., 1/305-06.

Page No. 385.

Para. 3, MUN., p.85. Para. 5, QUR., fol. 39b. Para. 7, In his

book, Alderson does not give any information about this Sultan's son who was born in 1172 A.H. but he does mention a daughter named Heybetullah who was born in 1172 A.H. = 1759 A.D.; the author Yāsīn probably means Salīm III b. Sultan Muṣṭafā III, who was born on 24th December, 1761 = 1175 A.H.; cf. Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XLIII.

Page No. 386.

L.2, ( جلك ): Chelik (T.), a bucket or a piece of wood or metal bevelled or tapering at one or both ends"; Redhouse, op.cit., p.729. Para. 2, MAN., 1/301-2, for further details; see SHAM., pp.330-34; RAW., 2/350 and SALK., 2/194. Para. 4, GHA., p.184. L.13, ( افراسياب ): "Efrāsiyāb (P.), name of an ancient Turkish or Turanian hero before the time of Alexander; King of Transoxiana killed by Keykhusrev"; Redhouse, op.cit., p.156. Para. 7, SAIF., fol. 46a, see also MAN., 1/284. L.25, ( جماد دجلة ): for details see Lanza, op.cit., pp.34-5 and Sā'igh, op.cit., 1/290.

Page No. 387.

L.9, ( دامت امطار وقط رفا ) is p. his. (= 1170 A.H.). L.18, ( الزاب ) is the lesser Zab river. L.20, ( نعمان باشا ): He is Nu'mān Pasha al-Halabī; see Thuraiya, Sejeli Osmani, 1/410. L.21, ( الدردار ): appears written ( الدردار ) in MUN., p.86. Para. 3, SAL. and Lanza mention that Nu'mān Pasha was appointed as Wālī of Mosul in 1172 A.H.; SAL. and Lanza wrongly named him "Nu'mān Pasha Jalīlī"; cf. SAL., loc. cit. and cf. Lanza, op.cit., p.48. L.27, ( مهنرخانه ) "Mihter Khaneh (P. + T.), a military band in the suite of a prince"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.2042.

Page No. 388.

Para. 2, RAWD., fol. 176a; SAL. does not mention Sulaimān Pasha

Chāngilī, cf. SAL., loc. cit., for details about Muṣṭafā Pasha Shāhisiwār; see MUN., p.86, and Lanza, op.cit., pp.55-56. Para. 5, MUN., 1/298-99; MAN., 1/298; RAW., 2/371 and SHAM., pp.319-23; his name appears written as: Abū Bakr al Khatīb b. Ibrāhīm; see SHAM. and MAN.

Page No. 389.

Para. 4, Dawha, p.123, see also GHA., p.184. In his book, Longrigg wrongly states that Sulaimān Pasha died in 1176 A.H. = 1762 A.D.; cf. Longrigg, op.cit., p.172. Para. 5, ZUB., p.117, see also Lanza, op.cit., p.51. Para. 6, ZUB., loc. cit., see also MUN., p.184. Sultan Salīm III was born on 24th December, 1761 A.D. = 1175 A.H.; cf. Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XLIII. L.24, ( ارخت محفوظا سليم ) is p. his. (= 1175 A.H.).

Page No. 390.

Para. 1, MUN., p.184; ZUB., pp.116-17; Lanza, op.cit., p.51. L.4, ( الى ايكى ) is the Janissary regiment No. 52. ( الى سكر ) is the Janissary regiment No. 58. ( اون انجى ) is the Janissary regiment No. 10, see Tab. No. XI. Para. 2, GHA., p.184; RAW., 1/8-22; ZUB., 120; SHAM., pp.84-7, n.1. L.25, ( فرشي ياخا ), Qarshī Yākhā is the western side of Baghdad, or Karkh, the old Baghdad city.

Page No. 391.

L.1, Banū Ka'b, Banū Lām, Khazā'il and Muntafiq are Irāqī-Arab tribes, dominating Southern Iraq; see Abbās al-'Azzāwī, 'Ashāir al-'Irāq - The Tribes of Iraq -, Baghdad 1955, III/206; for historical details, see Longrigg, op.cit., p.168, 171-8, 188-91, 93 n., 142, 132, see also Dawha, p.124. L.24, ( جامع اويس الفرنسي ) 'Uwais al-Qarani



Jāmi', in Mosul; see MUN., p.101; al-Khalyāt, Tarjamat al-Awliya', pp.64-6; MAN., 42/49; Daiwachī, Jawāmi'..., pp.165-70.

Page No. 392.

Para. 1, GHA., p.184. Para. 3, ibid., p.185; ZUB., p.121; Dawha, p.135. L.9, ( سليمان باشا ): This is Sulaimān Pasha b. Khālīd Pasha Bābān, one of the famous Bābān governors in Qara-julān; see Amīn Zakī, Tārīkh al-Sulaimaniyya, Baghdad 1951, pp.75-8. L.13, ( جرخى فلك ): "Cherkhi-falak (T. + P.), the spheres or a machine with several wheels; or a chevaux-de-frise"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.717. L.14, ( التفتكات ) Plural ( تفك ) Tufeng (T.), ( تفك ) (Vulg.), any firearm used from the shoulder". Para. 4, MAN., 1/242 43; RAW., 1/347, see also SHAM., pp.125-33, n.1 in p.125, and JIAS, vol. 13, 1965, and vol. 25, 1974, pp.209-49. L.22, ( وقعة طهماز ): This is the siege of Mosul by Nadīr Shah.

Page No. 393.

L.1, ( زال الروافض ) is p. his. (= 1156 A.H.). L.8, ( السلاية ) al-Sallāmiyya is a large village situated east of Mosul on the eastern bank of the Tigris"; MUN., p.151, and n.3; for a description of old Sallāmiyya, see Yāqūt, 5/104; "In modern centuries, " Sallāmiyya looks just on the declivity of the hills which then quit the river and run south-easterly towards Karakosh"; Rich, op.cit., 2/350. L.9, ( الشيخان ) al-Shaikh Khān is situated in the territory of 'Amādiyya north-east of Mosul; see ibid., 1/89. L.9, ( باعذرا ) Bā'idhrā, the Yazīdī village, situated east of Mosul; see MUN., p.136, and n.2. L.9, ( بداغ بك ): He is Budāgh Bey b. Mīrkhān Bey b. Sulaimān Bey, the Amīr of Yazīdis. L.10, ( الجراحي ) al Jarrāhī village is situated in the north-east of Mosul; see Jarrāhiyeh Castle in MUN., p.48, and n.2. Para. 4, GHA., p.185; ZUB., pp.121-2; Dawha, p.138. L.15, ( كاهيه ) Kāhya or Kahya or Kakhya are distorted from Kethūda, the deputy of a provincial governor.

Page No. 394.

L.14, ( المندلي ) al-Mendalī is situated in East Iraq; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-C3, for geographical details; see Niebuhr, op.cit., 2/267. L.16, ( قزرباد ) or ( قزرواط ) Kisrobad is situated in E. Iraq; see loc. cit.: it is Qizil Rubat in Longrigg, op.cit., p.276. It is known Zurbāṭiyah today. L.18, ( المكتوبجي ): "Mektūbju (T. + A.), title of the chief secretary of a ministry or of a province"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1954. Para. 10, cf. Lanza, op.cit., p.36.

Page No. 395.

Para. 4, ( محمد الغلامي ): This is Muḥammad Efendī b. Ḥusain al Ghulāmī, for further details; see SHAM., pp.173-77. Para. 5, MUN., p.185; ZUB., pp.123-24. L.12, ( عرب الاشمطا ) 'Arab al-Ishmtṭa were outside Old Mosul, near Jāmi' Nabī Shīth; the present Jūba; see ibid., p.123, n.2. L.18, ( المقاطعجي ) al-Muqāṭa'ajī (T. + A), a revenue-farmer; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1937. Para. 9, MAN., 2/188. L.23, ( الامام باهر ), The mausoleum of Imām Muḥammad al-Bāḥir b. Muḥammad al-Bāqir, was founded by Badr-i-Dīn Lu'lu', the governor of Mosul; see Majmu'., p.146, n.1; MAN., 2/79-80, see also; SUMER, 6/199-200; al-Khalīyyāṭ, op.cit., p.121, and MUN., pp.106-07.

Page No. 396.

Para. 1, GHA., p.264. Para. 3, MUN., p.185; the author ascribed this event to the year 1180 A.H. in ZUB., p.124. Para. 5, loc. cit., and RAWD., fol. 175b. Para. 6, loc. cit. Para. 8-, MAN., 2/181-82. L.23, ( تل كيف ): "Telkeif is a small town wholly inhabited by Chaldeans - many of whom go to Baghdad - and Mosul - to seek work and service"; see Rich, op.cit., 1/103.

Page No. 397.

L.14, ( له زاهيا لاشك ان الخلد مأواه ) is p. his. (= 1179 A.H.). Para. 1, cf. Kemp, op.cit., Tab. IV. Para. 2, GHA., p.263. L.23, ( المعدن ) al-Ma'dan is situated in Turkey.

Page No. 398.

Para. 2, GHA., p.184. L.14, ( دلي عباس ) Dallī 'Abbās is situated in Iraq. Para. 6, RAWD., fol. 175b, see also SHAM., p.45 n.2. L.25, ( الآن ) appears written ( اليوم ) in RAWD., loc. cit.

Page No. 399.

L.3, ( ظافر ) is p. his. (= 1181 A.H.). Para. 1, ZUB., p.125. Para. 5, This is the new struggles between the Ottomans and Russia; see Shaw, op.cit., pp.247-48; for historical details; see Wāsif, 1/281-315.

Page No. 400.

Para. 2, see "New Struggles with Russia and Austria 1768-1774", Shaw, op.cit., 1/247-8. L.14, ( بني الاصفر وهم المسقوف ) Banī al-Aṣfar or al-Misqūf are the Russians. L.14, ( فطمه شال ) Fatmashāl: She is Catherine the Great of Russia (1762-1796 A.D.), for further details, see loc. cit.; for the policies of Catherine II, and the Ottoman Empire; see, M.S. Anderson, Europe in the Eighteenth Century 1713-1783, 2nd ed., G. Britain 1979, pp.234-235.

Page No. 401.

Para. 1, RAWD, fol. 175b, see also SHAM., p.45 n.2. Para. 2, cf. Lanza, op.cit., pp.56-7. L.7, ( غنقب ) is p. his. (= 1182 A.H.). Para. 3, MAN., 1/238-9.

Page No. 402.

Para. 1, MUN., p.186. L.7, ( كندير ) Kindīr is a village situated in North Baghdad, near Dujail; see Yāqūt, 4/310. L.14, ( الجامع المنصوري ) or ( جامع المنصور ) in Mosul, for details; see Daiwachī, Jawāmi'., pp.157-9, see also Majmū'., pp.17-21. Para. 6, ZUB., p.126.

Page No. 403.

Para. 1, ZUB., pp.126-7, for historical details; see I.AN., 8/705, see also Tārīh Rāsim, 6/937-8 and SHAM., p.45, n.2, MAN., 1/168-74. Para. 2, RAWD., fol. 168a. Para. 3, cf. I.AN., 8/705. Para. 4, ZUB., p.125, see also I.AN., 8/705. L.16, ( الوزير الاعظم علي باشا ): This is 'Alī Pasha Hekimoglu, the Grand Vizir of the Empire 1689-1768; see I.AN., 1/333-35. L.20, ( مدينة ابرائيل ): "Brail (Roum.), Ibrail (T.) is a town situated in N.E. Wallachia; Eastern Romania at present"; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-E3. L.20, ( اسمعيل ): Izmail is a town situated in South Moldavia; see, M. Ashraf, op.cit., map of the Ottoman Europe. In his book, Pitcher does not mention this town, but he mentioned another Ismil which is a Turkish town, situated in Anatolia; cf. Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-B2.

Page No. 404.

Para. 1, MUN., p.186. Para. 2, ZUB., p.127; MUN., p.87, see also Lanza, op.cit., pp.66-9. L.4, ( نمان سنين ) appears written " تسع سنين " in loc. cit. Para. 2, ZUB., p.127. Para. 4, ibid., p.128. L.19, See above Bairām Bey; GHA., p.108. L.21, for Ismā'il Pasha; see ibid., pp.103-7, see also GHA., p.36.

Page No. 405.

Para. 1, ZUB., p.129, Rāsim, 6/938, see also MAN., 1/168-72.

L.2, ( مدينة اسحقجه ) Isaccea (Roum.), isakci (T.), Xanthi (Gk.), a town which is situated in East Romania near Moldavia. It is under the Russian rule today; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXIX-E3. It is wrongly written ( اسبقجه ) in ZUB., p.130. L.5, ( البندر ) Bender (T.), Tighin, Bendery at present, a town which is situated in E. Moldavia, N. Eyalet of Silistre; see ibid., map XXIX-E2. L.11, ( مدينة بونره بون ) Putra Būkh city, sic in DUR. This is St. Petersburg or Petrograd, then capital of the Russian Empire. L.14, ( قلعة كباكيز ) Kapakiz Castle. I was not able to find the situation of this castle. Para. 3, ZUB., p.131. Para. 4, loc. cit.

Page No. 406.

Para. 3, ZUB., p.131. Para. 4, ibid., p.234. Para. 5, ibid., p.132. Para. 6-, SHAM., pp.84-7, see also SALK., 3/164; MAN., 1/234; GHA., p.184, p.343. L.17, ( قلعة ارديش ) Ardish as it appears in DUR. It is Erçis Castle which is situated in N. Van Lack, see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-B1. L.21, ( راجب محمد باشا ) This is Koça Mehmet Ragip Pasha (1699-1763); Grand Vizir of the Ottoman Empire (1756-63); see Shaw, op.cit., 1/246-47. L.26, ( الحسكة ), al-Ḥasaka is an old town situated on the Euphrates, the present Dīwāniyya in S. Iraq; see SHAM., p.85, n.1; there is another Ḥasaka or Ḥaske which is situated in N. Syria; see Niebuhr, op.cit., 2/267.

Page No. 407.

L.2, ( تاتار ), tatar (T.): "Couriers sent in pairs, with important news, or through a dangerous road"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.472. L.6, ( عمر باشا ) for historical details; see Longrigg, op.cit., pp.172-177. Para. 1, QUR., fol. 84b. L.24, ( جامع جمشيد ) Jamshīd mosque is situated in Mosul; see Majmū'., pp.119-120, see also MUN., pp.25-6, n.1. Para. 3, MAN., 2/189-91. L.28, .

( قبة عيسى دده ), Maqām 'Isā Dada is situated in Mosul, on Tigris; for historical details, see MUN., p.121, n.1, see also MAN., 2/138, n.1; 172, n.2.

Page No. 408.

Para. 3, Muḥammad Pasha al-'Azm, the Wālī of Damascus (1772-1783 A.D., for historical details; see Karl K. Barbir, Ottoman Rule in Damascus 1708-58, p.139, 179. L.21, ( محلة التركمان ) al-Turkman quarter is situated in Southern Damascus, for further details; see ibid., pp.99-100, pp.168-69.

Page No. 409.

Para. 1, ZUB., pp.132-33. L.4, ( جردجي ) jerdejī (T.): "A horseman of escort that accompanies the pilgrims to Mecca; it is also, the chief of that escort"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.654. L.6, ( الصاليانجي ) Sāliyanchī (T.), a tax man; ibid., p.1030.  
Para. 2, ZUB., p.134. L.21, ( الملية ) al-Maliya is a Kurdish-Turkoman tribe, speaking Gīrmanjī and Zāzā'ī languages, they lived in the mountains between 'Urfa and Dīyār-Bīkr; see Amīn Zakī, Khulāṣat Tārīkh al-Kurd wal-Kurdistān, 1/400.

Page No. 410.

Para. 1, ZUB., p.134. Para. 2, loc. cit. Para. 3, ibid., pp.134-35.

Page No. 411.

Para. 3, ZUB., pp.136-37. Para. 4, SHAM., pp.290-5. L.23, ( جامع الوزير امين باشا ): It is the Pasha mosque in Mosul; see Majmū'., pp.196-97.

Page No. 412.

Para. 1, QUR., fol. 18a. Para. 3, MAN., 1/293.

Page No. 413.

Para. 2, MAN., 1/293-4. Para. 4, ZUB., p.137, n.1. Para. 5, loc. cit. Para. 7, MAN., 1/278-9. Para. 9, SHAM., pp.3-27. LL.24-8, Qurān, al-Mā'ūn Sūra, 107.

Page No. 414.

Para. 1, MAN., 1/304-05. Para. 7, QUR., fol. 85b. Para. 8, loc. cit.

Page No. 415.

Para. 1, SAIF., fols. 46b-47a, see also MAN., 2/195. Para. 4, MAN., 1/270. Para. 8, ZUB., p.137. Para. 9, "Sultan Muṣṭafā III died on the 21st of January, 1774, after a reign of sixteen years and five months"; see Spry, .. Chronicles of the Caliphs .., p.151. The author Yāsīn states that Sultan Muṣṭafā III ruled the Empire seventeen years.

Page No. 416.

Para. 1, ZUB., p.137. L.5, ( المهردار ) muhr-dar (P.): "A seal-keeper to a grandee"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.2045. L.5, ( السليحدار ) "Siliḥ-dār (P.). A sword-bearer, esquire"; see ibid., p.1069. L.6, ( امير القلعة ) : "A fugleman in military exercises"; ibid., p.1466. Para. 3, SHAM., pp.140-1. Para. 4, GHA., p.263. Para. 5, loc. cit. Para. 7, loc. cit. Para. 9, KHU., fol. 65a.

Page No. 417.

Para. 1, ZUB., p.235. Para. 2, SHAM., pp.113-14, see also SALK., 4/233. Para. 3, GHA., p.373. Para. 4, The author ascribes this event to the year 1188 A.H. in ZUB., p.138.

Page No. 418.

Para. 1, ZUB., p.138. Para. 3, loc. cit. L.14, ( سننا ) Sinna was a province of Kurdistan; see Rich, op.cit., 1/157. This appears to equate with ( سنندج ) Sinanduch, situated in N.W. Iran. Para. 4, ZUB., p.138, see also IBI., 6/16. Para. 5, ZUB., p.139.

Page No. 419.

L.2, ( زادك الله رفعة بل وقارا ) is p. his. (= 1188 A.H.). Para. 1, KHU., fol. 36b. Para. 2, ZUB., p.139. Para. 3, loc. cit. Para. 4, loc. cit. Para. 4, KHU., fol. 47b. Para. 5, MAN., 1/183-84.

Page No. 420.

Para. 1, GHA., pp.376-9. Para. 4, SHAM., pp.118-19. Para. 6, SALK., 3/219-28.

Page No. 421.

Para. 1, RAWD., fol. 168a. L.5, ( ازهاو ) or ( زهاو ) or ( زهاب ) Zihāw = Zihāb is a village and a central province; it is situated in Zagros mountains E. Iraq; IBI., 7/79; see also Longrigg, op.cit., pp.135-7, and see Shaw, op.cit., 1/250, EPWH., p.519. Para. 5-, MAN., 1/174-75; ZUB., p.140; RAWD., fols. 175b-176a; SHAM., p.145 n.1.



Page No. 422.

L.8, ( بولسف ) Būlf: I was not able to find the situation of this city; it is possibly (Byalov) which is situated on the northern edge of the Black Sea; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXX-B1. Para. 1, ZUB., p.237. Para. 2, ibid., p.141.

Page No. 423.

Para. 2, ZUB., pp.141-2.

Page No. 424.

Para. 1, MAN., 1/246, see also KHU., fol. 36b. Para. 2, QUR., fols. 21b-22a. Para. 4, K.K. Barbir, op.cit., p.179. Para. 5, SAIF., fols. 47b-84a.

Page No. 425.

Para. 1, Dawha, p.155, see also ZUB., pp.237-8. Para. 2, ZUB., loc. cit. Para. 3, loc. cit.

Page No. 426.

Para. 1, For historical details; see Daiwachī, "Sūr al-Mawṣil", SUMER, 3/1947. L.2, ( في سنة تسعين ) is p. his. (= 1190 A.H.). Para. 2, ZUB., p.142. Para. 3, ( مدرسة السلطان عبد الحميد خان ) Sultan 'Abdul-Hamīd Medr. is situated in Istanbul; see BZTI., F 6/3, p.58. Para. 6, ZUB., p.239. L.18, ( النبيلاوى ) appears as " النبيلاوى " in ZUB., loc. cit. L.23, ( البفلاق ) al-Baqqāq is a village, situated N. Mosul between Mosul and Duhūk.

Page No. 427.

Para. 1, SAIF., fol. 47a. Para. 2, Muḥammad b. Sultan 'Abdul-Ḥamīd was born 1190 A.H. = 21/8/1776 A.D., died 1195 A.H. = 20/2/1781; cf. Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XLIV. Para. 5, MAN., 1/278. Para. 6, ibid., 2/210-211. Para. 7, QUR., fol. 77a. L.16, ( كوی سنجق ) Kōysançak is a town situated E. Irbīl in Northern Iraq; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-C2.

Page No. 428.

Para. 3, RAWD., fol. 176b. Para. 4, ibid., fols. 168b-69a. Para. 5, ZUB., p.142. Para. 6, loc. cit. Para. 9, loc. cit.

Page No. 429.

Para. 1, ZUB., pp.142-43. L.4, ( بوزکـدی ) appears written ( بوزکـدک ) in GHA.; cf. GHA., p.188. Para. 4, MAN., 1/275-76, see also QUR., fol. 76a. L.24, ( مدرسه جامع الاغوات ), al-Khaḷīliyah Madr. in Mosul. It is established by Khalīl Aghā b. 'Abdul-Jalīl in 1702 A.D. = 1114 A.H.; Daiwachī, "Madāris al-Mawṣil...", SUMER, vol. 18, 1962, pp.16-17.

Page No. 430.

Para. 1, MAN., 2/216. L.6, ( فرقة التیارین ): "The Tiyārī group are a people of Nestorian Kurdish origin in N. Iraq"; see, W.A. Wigram, The Assyrians and their Neighbours, London 1929, Chap. VIII, pp.163-175, see also JAOS, 1851, No. 2, pp.71-75. Para. 7, cf. Longrigg, op.cit., pp.185-6. Ḥasan Pasha, Wālī of Baghdad 1192-93 A.H.; see Dawha, p.163, and IBI., 6/74-82. Para. 8, SHAM., pp.360-1, n.1, al-Qābījī's full name is " یوسف انا قاجی باشی "; cf. QUR., fol. 76a.

Page No. 431.

Para. 1, ZUB., p.144. Para. 2, MAN., 1/186-8; ZUB., p.144; SHAM., pp.168-9 n.2. L.21, ( اثنى سليمان يا سحق الشياطين ) is p. his. (= 1192 A.H.). Para. 3, MAN., 1/184. Para. 4, ZUB., p.145. Para. 5, loc. cit., see also MUN., p.188.

Page No. 432.

Para. 1, ZUB., p.145. Para. 2, QUR., fols. 76a-77b, see also SHAM., pp.360-1; MAN., 1/236, and RAW., 1/209. Para. 4, MAN., 2/183. Para. 5, MANH., fols. 102b-103a, see also QUR., fol. 79a-b and SHAM., pp.151-2, SALK., 3/258. Para. 8, ZUB., p.145.

Page No. 433.

Para. 2, MAN., 1/279. Para. 4, Salīm b. Sultan 'Abdul-Hamīd I was born 1193 A.H. = 1779 A.D., died young; see Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XLIV. L.11, ( شنلك ) "Shenlik (T.), Cheerfulness, or public rejoicings, illuminations, etc."; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1139. Para. 5, cf. John R. Perry, op.cit., p.172. Para. 6, see "Russian Annexation of the Crimea", Shaw, op.cit., 1/254-5; "That was the third Russian invasion which started earlier 1778 A.D. and in early 1779 the Ottoman government signed the Convention of Aynalı Kavak with Russia"; see A. Fisher, The Crimean Tatars, U.S.A. 1978, p.66; In his book, Shaw states "the convention has been signed on 9th Jan. 1784"; see Shaw, op.cit., 1/255. Para. 8, Muṣṭafā IV b. Sultan 'Abdul-Hamīd I was born 1193 A.H. = 8th Nov. 1779 A.D.; cf. Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XLIV.

Page No. 434.

Para. 1, cf. Longrigg, op.cit., p.185. Para. 2, IBI., 6/82. Para. 3, ibid., 6/83. Para. 4, ZUB., pp.148-9. Para. 5, cf. Chalabī, Makhtūtāt..., pp.46-71.

Page No. 435.

Para. 1, ZUB., p.147. Para. 2, loc. cit. Para. 3, loc. cit.  
 Para. 5, This is the European Catholic missionary movement in Mosul.  
 It was represented by three Dominican missionaries: al-Pātrī Rūfā'īl,  
 Yūsuf al Afnaṣ al-Pātirī and Yūsuf al-Halabī al-Tājir; see Kemp,  
op.cit., pp.32-3, and ZUB., p.142 and n.1, n.2; p.148 and n.1.  
 For further historical details; see B.M. Goormachtigh, Histoire de la  
Mission Dominicaine en Mesopotamia et en Kurdistan, Rome 1896.

Page No. 436.Page No. 437.

L.3, Sulaimān b. Sultan 'Abdul-Hamīd I, was born in 1193 A.H. =  
 17th March, 1779 A.D. He died in 1200 A.H. = 19th January, 1786  
 A.D.; see Alderson, op.cit., Tab XLIX. Para. 5, Dawha, p.171-2.  
 L.8, ( والي بغداد ): The Wālī of Baghdad is Sulaimān Pasha  
 al-Kabīr, one of the famous governors in Iraq. He ruled Baghdad  
 1194-1217 A.H.; see loc. cit., and Longrigg, op.cit., Chap. VIII  
 "Sulaiman the Great", pp.187-220. LL.20-22, ZUB., pp.148-9.

Page No. 438.

Para. 2, For further details; see QUR., fols. 20b-21b. Para. 4,  
ZUB., pp.241-42, also Dawha, pp.173-4, and IBI, 6/87. Para. 5,  
ZUB., p.242. LL.16-17, ( الشريف سرور ): This is Sharīf  
 Surūr b. Musā'id, the ruler of Mecca 1185-1202 A.H.; see ibid.,  
 p.242, n.2. Para. 6, ibid., p.149.

Page No. 439.

Para. 2, ( حسن ): This is Ḥasan al-Ḥamad; see QUR., fol. 22a. LL.6-7, ( نبي الله زكريا ) Zakariyyā the prophet; see SHA., fol. 103a. Para. 5, ZUB., pp.149-150, and IBI., 6/89, see also Dawha, p.175. L.14, ( الدربند ) "Derbent is a defile, situated in Qara-Dāgh mountain"; N.W. Iraq; see Rich, op.cit., 1/46. Para. 7, ZUB., p.150. Para. 8, loc. cit. L.23, ( ارزنجان ), Erzinjan is situated in Eastern Anatolia; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-D1.

Page No. 440.

Para. 1, In MUN., the author mentions that Sulaimān Pasha al-Jalīlī was released from his office in 1197 A.H.; cf. MUN., p.88, see also SAL., p.66. Para. 2, GHA., p.109. Para. 3, MAN., 2/176-79. L.7, ( جامع المنصوري ) al-Manṣūrī mosque is situated in Mosul; see ibid., 2/187-88; and Majmū'., p.17. Para. 4, ZUB., p.242; and Dawha, p.174. Para. 5, cf. Raslān ibn al-Qārī, "al-Wuzarā' al-Ladhīn Ḥakamū Dimashq": Wuḷāt Dimashq fī al-'Ahd al-'Uthmānī, ed. by Ṣalāḥ al-Dīn al-Munajjid, Damascus, 1949, pp.139. Para. 6, ZUB., pp.150-1. L.19, ( كرمليس ) "Kermalis, The Chaldean village, situated in Eastern Tigris near Mosul; see Rich, op.cit., 1/24-25. Para. 7, ZUB., p.151. L.22, ( اسماعيل باشا ), Ismā'īl Pasha b. Bahrām Pasha al-Kabīr, is one of the 'Amādiyya governors. He ruled 'Amādiyya 1182-1213 A.H.; see, GHA., p.107, and Damlūchī, Imārat Bahdīnān or Imārat al-'Amādiyya, Mosul 1952. LL.22-23, ( قرية شاقولي ) Shaqulī or Shāhqulī is a village situated to the East of Mosul; see MUN., p.153. In his edition of ZUB., I.A. Ra'uf wrongly states that this village is Shaqlāwa, a Kurdish small town, situated to the East of Irbīl; for description of Shaqlāwa; see Yāqūt, 3/308-9.

Page No. 441.

Para. 3, see ("Bābān" - family and dynasty -) in Longrigg, op.cit., pp.207-9; cf. also loc. cit., App. No. II. In this appendix, S. Longrigg does not mention Khālīd Bey, Aḥmad Bey and 'Umar Bey. .

Para. 5, MUN., loc. cit., and SAL., loc. cit. Para. 6, ZUB., p.153. L.23, ( السلطان ): This is Sultan 'Abdul-Ḥamīd I who ruled the Ottoman Empire 1774-1789 A.D. L.24, ( السلطان سليم ): This is Sultan Salīm III, who ruled the Ottoman Empire 1789-1807 A.D.

Para. 7, ( الوزير خليل باشا ): This is Khalīl Ḥamīd Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Ottoman Empire 1197-1199 A.H. = 1782-1784 A.D. "He was one of its reformers during the second half of the eighteenth century;" see En 2, 1/62-3. The historian S. Shaw states: "... The Grand Vizir - Halil Hamit - was involved in a plot to displace Abdul Hamit with his nephew, young Prince Selim, who appeared more receptive to modern reform and less susceptible to political pressure. Halil Hamit was dismissed and soon after executed by order of the Sultan (April 27, 1785)"; S. Shaw, op.cit., 1/257, while the author Yāsīn records that Khalīl Pasha was executed in 1198 A.H. = 1783-84 A.D.; cf. text of DUR. 1, but he is correct in DUR. 2; cf. Apparatus Criticus, pp.1046-8.

Page No. 442.

Para. 2, QUR., fol. 78a-b. LL.5-6, ibid., fol. 78b. Para. 3, MUN., p.196, and MAN., 1/261. Para. 5, MUN., p.88, see also SAL., loc. cit. L.15, ( سيواس ) Sivas is situated in Central Anatolia; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-C1. L.15, ( قرض ) Kars is situated in Southern Anatolia; see ibid., map XXV-C2. Para. 6-, MUN., pp.329-30, and MAN., 1/195-6.

Page No. 443.

Para. 2, ZUB., p.243. Para. 4, ibid., pp.243-4. L.20, ( الجزيرة ) is Jazīrat ibn 'Umar.

Page No. 444.

Para. 1, For historical details about Sharīf Ghālīb of Mecca; see Ahmad Zainī Daḥlān, Khulāṣat al-Kalām fī Bayān 'Umarā' Baitullāh al-Ḥarām, Cairo 1305 A.H., p.76. L.4, ( سوق الليل ) Sūq al-Lail is situated in Mecca. Para. 4, GHAR., p.14, see also MUN., pp.189-90, and ZUB., pp.154-5. L.18, ( عبدی باشا ) appears written ( عبد الباقي باشا ) in GHAR., loc. cit.

Page No. 445.

Para. 1, GHAR., p.14, see also MUN., pp.190-1.

Page No. 446.

LL.1-5, GHAR., p.15. L.5, ( صاغة ) Ṣāgha, the Ottoman coin, used in Mosul; for further details see I.A. Ra'ūf, al-Mawsil fī al-'Ahd al-'Uthmānī, Najaf, 1975, Supplement No. 15, pp.561-63. Para. 2, GHAR., loc. cit. Para. 3, loc. cit. L.12, ( اتباع ) appears as ( امراء ) in loc. cit. Para. 4, loc. cit., see also ZUB., p.244. L.13, ( الشاوي ) : He is Shaikh Sulaimān b. 'Abdullāh b. Shāwī al-Ḥimyarī, Amīr of 'Ubaīd tribe in Iraq; see, 'Amin al-Ḥilwānī, Mukhtasar Maṭālī' al-Su'ūd bitīb Akhbār al-Wālī Dawūd, Cairo 1371 A.H., p.20-1. L.14, ( ابن الخرندة ) : This is Ahmad al-Zakī b. al-Khirbanda, died 1211 A.H.; see, ibid., p.31, see also Dawha, p.170-1. Para. 6, GHAR., p.16, and ZUB., p.158. Para. 7, GHAR., p.17.

Page No. 447.

Para. 1, GHAR., p.17. Para. 2, loc. cit. Para. 3, loc. cit., for details about the rebellion of Ḥājī Sulaimān Bey 1786-1787 A.D., see Lorimer, op.cit., 1/1273. L.10, ( الفلوجه ) al-Fallūja town is

situated in S. Anbār of Iraq; Taq, p.51, see also Le Strange, op.cit., Chap. 4 "Iraq". Para. 4, GHA., pp.17-18, ZUB., pp.158-9. L.16, ( موش ) Mūsh is situated in E. Anatolia; see, Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-B1. Para. 5, GHA., p.18. L.24, ( کوسرى ) or ( کيسرى ) Kyupru, a bridge; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.158a.

Page No. 448.

LL.1-4, GHA., p.18. L.4, ( عمرت للموصل كبرى بما ) is p. his. (= 1201 A.H.). Para. 1, GHA., loc. cit. L.9, ( تفنكجى ) tufekji (T.), a policeman; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.574. L.9, ( باشى ) bāsh or bāshī (T.), the head; see ibid., p.324. Para. 3, cf. Majmū'..., p.11. Para. 4, SAIF., fol. 74a-b. L.14, ( مدرسة الاديب احمد افندى ابن ملا بكر ) : This Madr. was called al-Ahmadiya. It is situated near Bāb al-Sarrāy in Mosul; see al-Chalabī, Makhtūtāt., pp.22-3, see also Daiwachī, Madāris al-Mawṣil., part II, SUMER, p.251, and MAN., 1/290-1. L.17, ( مدرسة الاديب الحاج زكريا التاجر ) : This Madr. is situated near Bāb al-Jadīd in Mosul; see Majmū'..., p.60, and GHA., loc. cit. Para. 6, GHA., p.19, and ZUB., pp.159-160. L.21, ( زاخو ) Zākhū is a Kurdish town, situated in N. Iraq; see Rich, op.cit., 1/123. Para. 7, ZUB., p.160. L.21, ( اخوتنه ) : His brothers are: Tayfūr Beg, Lutf-fallāh Beg, Ḥājī-Khan Beg and Ḥasan Beg, for biographical details about them; see GHA., pp.102-3.

Page No. 449.

Para. 2, GHA., p.18. Para. 3, ibid., p.19, see also Dawha, pp.199-200, and Lorimar, op.cit., 1/1274-5. L.15, ( الامير ثويني ) This is Shaikh Thuaīnī b. 'Abdullāh b. Muḥammad b. Mānī' Āl Shabīb, the leader of Muntafik tribe in S. Iraq 1193-1203 A.H.; see Mukhtaṣar Matāli al-Su'ūd., pp.41-4; Dawha, p.188, 189, 190, and Lorimar, loc. cit. Para. 4, This is the war with Russia and Austria, 1787-1792 A.D.,



see Shaw, op.cit., 1/258-260. L.23, ( يوسف باشا ): This is Koça Yūsuf Pasha (d. 1800 A.D.); Grand Vizir of the Ottoman Empire 1786-1789 A.D.; see ibid., p.351.

Page No. 450.

Para. 1, G HAR., p.19, see also ZUB., p.161. Para. 2, G HAR., loc. cit. Para. 3, loc. cit. L.4, ( جامع محمد باشا ): This is Jāmi' al-Zīwānī in Mosul. Paras. 4,5,6,8, loc. cit. LL.16-17, ( مدينة شوش ) Shūsh town is situated in Iqlīm al-Jazīra; see Taq., p.274. L.19, ( جامع اخزام ) Khuzām mosque is situated in Mosul; see Majmū'..., p.95 n.3. Para. 9, QUR., fol. 21b, see also G HAR., loc. cit.

Page No. 451.

Para. 1, G HAR., p.19. Para. 2, QUR., fols. 79b-80a, see also G HAR., loc. cit. Para. 5, G HAR., p.20. Para. 6-, cf. Daiwachī's introduction to MAN., 1/14-48, and Kemp, op.cit., pp.205-215, JIAS., 6/228-9, S.A. Aḥmad, op.cit., 1/206, 208, 250. 2/159, 198. 4/118, 121, 206. 5/85. 123, 324. 6/129, 168, 229, 236, 241, 247, 249. 7/50, 160, 196, 199. 8/72, 75, 84, 122, 131, 174, 414. LL.20-21, The correct title of this book is: " زهرة الفنون ونزهة العيون "; cf. JIAS., 6/228. L.21, The full title of ( مواقع النجوم ) is: " مطالع العلوم ومواقع النجوم "; cf. S.A. Aḥmad, op.cit., 2/198. LL.23-24, " الكشف والبيان عن مشايخ هذا الزمان " in MAN., introduction, 1/30. L.24, The correct title of ( رسالة في حل ..... ) is: " تيجان التبيان في مشكلات القرآن "; see ibid., 1/23-4, and S.A. Aḥmad, op.cit., 1/206. L.24, The correct title of ( الفريدة العبرية ) is " البديعة العبرية "; see 'Uthmān al-Hayā'ī al-Jalīlī, al-Hijja fī man Zāda 'alā Ibn Hijja, ed. by S. al-Jalīlī, Mosul 1937. L.24, The full title of ( سراج الملوك ) is: " سراج الملوك " which is originally compiled by Yahya Aghā al-Jalīlī who

died before he finished this work; (this work is preserved in the British Museum Library, No. 23306). Muhammad Amīn al-'Umarī completed this work, but his copy is lost; see, MAN., 1/22. L.25, The full title of ( منهل الصفا ) is: " مسرحة الوفا ومنهل " ; see, present thesis, introduction, chap. 2, n.113. L.25, The correct title of ( كتاب في علم العروض ) is: " المناهل الصافية في علي العروض والقافية "; cf. MAN., 1/31.

Page No. 452.

Para. 1, MAN., 1/277-8. Para. 2, KHU., fol. 37a.

Page No. 453.

Para. 1, GHAR., p.21. LL.9-10, ( جامع الحاج اسود ): This mosque is called Jāmi' 'Umar al-Aswad or Jāmi' Shahr-Sūq, which is situated in old Mosul; see Majmu'..., p.91 and n.2. Para. 3, Makhtūtāt...., pp.190-203 and SUMER, 19/36-7. Para. 4, GHAR., p.19. Para. 5, Daḥlān, op.cit., p.126. Para. 7, GHAR., pp.19-20.

Page No. 454.

Para. 2, "Sultan 'Abdul-Ḥamīd I was born 5 Radjab 1137 A.H. = 20 March 1725 A.D., he succeeded his brother Sultan Muṣṭafā III, 8 Dhul-Qa'da 1187 A.H. = 21 January 1774 A.D., he died 11 Radjab 1203 A.H. = 7 April 1789 A.D."; see, En 2, 1/62-3. LL.4-5, ( السلطان سليم ) : This is Sultan Salīm III, 1789-1807 A.D. Para. 5, GHAR., p.22. L.14, ( السليمانية ) al-Sulaimāniyya is situated N.E. Iraq: it was founded in 1199 A.H. = 1785 A.D. by Ibrāhīm Pasha Bābān, governorat Qara-Julān. Para. 6, MAN., 1/293-5, see also Sā'iḡh, op.cit., 2/203, 204.

Page No. 455.

Para. 2, G HAR., loc. cit. L.5, ( اليزيديين ): "The Yazīdīs are a minority in Northern Iraq. The religion of them, who are a people of Kurdish origin, is basically synthetic and comprises Zoroastrian, Manichean, Nestorian, Moslem and other elements. The centre of their religious life is the sanctuary of their saint, Shaikh 'Ādī, near Shaikhān or 'Ain Sifnī to the north-east of Mosul, and the countryside of Sinjar", see Ṣ. al-Damlūchī, al-Yazīdiyya, Mosul 1949; see also Estimate based on figures given in Iraq, Ministry of Social Affairs, Census of Iraq - 1947, Baghdad 1954. L.8, ( برطلة ) Bartilla is a small town, situated several miles E. Mosul; see Yāqūt, 4/683, and see Le Strange, op.cit., map No. 3, Chap. 6, "al-Jazira" ; see also MUN., p.131 and n.2. Para. 3, G HAR., p.22. He is Malik Muḥammad Pasha; see Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.467; present thesis, App. No. IV. Para. 4, G HAR., loc. cit., and see BAY., fol. 93b. Para. 5, G HAR., p.23. Para. 6, loc. cit.

Page No. 456.

Para. 1, loc. cit. Para. 3, MAN., 1/279. Para. 5, G HAR., loc. cit. L.23, ( عبدة الشيطان ) are the Yazīdīs. Para. 6, loc. cit.

Page No. 457.

Para. 1, G HAR., pp.23-4, see also ZUB., p.166. L.1, ( سليمان باشا ): This is Sulaimān Pasha al-Kabīr, Wālī of Baghdad 1194-1217 A.H. L.7, ( الشيخ محمد الغزلاني ): The tomb of Shaikh Muḥammad al-Ghizlānī is situated one mile south of old Mosul; see MAN., 2/110-111 and MUN., pp.115-116, and n.2. L.22, ( السركجية ): al-Sarkachiyya is a Kurdish tribe, lived E. Diyār-Bakr; see M.A. Zakī, Khulāṣat Tārīkh al-Kurd wa-l Kurdistān, p.401. " سرکجی " Sergiji (T.): "A keeper of a stall for the sale of wares", see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1054.

Page No. 458.

Para. 1, GHAR., p.24. L.2, ( بجاغ ) Buchāgh tribe are lived near Diyār Bakr; see loc. cit. Para. 2, loc. cit. L.9, ( خديجه سلطان ) This is Khadīja (Hadīce) Sultan, daughter of Sultan Muṣṭafā III. She was born in 1182 A.H. = 1788 A.D. = 1202 A.H.; cf. Alderson, op.cit., Tab. XL.III. Para. 4, GHAR., p.24. L.14, ( الكيكية ) al-Kīkiyya is a Kurdish tribe, lived in N. Iraq; see M.A. Zakī, op.cit., p.401. Para. 5, GHAR., loc. cit. Para. 6, ibid., pp.24-5. L.20, ( الجردجي ) "Jerdeji (T.): "A horseman of the escort that accompanies the pilgrims to Mecca; or, the chief of that escort"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.654. Para. 7, loc. cit. Para. 8, MAN., 1/886-8; see also GHA., pp.373-5 and 'Uthmān al-Hayā'ī, op.cit., pp.94-6.

Page No. 459.

Para. 1, GHAR., p.25. Para. 2, loc. cit.; ZUB., pp.167-8. Paras. 3,4,5, GHAR., loc. cit. Para. 6, ibid., p.26. L.24, ( الجانكلي ) is mistakenly written ( الجافكلي ) in loc. cit. Para. 7, loc. cit. L.26, ( والي السليمانية ) appears ( والي قرة جولان ) in ZUB., p.169.

Page No. 460.

Paras. 1,2,3 and 4, see GHAR., loc. cit. Para. 5, MAN., 1/18. Paras. 6,7,8,9,10, GHAR., p.27. Para. 11, RAW., 1/496; MAN., 1/257, and SHAM., pp.178-183.

Page No. 461.

Para. 1, GHAR., p.28. Para. 3, loc. cit. Para. 4, ibid., p.29. Para. 5, loc. cit. and see ZUB., p.170. L.8, ( الفيلفة الماوية ) al-Māwliyyah is a Turkuman tribe who lived in Talla'far, N.W. of Mosul.

Para. 6, GHAR., pp.29-30. L.11, ( قلعة فنك ) Fanag is a Kurdish Castle, situated near 'Amadiyya in N. Iraq. Para. 7, GHAR., p.30. Para. 8, ibid., pp.28-9.

Page No. 462.

Para. 1, GHAR., p.30. L.3, ( مصطفى باشا ): This is Qabūdān Muṣṭafā Pasha. L.3, ( مسكت ) Miskut is a village, situated near Raqqā; see Yāqūt, 4/531. Para. 2, MAN., 1/299-301, and GHA., p.365. Para. 3, GHAR., p.31, and ZUB., p.171. Para. 4, SAIF., fol. 47a-b. Para. 5, GHAR., loc. cit. and ZUB., pp.171-2. L.26, In GHAR., the author mentions " سبعة " instead of ( اثنان ); cf. GHAR., loc. cit.

Page No. 463.

Para. 1, GHA., p.103. L.2, ( جبل الزيبار ) al-Zībār mountain is situated near 'Aqra, E. Mosul. Para. 3, GHAR., p.31, and ZUB., p.248. L.6, ( الطنار الموصلی ) Mosulī Tughār (= 270 kg); see ZUB., p.172 n.2. Para. 4, GHAR., loc. cit. Para. 5, see loc. cit., and ZUB., p.172. Para. 6, KHU., fol. 47b, and GHAR., loc. cit. Para. 7, The French Revolution is normally assumed to have lasted from summer of 1789 A.D. to the autumn of 1799 A.D.; for historical details, see A.W. Palmer, A Dictionary of Modern History 1789-1945, G. Britain 1962, pp.131-3, and EWH, pp.627-635. L.25, ( قتلوا ملهم ): The Execution of Louis XVI, 1793, Jan. 21; see AEWH, p.631, also F. Furet and D. Richet, French Revolution, Woking 1970.

Page No. 464.

Para. 3, GHAR., p.32. L.6, ( اللاتقية ) or ( اللاذقية ) Latakia is situated in W. Syria; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-A2.

L.7, ( السلطان سليم ) This is Sultan Salīm III; see Present Thesis, App. No. II. Para. 6, KHU., fol. 249a, and GHAR., p.33. Para. 7, GHAR., loc. cit. and ZUB., p.173. L.17, ( المهركان ) al-Mahirkān is a Kurdish-Yazidis tribe, lived in the mountains of Sinjār, N.W. Mosul. Para. 9, GHAR., loc. cit. and ZUB., pp.173-4.

Page No. 465.

L.3, ( مست ) "Mest (T.), means soleless boot, worn in the house or inside of over-shoes"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.1830. L.4, ( من ) Mann (A.), prul. ( انسان ), a weight of about two pounds avoirdupois; see ibid., p.1982. Para. 2, GHAR., pp.33-4. L.8, ( بقجه ) or " بوقچه " "Boqcha (T.): a bundle in a wrapper or a small cubicle bale of tobacco, of about fifteen pounds avoirdupois"; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.403. Para. 5, GHAR., p.34. L.19, ( جرم ) Carum is situated near Amasya, in N. Turkey; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-C1. ( جرم ) is wrongly written " قرم " in GHAR.; cf. GHAR., p.34. L.20, ( خندق ) Hendek is situated in N.W. Turkey; see Pitcher, op.cit., map IX-C1. L.20, ( حاج حمزة ) Haçîhamza is situated in N. Turkey; see ibid., map XXV-C1. Para. 6, GHAR., p.34. Para. 7, loc. cit.

Page No. 466.

Para. 1, GHAR., loc. cit., and see UMM, fol. 48b; see also GHA., p.43; I.A. Ra'uf, al-Mawsil fī al-'Ahd al-'Uthmānī, pp.413-4, and see Kemp, op.cit., pp.298-300. L.2, ( الروهابي ) This is Shaikh Muḥammad Ibn 'Abdul-Wahhāb, father of the Wahhābī movement, for historical details; see Longrigg, op.cit., pp.212-7. L.4, ( دلائل الخيرات ), the full title of this book is: " دلائل الخيرات " "Dala'il al-Khayrat", it is compiled by Muḥammad Ibn Sulaimān Ibn al-Jazūlī, (d. 870 A.H. = 1765 A.D.) see Spiridonakis,

op.cit., p.467, for L.9, ( يوسف باشا ): This is Yūsuf Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Ottoman Empire 1205-6 A.H. Para. 2, GHAR., loc. cit. Para. 5, ibid., p.35. Para. 6, loc. cit.

Page No. 467.

Para. 1, GHAR., p.35, and ZUB., pp.174-5. L.1, ( قبيلة الزرارية ) al-Zirāriyya is a Kurdish tribe, originally Arabs, lived between Arbīl and Koi-Sanjaq in N. Iraq; see A. 'Azzāwī, 'Ashā'ir al-'Irāq, Baghdad 1937, 2/153, see also M. Zakī, op.cit., 1/385. L.1, ( قبيلة اللك ) al-līk is a Kurdish tribe, lived near Arbīl in N. Iraq; see A. 'Azzāwī, 'Ashā'ir al-'Irāq, 2/215, and see M.A. Zakī, op.cit., 1/432. L.2, ( نهر الخازر ) al-Khāzīr river is situated between Mosul and Arbīl; see Yāqūt, 4/388; for geographical description of al-Khāzīr river; see J. Perkins in JAOS, 2/99-101. L.2, ( البوطان ) or ( البوط ) al-Būtān is a Kurdish tribe, lived in N.E. Mosul; see M.A. Zakī, op.cit., 1/392. L.2, ( الداودية ), ( الموسى ), and ( الشكرية ) are Kurdish tribes lived in the plain of Mosul. Para. 3, GHAR., p.35. Para. 4, loc. cit. LL.14-15, ( عزت محمد باشا ) 'Izzat Muḥammad Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Empire, 1209-13 A.H.; see Spiridonakis, loc. cit. Para. 7, GHAR., pp.35-6. Para. 8, ibid., p.36. L.24, ( تاتار ) Tātār or ( تاتار ) Tatār (in L.28) (T.) it means a courier; especially, a government courier; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.472.

Page No. 468.

Para. 1, GHAR., p.36. Para. 2, ibid., pp.36-7. L.13, ( الجلاب ) al-Jullāb is a village, situated near Ḥarrān in al-Jazīra district; see Yāqūt, 2/94. L.14, ( دارا ) Dārā is a town, situated between Mārdīn and Nūsāibīn in al-Jazīra district; see ibid., 2/516-7. Para. 4, cf. IBL, 6/114. Para. 5-, GHAR., p.37, and ZUB., p.176.

Page No. 469.

Para. 1, G HAR., pp.37-8, and ZUB., pp.176-7. L.7, ( قرية النمرود ) al-Nimrūd village is situated in the plain of Mosul, 18 miles S.E. Mosul, on the east bank of the Tigris. This is by the site of the ancient Nimrūd which was the second Assyrian capital 883-783 B.C.; see M.E.L. Mallowan, Nimrud and its Remains, vols. 1, 2, London 1966.

Para. 3, G HAR., p.37, and ZUB., p.176, also MUN., p.191. L.12, ( كوشك ) "Kyushk (T.), a small building intended for pleasure or recreation; or a small palace; see Redhouse, op.cit., p.2595. Para. 4, G HAR., p.38. L.13, ( الشاه فخر محمد خان الطواشي ): This is Agha Muhammad, Shah of Iran 1794-7 A.D. and the father of the Qajār dynasty 1794-1925 A.D. "He was crowned in 1796 A.D., a brutal, avaricious, and ambitious chieftain. He managed to suppress a revolt in Georgia, and also to reduce Khurasan, but his successful military operations were cut short by his assassination, 21 Dhul Qī'da 1211 A.H.;" En 1, 11/613-4; see also Sykes, op.cit., 2/159, 270, 277, 289.

L.16, ( اولاد الشاه كريم خان ) son of Karīm Khan was Lutf 'Alī Khan, last of the Zand dynasty in Iran 1789-1794 A.D. He was unable to get the better of his rivals, and finally defeated and killed by Aghā Muhammad; see loc. cit.

Page No. 470.

Para. 1, G HA., p.192 and cf. IBI, 6/113-8. Para. 2, G HAR., p.37. Paras. 5-6, ibid., p.39. L.17, ( مدينة شوشا ) Shūshā is a town, situated in Karabagh of Caucasia, N. Azerbaijan; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXI-C3. L.21, ( البيرة ) al-Bīra (A.), Birecik (T.) is a town situated near Urfā in S. Turkey; see ibid., map XXXII-A2. LL.23-4, ( جبال الخالديّة ) al-Khālīdiyya is a village, situated N. Mosul; see Yāqūt, 2/390.



Page No. 471.

Para. 1, GHAR., p.39, and cf. IBI, 6/116-7. L.4, ( قَرِه حصار ) or " افیون قَرِه حصارى " Afyan-Karahisar (T.) is a Turkish town, situated in central Anatolia; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-B2; see also M. Ashraf, op.cit., map of Anatolia. Para. 2, GHAR., loc. cit. Para. 3, loc. cit. and GHA., p.193.

Page No. 472.

Paras. 1, 2, 4 and 9, see GHAR., p.40.

Page No. 473.

Para. 1, BAY., fol. 93b, and see GHA., pp.325-7; also SHAM., pp.168-9 n.2. L.10, ( توفی سلیمان الوزير کریم ) p. his. (= 1211 A.H.). Para. 2, GHAR., p.41. Para. 3, GHA., p.193. Paras. 4-5, loc. cit. L.18, ( مدینة اورمیی ) Urmī or Urmiyā town is situated in Kurdistan-Iran; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-C2. Para. 6, MAN., 1/294. Para. 7, GHA., pp.193-4, and cf. Dawha, p.367. Para. 8-, GHAR., p.141.

Page No. 474.

Para. 1, GHAR., p.41. Para. 2, In GHAR., the author ascribed this event to the year 1110 A.H.; cf. ibid., p.40. Para. 5, ibid., p.41. L.18, ( قرية تل اسود ) Tal-Aswad is a village, situated in the plain of Mosul; see MUN., p.139. Paras. 6-7, GHAR., p.42. L.26, ( سقز ) Saqiz or Sakiz Island is situated in the Aegean Sea; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-A2, see also M. Ashraf, loc. cit. There is another Sāqiz which is a Kurdish town, situated in Kurdistan - Iran; see TAW., plate 32.

Page No. 475.

Paras. 1-2, GHAR., p.42. Para. 6, ibid., p.44.

Page No. 476.

Paras. 1-2, GHAR., p.44. L.19, ( قمر الزارة يمنية لمحمد )  
 is p. his. (= 1212 A.H.). L.20, ( رقم الزارة يمنية لمحمد )  
 is p. his. (= 1212 A.H.). L.21, ( يمن الزارة رقمه لمحمد )  
 is p. his. (= 1212 A.H.). Para. 3, ibid., p.45.

Page No. 477.

Paras. 1, 2 and 3, loc. cit. L.13, ( تنزيلات على روى الموشح )  
 plur. ( تنزيلة ): the Mosulī Tanzīla, is the post-classical strophic  
 form, as Muwashshah, but specially in praise of the prophet Muḥammad.  
 The historical root of this Arabic poetical form belonged to the Atābek  
 era of Mosul, during the 12th century. Para. 6, GHAR., p.46.  
 L.16, ( منارة الطويلة ): The long minaret of al-Kabīr  
 al-Nūrī mosque in Mosul. Para. 7-8, loc. cit. Para. 9,  
 ( جامع حامد ومحمود ): This is al-Maḥmūdāin mosque in Mosul.  
 For further details; see MUN., p.105, and MAN., 2/70-3; see also  
Majmū', p.89, and Daiwachī, Jawāmi' al-Mawsil, pp.223-5; for  
 details about the school of this mosque; see SUMER, 18/26.

Page No. 478.

Paras. 1,2,3,4,6,7 and 8, GHAR., p.46.

Page No. 479.

Para. 3, ibid., p.47. L.11, ( الكوى ) Koy or Koysançak  
 (= Koy Sanjaq), is situated E. Arbīl in N. Iraq; see Pitcher, op.cit.,  
 map XXXII-C2. L.12, ( حرير ) Harīr is situated in Kurdistān -  
 Iraq; see JAOS, 2/101. Para. 7, GHAR., loc. cit.

Page No. 480.

Para. 1-, loc. cit.

Page No. 481.

-Loc. cit., L.5, ( ادھوك ) Duhūk is a Kurdish town situated N. Mosul; for details, see Rich, op.cit., 1/98. L.24, ( جامع ) This is al-Nu'māniyya mosque in Mosul; see D. al-Chalabī, Makhtūtāt., pp.222-7, and Majmū', p.21.

Page No. 482.

Para. 1, G HAR., p.48. L.9, ( المشهد ) al-Mashhad is the shrine of al-Husain in Karbalā' of Iraq. Para.4-6, loc. cit. L.18, ( الخوي ) Khoy is situated in Azerbaijan; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-C1.

Page No. 483.

Para. 1, G HAR., p.48. Para. 3, SAIF., fol. 95a. Para. 5, G HA., pp.363-4. Para. 6, G HAR., loc. cit.

Page No. 484.

Paras. 2-3, This is the French conquest of Egypt under the leadership of Napoleon Bonaparte: seizing Alexandria on July 2, 1798 A.D. and the French army began the march to Cairo (= Miṣr in Text), which controlled by them after the battle of the Pyramids, July 21, 1798 A.D. The Mamluks of Egypt were dispersed. After these operations, Bonaparte crossed the desert from Egypt into Syria, and seized Gaza and Jaffa. The French army destroyed the Ottoman army near Nazareth but were arrested at Acre (= 'Akkā), the place which they could not take by siege. After two months of struggle for Acre which was under Ahmad Pasha Jazzār,

Bonaparte led his army back to Cairo in a memorable march, covering 300 miles in 26 days. He had sacrificed 5000 men; see Shaw, op.cit., 1/268-9; for historical details; see J. Christopher Herold, Bonaparte In Egypt, London 1963.

Page No. 485.

L.3, GHAR., p.49. Para. 3, loc. cit. L.10, ( قونيه ) Qūnya Kunye (T.), is situated in N.E. Anatolia; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-D1. Paras. 8-10, GHAR., p.50. Para. 11, ibid., pp.50-1.

Page No. 486.

Para. 1, ibid., p.51, see also Shaw, op.cit., 1/269. L.1, In GHAR., the author records the following information: "اتفق مع السلطان سليم قرال الانكروس وقرال النمسا وغيرهم على محاربة الفرنسيين"; cf. loc. cit. Paras. 2-4, loc. cit. L.6, ( قنصر ) Qunsur for "قنصل": a European Consul. Para. 5, loc. cit.

Page No. 487.

Para. 1-3, loc. cit. L.1, In GHAR., the author writes the following information: "ارسل والي بغداد الى الوزير الاعظم يوسف باشا هدية سنية"; cf. loc. cit., see also Apparatus Criticus, pp.1148-50. Para. 7-9, GHAR., p.52.

Page No. 488.

Para. 2, loc. cit. L.5, ( اسليميه ) Slimiye (T.), is situated S.W. Anatolia; see Pitcher, op.cit., map VIII-B3. Para. 3-, GHAR., pp.52-3.

Page No. 489.

L.10, ( السيفانية ) appears written "السيفانية" in GHAR., p.53. Para. 2, QUR., fol. 21a, and see SHAM., pp.184-7;

R. al-Ghulāmī, al-'Alam al-Sāmī fī Tarjamat al-Shaikh Muḥammad al-Ghulāmī, Mosul, 1942, p.13. L.19, ( الخوصر ) appears written " الحوضر " in SHAM., cf. p.148. L.24, ( الرابعية ) al-Rābi'iyya Madr., or Dār al-Qur'ān al-Rābi'iyya, was founded in Mosul 1180 A.H. = 1766 A.D., by Rābi'a Khātūn, daughter of Ismā'il Pasha al-Jalīlī; see SUMER, "Daiwachī, Madāris al-Mawṣil", vol. 18, 1962, p.19.

Page No. 490.

Para. 1, G HAR., p.53. L.1, ( قرية جبران ) Jubrān village is situated N.E. Mosul. It is mentioned " جبران " in MUN., p.141, " حبران " in G HAR., loc. cit. Para. 2, loc. cit. Para. 3-5, ibid., p.54.

Page No. 491.

Paras. 1-4, G HAR., p.55.

Page No. 492.

Para. 1, loc. cit. Para. 2-5, ibid., p.56. L.3, ( القابجى ) "Qapıci (T.) who habitually snatches or siezes"; Redhouse, op.cit., p.1406. L.13, ( يوسف باشا ) : This is Yūsuf Pasha the Grand Vizir of the Ottoman Empire 1200-1203 A.H. (1st time), 1205-6 A.H. (2nd time); see Spiridonakis, op.cit., p.467. L.14, ( يوسف باشا ) : This is Yūsuf Pasha, the Grand Vizir of the Ottoman Empire 1213-1220 A.H.; see loc. cit.

Page No. 493.

Para. 4-5, G HAR., p.56. L.7, ( شاه العجم ) : He is Fat'h 'Alī Shah; see Present Thesis App. No. 3. L.19, ( ازميد ) Izmid

(T.), Iznikmid (Old T.), is situated in N.W. Anatolia; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXV-B1. Para. 8-, GHAR., 56-7.

Page No. 494.

Para. 1-4, GHAR., p.57. L.13, ( الكبيسة ) al-Kubaisa or "Kobase", is situated in W. Iraq; see Niebuhr, op.cit., 2/267. L.17, ( راوندوز ) or ( راوندوز ) Rāwandūz is situated in Kurdistan, N.E. Iraq; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-C2; for geographical details, see JAOS, 2/113-6. L.20, ( الشهيد ) is Mashhad of al-Ḥusain in Karbalā' of Iraq.

Page No. 495.

Para. 1, GHAR., p.57. Paras. 2, 3 and 5, ibid., p.58. L.21, ( برته بول ): This is Napoleon Bonaparte, the leader of the French army against Egypt; see present thesis, vol. 1, Chap. 4, section b/c-2.

Page No. 496.

L.2, ( الوزير محمد باشا ) This is Muḥammad Pasha al-Jalīlī; see present thesis, App. No. 5. L.13, ( عذار احاط في وجه الكمال ) is p. his. (= 1216 A.H.). Para. 3, GHAR., p.58. Para. 4, ibid., pp.58-9. L.24, ( النبي ) appears written " الف " in ibid., p.59.

Page No. 497.

L.9, ( اسعرت ) or ( سعرد ): Si'irt is situated in the land of al-Jazīra, S. Turkey; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-B1. LL.13-20, GHAR., p.59. Para. 2, ibid., p.58. LL.21-2, for further details about the plague in Egypt and the death of Murād Bey; see J.C. Herold, op.cit., p.380. LL.24-5, ( خديجه سلطان ) Hadīce Sultan; see present thesis, App. I, n.L.9, Text, p.458. In this book, Alderson

mentions that Sayyid Aḥmad Pasha died in 1213 A.H. = 1798 A.D.; cf. loc. cit. with the text. L.26, ( علاء الدين ) 'Alā' al-Dīn died in 1227 A.H. = 1812 A.D.; cf. Alderson, loc. cit. Para. 4, GHAR., p.58.

Page No. 498.

Para. 1-2, GHAR., p.59. Para. 3-7, ibid., p.60. L.20, ( الطون كبرى ) Altūn-Kuprī or Alton-Kopru is situated in N. Iraq; see Pitcher, op.cit., map XXXII-C2. L.29, ( سامرا ) Sāmarrā is situated in central Iraq; see Tag., p.300, for geographical details; see Niebuhr, op.cit., 2/267.

Page No. 499.

Para. 1-5, GHAR., p.60. Para. 6, ibid., p.61.

Page No. 500.

Para. 3, GHAR., p.61. L.8, ( الدوبان ) al-Dūbān is a Kurdish tribe. L.11, ( فنة ) Fanak is situated near 'Amādiyya in N. Iraq. L.12, ( بركة الاخضر ) al-Ukhaīdur is situated in S. Iraq. Para. 7, GHAR., loc. cit. L.21, ( شوش ) Shūsh is situated in S.E. Iraq. L.21, ( دوسره ) Dawsara is a village, situated in E. Mosul; see MUN., p.150.

Page No. 501.

Para. 1, 3 and 5, GHAR., p.61.

Page No. 502.

Para. 1-3, ibid., p.62. L.8, ( سليمان باشا ) This is Sulaimān

Pasha al-Kabīr, Mutasalim of Baṣra 1177-1193 A.H. Wālī of Baghdad 1194-1217 A.H. LL.20-1, ( قل لن يصيبنا إلا ما كتب الله لنا ), Qur'ān, 9/25.

Pages No. 503-4.

Page No. 505.

L.9, ( صحراء الموصل ), the desert of Mosul is situated in W. Tigris; see Rich, op.cit., 1/109. L.10, ( الصيرمون ) al-Ṣīramūn is situated in the south of the city of Mosul.

Page No. 506.

Para. 1, GHAR., p.64. Para. 4, ibid., pp.64-5.

Page No. 507.

L.25, ( غزا علي اهل الجبل ) is p. his. (= 1200 A.H.).

Pages No. 508-510.



APPENDICES 2 - 5

## APPENDIX NO. 2

Sultans of the Ottoman Empire1281 - 1922 A.D.

'Uthmān I	1st Ottoman Sultan	1281-1324 A.D.
Orkhān al-Ghāzī	2nd " "	1324-1359 A.D.
Murād I	3rd " "	1360-1389 A.D.
Bayazīd I Yildırın	4th " "	1389-1402 A.D.

(Tīmūrid invasion 1402 A.D. = 804 A.H.)

Sulaimān	Prince of Adrianople	1403-1410 A.D.
Mūsā	Prince of Asia Minor	1403-1413 A.D.
Muḥammad I Celebī	5th Ottoman Sultan	1413-1421 A.D.
Murād II	6th " "	1421-1444 A.D. first reign 1446-1451 A.D. second reign
Muḥammad II al-Fātih	7th " "	1444-1446 A.D. first reign 1451-1481 A.D. second reign

(The Conquest of Constantinople 1453 A.D.)

Bayazīd II	8th Ottoman Sultan	1481-1512 A.D.
Salīm I Yavuz ( The Grim )	9th Ottoman Sultan	1512-1520 A.D.
Sulaimān I al-Qānūnī ( 'The Magnificent' )	10th Ottoman Sultan	1520-1566 A.D.
Salīm II	11th " "	1566-1574 A.D.
Murād III	12th " "	1574-1595 A.D.
Muḥammad III	13th " "	1595-1603 A.D.
Aḥmad I	14th " "	1603-1617 A.D.
Muṣṭafā I	15th " "	1617-1618 A.D. first reign 1622-1623 A.D. second reign
'Uthmān II	16th " "	1618-1622 A.D.
Murād IV (Fātih Baghdād)	17th Ottoman Sultan	1623-1640 A.D.
Ibrāhīm I	18th Ottoman Sultan	1640-1648 A.D.
Muḥammad IV	19th " "	1648-1687 A.D.
Sulaimān II	20th " "	1687-1691 A.D.
Aḥmad II	21st " "	1691-1695 A.D.

Muṣṭafā II	22nd	Ottoman	Sultan	1695-1703 A.D.
Aḥmad III	23rd	"	"	1703-1730 A.D.
Mahmūd I	24th	"	"	1730-1754 A.D.
'Uthmān III	25th	"	"	1754-1757 A.D.
Muṣṭafā III	26th	"	"	1757-1774 A.D.
'Abdul-Hamīd I	27th	"	"	1774-1789 A.D.
Salīm III	28th	"	"	1789-1807 A.D.
Mustafā IV	29th	"	"	1807-1808 A.D.
Mahmūd II	30th	"	"	1808-1839 A.D.
'Abdul-Majīd I	31st	"	"	1839-1861 A.D.
'Abdul-'Azīz	32nd	"	"	1861-1876 A.D.
Murād V	33rd	"	"	1876 A.D.
'Abdul-Hamīd II	34th	"	"	1876-1909 A.D.
Muḥammad V (Rashād)	35th	"	"	1909-1918 A.D.
Muḥammad VI (Wahīd ad-Dīn)	36th	"	"	1918-1922 A.D.
'Abdul-Majīd II (as Caliph only)				1922-1924 A.D.

## APPENDIX NO. 3

Shahs of Persia1501-1924 A.D. = 907-1343 A.H.A. The Safavids 1501-1732 A.D. = 907-1145 A.H.

- |                         |                                |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Ismā'īl I            | 1501-24 A.D. = 907-30 A.H.     |
| 2. Tahmāsp I            | 1524-76 A.D. = 930-84 A.H.     |
| 3. Ismā'īl II           | 1576-78 A.D. = 984-5 A.H.      |
| 4. Muhammad Khudabanda  | 1578-88 A.D. = 985-96 A.H.     |
| 5. 'Abbās I             | 1588-1629 A.D. = 996-1038 A.H. |
| 6. Ṣafī I               | 1629-42 A.D. = 1038-52 A.H.    |
| 7. 'Abbās II            | 1642-66 A.D. = 1052-77 A.H.    |
| 8. Sulaimān I (Ṣafī II) | 1666-94 A.D. = 1077-1105 A.H.  |
| 9. Ḥusain I             | 1694-1722 A.D. = 1105-35 A.H.  |
| 10. Tahmāsp II          | 1722-32 A.D. = 1135-45 A.H.    |
| 11. 'Abbās II Mirza     | 1732-6 A.D. = 1145-8 A.H.      |

\* \* \* \* \*

B. The Afsharids 1736-1795 A.D. = 1148-1210 A.H.

- |                                   |                               |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 12. Nādir Shah, Tahmāsp Qulī Khan | 1736-47 A.D. = 1148-60 A.H.   |
| 13. 'Ādil Shah, 'Alī Qulī Khan    | 1747-8 A.D. = 1160-1 A.H.     |
| 14. Ibrāhīm                       | 1748 A.D. = 1161 A.H.         |
| 15. Shah Rukh (in Khurasān)       | 1748-95 A.D. = 1161-1210 A.H. |

\* \* \* \* \*

C. The Zands 1750-94 A.D. = 1163-1209 A.H.

- |                               |                             |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 16. Muḥammad Karīm Khan       | 1750-79 A.D. = 1163-93 A.H. |
| 17. Abū-l-Fat'h Muḥammad 'Alī | 1779 A.D. = 1193 A.H.       |

\* \* \* \* \*

D. The Qājārs 1779-1924 A.D. = 1193-1342 A.H.

- |                     |                               |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| 18. Āghā Muḥammad   | 1779-97 A.D. = 1193-1212 A.H. |
| 19. Fat'h 'Alī Shah | 1797-1834 A.D. = 1212-50 A.H. |
| 20. Muḥammad        | 1834-48 A.D. = 1250-64 A.H.   |
| 21. Nāṣir ad-Dīn    | 1848-96 A.D. = 1264-1313 A.H. |
| 22. Muẓaffar ad-Dīn | 1896-1907 A.D. = 1313-24 A.H. |
| 23. Muḥammad 'Alī   | 1907-9 A.D. = 1324-7 A.H.     |
| 24. Aḥmad           | 1909-24 A.D. = 1327-43 A.H.   |

\* \* \* \* \*

## APPENDIX NO. 4

Grand Vizirs of the Ottoman Empire1451-1922 A.D. = 855-1341 A.H.

1. Khalīl Pasha	855- 7	A.H.	Second Reign of Sultan Muḥammad II
2. Maḥmūd Pasha	857-72	A.H.	
3. Ishāq Pasha	872- 7	A.H.	
4. Maḥmūd Pasha	877- 8	A.H.	
5. Gedik Aḥmad Pasha	878-82	A.H.	
6. Qaramānlī Muḥammad Pasha	882- 6	A.H.	
7. Ishāq Pasha	886- 8	A.H.	Reign of Sultan Bāyazīd II
8. Daoud Pasha	888-902	A.H.	
9. Aḥmad Pasha Hersezkade	902- 3	A.H.	
10. Ibrāhīm Pasha	903- 5	A.H.	
11. Mesīh Pasha	905- 7	A.H.	
12. 'Alī Pasha Khādīm	907- 9	A.H.	
13. Aḥmad Pasha Hersezkade	909-12	A.H.	Reign of Sultan Salīm I
14. 'Alī Pasha Khādīm	912-17	A.H.	
15. Aḥmad Pasha Hersezkade	917	A.H.	
16. Koca Muṣṭafā Pasha	917-918	A.H.	
17. Aḥmad Pasha Hersezkade	918-20	A.H.	
18. Sīnān Pasha Khādīm	920-923	A.H.	
19. Yūnus Pasha	923	A.H.	Reign of Sultan Sulaimān II the Magnificent
20. Pīrī Muḥammad Pasha	923- 9	A.H.	
21. Ibrāhīm Pasha	929-42	A.H.	
22. Iyās Pasha	942- 4	A.H.	
23. Lutfī Pasha	944- 7	A.H.	
24. Khādīm Sulaimān Pasha	947-50	A.H.	
25. Rustam Pasha	951-60	A.H.	Reign of Sultan Salīm II
26. Qara Aḥmad Pasha	960- 2	A.H.	
27. Rustam Pasha	962- 8	A.H.	
28. Semiz 'Alī Pasha	968-72	A.H.	
29. Tawīl Muḥammad Pasha	972-87	A.H.	



65. Merre Husain Pasha	1032	A.H.	Second Reign of Sultan Muṣṭafā I
66. Kemānkes 'Alī Pasha	1032- 3	A.H.	
67. Cerkes Muḥammad Pasha	1033- 4	A.H.	
68. Hāfiẓ Muḥammad Pasha	1034- 5	A.H.	
69. Khalīl Pasha	1035- 6	A.H.	Reign of Sultan Murād IV
70. Khusrū Pasha	1036-40	A.H.	
71. Hāfiẓ Aḥmad Pasha	1040	A.H.	
72. Rajab Pasha	1040- 1	A.H.	
73. Muḥammad Pasha	1041- 6	A.H.	
74. Bayrām Pasha	1046- 8	A.H.	
75. Taiyār Muḥammad Pasha	1048	A.H.	
76. Qara Muṣṭafā Pasha	1048-53	A.H.	
77. Sultanzade Muḥammad Pasha	1053- 5	A.H.	Reign of Sultan Ibrāhīm
78. Ṣālīḥ Pasha	1055- 7	A.H.	
79. Hezārpāre	1057- 8	A.H.	
80. Sofu Muḥammad Pasha	1058- 9	A.H.	
81. Murād Pasha	1059-60	A.H.	Reign of Sultan Muḥammad IV
82. Malik Aḥmad Pasha	1060- 1	A.H.	
83. Siyāvūs Pasha	1061	A.H.	
84. Muḥammad Pasha	1061- 2	A.H.	
85. Tarhoncu Aḥmad Pasha	1062- 3	A.H.	
86. Darwish Muḥammad Pasha	1063- 4	A.H.	
87. Ibsīr Muṣṭafā Pasha	1064- 5	A.H.	
88. Murād Pasha	1065	A.H.	
89. Sulaimān Pasha	1065- 6	A.H.	
90. Husain Pasha	1066	A.H.	
91. Surhazen Muṣṭafā Pasha	1066	A.H.	Reign of Sultan Muḥammad IV
92. Siyāvūs Pasha	1066	A.H.	
93. Boynuegri Muḥammad Pasha	1066- 7	A.H.	
94. Koprülü Muḥammad Pasha	1067-72	A.H.	
95. Koprülüẓade Fāzil Aḥmad Pasha	1072-87	A.H.	
96. Merzifonlu Muṣṭafā Pasha	1087-95	A.H.	
97. Qara Ibrāhīm Pasha	1095- 7	A.H.	
98. Sulaimān Pasha	1097- 8	A.H.	
99. Siyāvūs Pasha	1098- 9	A.H.	
100. Nisancı Ismā'il Pasha	1099	A.H.	
101. Muṣṭafā Pasha	1099-1101	A.H.	



102. Koprülüzade Muṣṭafā Pasha	1101- 2	A.H.	Reign of Sultan Sulaimān III
103. 'Arabacı 'Alī Pasha	1102- 3	A.H.	
104. Haçl 'Alī Pasha	1103- 4	A.H.	
105. Biyikli Muṣṭafā Pasha	1104- 5	A.H.	Reign of Sultan Ahmad II
106. Surmeli 'Alī Pasha	1105- 6	A.H.	
107. Elmās Muḥammad Pasha	1106- 9	A.H.	
108. 'Amcazade Husain Pasha	1109-1114	A.H.	Reign of Sultan Muṣṭafā II
109. Daltabān Muṣṭafā Pasha	1114	A.H.	
110. Rāmī Pasha	1114-15	A.H.	
111. Kavanoz Ahmad Pasha	1115	A.H.	
112. Dāmāt Hasan Pasha	1115-16	A.H.	
113. Kalaylikoz Ahmad Pasha	1116	A.H.	
114. Teberdār Muḥammad Pasha	1116-18	A.H.	
115. Çorlulu 'Alī Pasha	1118-22	A.H.	
116. Koprülüzade Nu'mān Pasha	1122	A.H.	
117. Teberdār Muḥammad Pasha	1122- 3	A.H.	
118. Yūsof Pasha	1123- 4	A.H.	Reign of Sultan Ahmad III
119. Sulaimān Pasha	1124- 5	A.H.	
120. Khūca Ibrāhīm Pasha	1125	A.H.	
121. Dāmāt 'Alī Pasha	1125- 8	A.H.	
122. Khalīl Pasha	1128- 9	A.H.	
123. Muḥammad Pasha	1129-30	A.H.	
124. Dāmāt Nersehirli Ibrāhīm Pasha	1130-43	A.H.	
125. Silahtar Muḥammad Pasha	1143	A.H.	
126. Karakulak Ibrāhīm Pasha	1143- 4	A.H.	
127. Topāl Osmān Pasha	1144	A.H.	
128. Hekimoglu Ismā'il Pasha	1144- 8	A.H.	
129. Silahtar Seyyid Muḥammad Pasha	1148-50	A.H.	
130. Muhsinzade 'Abdullāh Pasha	1150- 1	A.H.	
131. Yegen Muḥammad Pasha	1151	A.H.	
132. Ivaz Haçl Muḥammad Pasha	1151- 3	A.H.	
133. Haçl Ahmad Pasha	1153- 5	A.H.	
134. Hekimoglu 'Alī Pasha	1155- 6	A.H.	
135. Seyyid Hasan Pasha	1156- 9	A.H.	
136. Tiryākī Haçl Muḥammad Pasha	1159-60	A.H.	

137. Seyyid 'Abdullāh Pasha	1160- 3	A.H.	
138. Divitvar Muḥammad Pasha	1163- 5	A.H.	
139. Kose Muḥammad Pasha	1165- 8	A.H.	
140. Hakimoglu 'Alī Pasha	1168	A.H.	
141. Naili 'Abdullāh Pasha	1168	A.H.	
142. Biyikli 'Alī Pasha	1168- 9	A.H.	
143. Said Muḥammad Pasha	1169	A.H.	Reign of
144. Kose Muṣṭafā Pasha	1169-70	A.H.	Sultan 'Uthmān
145. Muḥammad Ragīb Pasha	1170- 6	A.H.	III
146. Tevkil Hamid Hamza Pasha	1176- 7	A.H.	
147. Kose Muṣṭafā Pasha	1177- 8	A.H.	
148. Muhsinzade Muḥammad Pasha	1178-82	A.H.	
149. Silahṭar Mahir Hamza Pasha	1182	A.H.	
150. Yaglikcizade Muḥammad Amīn Pasha	1182- 3	A.H.	Reign of
151. Mevluthānī 'Alī Pasha	1183	A.H.	Sultan Muṣṭafā
152. Ivazzade Khalīl Pasha	1183- 4	A.H.	III
153. Silahḍār Muḥammad Pasha	1184- 5	A.H.	
154. Muhsinzade Muḥammad Pasha	1185- 8	A.H.	
155. Izzet Muḥammad Pasha	1188- 9	A.H.	
156. Derwīsh Muḥammad Pasha	1189-90	A.H.	
157. Darendelī Muḥammad Pasha	1190- 2	A.H.	
158. Kalafat Muḥammad Pasha	1192- 3	A.H.	
159. Silāhtār Muḥammad Pasha	1193- 5	A.H.	Reign of
160. Izzet Muḥammad Pasha	1195- 6	A.H.	Sultan 'Abdul-
161. Yegen Elhāc Muḥammad Pasha	1196- 7	A.H.	Hamīd I
162. Khalīl Hāmīd Pasha	1197- 9	A.H.	
163. Saḥin 'Alī Pasha	1199-1200	A.H.	
164. Yusof Pasha	1200- 3	A.H.	
165. Kethuda Hasan Pasha	1203- 4	A.H.	
166. Gazī Hasan Pasha	1204	A.H.	
167. Serif Hasan Pasha	1204- 5	A.H.	
168. Yusof Pasha	1205- 6	A.H.	Reign of Sultan
169. Melek Muḥammad Pasha	1206- 9	A.H.	Salīm II
170. Izzet Muḥammad Pasha	1209-13	A.H.	

171.	Yusof Ziyā Pasha	1213-20	A.H.	
172.	Hāfiz Ismā'īl Pasha	1220- 1	A.H.	
173.	Hilmī Ibrāhīm Pasha	1222	A.H.	
174.	Ālebī Muṣṭafā Pasha	1222- 3	A.H.	
175.	'Alemdār Muṣṭafā Pasha	1223	A.H.	Reign of Sultan Muṣṭafā IV
176.	Mīmish Pasha	1223- 4	A.H.	
177.	Yusof Ziyā Pasha	1224- 6	A.H.	
178.	Aḥmad Pasha	1226- 7	A.H.	
179.	Hursit Aḥmad Pasha	1227-30	A.H.	
180.	Muḥammad Amīn Ra'ūf Pasha	1230- 3	A.H.	
181.	Darwīsh Muḥammad Pasha	1233- 5	A.H.	
182.	Seyyid 'Alī Pasha	1235- 6	A.H.	
183.	Benderlī 'Alī Pasha	1236	A.H.	Reign of Sultan Muḥmud II
184.	Hacı Şālīh Pasha	1236- 8	A.H.	
185.	Bostāncībāsī 'Abdullāh Pasha	1238	A.H.	
186.	Silāhtār 'Alī Pasha	1238- 9	A.H.	
187.	Muḥammad Sayid Ghālīb Pasha	1239-40	A.H.	
188.	Salīm Muḥammad Pasha	1240- 4	A.H.	
189.	'Izzet Muḥammad Pasha	1244	A.H.	
190.	Rashīd Muḥammad Pasha	1244- 8	A.H.	
191.	Muḥammad Amīn Ra'ūf Pasha	1248-55	A.H.	
192.	Husrev Muḥammad Pasha	1255- 6	A.H.	
193.	Muḥammad Amīn Ra'ūf Pasha	1256- 7	A.H.	
194.	Izzet Muḥammad Pasha	1257- 8	A.H.	
195.	Muḥammad Amīn Ra'ūf Pasha	1258-62	A.H.	
196.	Koçā Rashīd Pasha	1262- 4	A.H.	
197.	Ibrāhīm Sarīm Pasha	1264	A.H.	
198.	Koçā Rashīd Pasha	1264- 8	A.H.	
199.	Muḥammad Amīn Ra'ūf Pasha	1268	A.H.	Reign of Sultan 'Abdul-Majīd I
200.	Muṣṭafā Rashīd Pasha	1268	A.H.	
201.	Muḥammad Amīn 'Alī Pasha	1268- 9	A.H.	
202.	Giritlī Muṣṭafā Nāillī Pasha	1269-70	A.H.	
203.	Kıbrislī Muḥammad Amīn Pasha	1270- 1	A.H.	
204.	Koçā Rashīd Pasha	1271	A.H.	
205.	Muḥammad Amīn 'Alī Pasha	1271- 3	A.H.	

206.	Koçā Rashīd Pasha	1273	A.H.
207.	Giritli Muşţafā Nālī Pasha	1273- 4	A.H.
208.	Koçā Rashīd Pasha	1274	A.H.
209.	Mutarcīm Muḥammad Rustu Pasha	1274- 6	A.H.
210.	Kibrislī Muḥammad Amīn Pasha	1276	A.H.
211.	Mutarcīm Muḥammad Rustu Pasha	1276	A.H.
212.	Kibrislī Muḥammad Amīn Pasha	1276- 7	A.H.
213.	Muḥammad Amīn 'Alī Pasha	1277- 8	A.H.
214.	Muḥammad Fu'ād Pasha	1278- 9	A.H.
215.	Yusof Kāmīl Pasha	1279	A.H.
216.	Muḥammad Fu'ād Pasha	1279-83	A.H.
217.	Mutarcīm Muḥammad Rustu Pasha	1283- 6	A.H.
218.	Muḥammad Amīn 'Alī Pasha	1286- 8	A.H.
219.	Maḥmūd Nadīm Pasha	1288- 9	A.H.
220.	Midḥat Pasha	1289	A.H.
221.	Mutarcīm Muḥammad Rustu Pasha	1289	A.H.
222.	Aḥmad Esat Pasha	1289-90	A.H.
223.	Sirvanzade Muḥammad Rustu Pasha	1290	A.H.
224.	Husain Avnī ('Awnī) Pasha	1290- 2	A.H.
225.	Aḥmad Esat Pasha	1292	A.H.
226.	Maḥmūd Nadīm Pasha	1292- 3	A.H.
227.	Mutarcīm Muḥammad Rustu Pasha	1293	A.H.
228.	Midḥat Pasha	1293- 4	A.H.
229.	Ethem (Adham) Pasha	1294- 5	A.H.
230.	Aḥmad Ḥamdī Pasha	1295	A.H.
231.	Aḥmad Vefīk (Wafīq) Pasha	1295	A.H.
232.	Şādīk (Şādīq) Pasha	1295	A.H.
233.	Mutarcīm Muḥammad Rustu Pasha	1295	A.H.
234.	Saffet (Şafwat) Pasha	1295	A.H.
235.	Hayrettin (Khairuldīn) Pasha	1295- 6	A.H.
236.	Arifī Pasha	1296	A.H.
237.	Sa'īd Pasha	1296- 7	A.H.
238.	Kadri (Gadri) Pasha	1297	A.H.
239.	Sa'īd Pasha	1297- 9	A.H.
240.	'Abdurrahmān Pasha	1299	A.H.

Reign of Sultan  
'Abdul-'Aziz

Reign of Sultan  
Murād V

241. Sa'īd Pasha	1299-1300	A.H.	Reign of Sultan 'Abdul-Hamīd II
242. Aḥmad Vefik (Wafīq) Pasha	1300	A.H.	
243. Sa'īd Pasha	1300- 2	A.H.	
244. Kāmīl Pasha	1302- 9	A.H.	
245. Cevdet (Cawdat) Pasha	1309-12	A.H.	
246. Sa'īd Pasha	1312-13	A.H.	
247. Kāmīl Pasha	1313	A.H.	
248. Khalīl Rif'at Pasha	1313-19	A.H.	
249. Sa'īd Pasha	1319-20	A.H.	
250. Avlonyalı Ferīd Pasha	1320- 6	A.H.	
251. Sa'īd Pasha	1326	A.H.	
252. Kāmīl Pasha	1326- 7	A.H.	
253. Ḥusain Ḥilmī Pasha	1327	A.H.	
254. Tefik (Tawfīq) Pasha	1327	A.H.	
255. Ḥusain Ḥilmī Pasha	1327	A.H.	
256. Ibrāhīm Ḥaqqī Pasha	1327- 9	A.H.	Reign of Sultan Muḥammad V Rashād
257. Sa'īd Pasha	1329-30	A.H.	
258. Gāzī Aḥmad Mukhtār Pasha	1330	A.H.	
259. Kāmīl Pasha	1330- 1	A.H.	
260. Maḥmūd Sevket (Shawkat) Pasha	1331	A.H.	
261. Prens Muḥammad Sa'īd Ḥilmī Pasha	1331- 5	A.H.	
262. Tal'at Pasha	1335- 7	A.H.	
263. Aḥmad 'Izzat Pasha	1337	A.H.	
264. Damād Farīd Pasha	1337- 8	A.H.	
265. 'Alī Rıza Pasha	1338	A.H.	Reign of Sultan Muḥammad VI Wahīd ad-Dīn
266. Ṣalīḥ Pasha	1338	A.H.	
267. Damād Farīd Pasha	1338- 9	A.H.	
268. Tefik (Tawfīq) Pasha	1339-40	A.H.	

## APPENDIX NO. 5

The Walī's of Mosul during the Local Rule1726 A.D. = 1139 A.H. - 1835 A.D. = 1251 A.H.

1. Ismā'il Pasha b. 'Abdul-Jalīl	1726- 7 A.D. = 1139-40 A.H.
2. Husain Pasha al-Darandalī	1727- 8 A.D. = 1140- 1 A.H.
3. Muḥammad Pasha Rashwān-Zāda	1728-30 A.D. = 1141- 3 A.H.
4. Husain Pasha b. Ismā'il Pasha al-Jalīlī	1730 A.D. = 1143 A.H.
5. 'Alī Pasha	1730- 1 A.D. = 1143- 4 A.H.
6. Husain Pasha al-Jalīlī (2nd time)	1731- 3 A.D. = 1144- 6 A.H.
7. Mīmush Pasha	1733 A.D. = 1146 A.H.
8. Husain Pasha al-Jalīlī (3rd time)	1733- 5 A.D. = 1146- 8 A.H.
9. Mīmush Pasha (2nd time)	1735 A.D. = 1148 A.H.
10. Arsalān Muḥammad Pasha	1735- 6 A.D. = 1148- 9 A.H.
11. Ilcī Muṣṭafā Pasha	1736- 8 A.D. = 1149-51 A.H.
12. Husain Pasha al-Jalīlī 4th time)	1738-40 A.D. = 1151- 3 A.H.
13. Aḥmad Pasha Muḥassil Ḥalabī	1740- 1 A.D. = 1153- 4 A.H.
14. 'Uthmān Pasha al-Wānī al-Maqtūl	1741 A.D. = 1154 A.H.
15. Husain Pasha al-Jalīlī (5th time)	1741- 6 A.D. = 1154- 9 A.H.
16. Sulaimān Pasha	1747 A.D. = 1159-60 A.H.
17. Husain Pasha al-Jalīlī (6th time)	1747- 8 A.D. = 1160- 1 A.H.
18. Tiryāgī Muḥammad Pasha	1748 A.D. = 1161 A.H.
19. Ibrāhīm Pasha	1748- 9 A.D. = 1161- 2 A.H.
20. Muḥammad Pasha	1749-50 A.D. = 1162- 3 A.H.
21. Husain Pasha al-Jalīlī (7th time)	1750 A.D. = 1163- 4 A.H.
22. Muṣṭafā Pasha Shahsuwār-Zāda	1750- 1 A.D. = 1164- 5 A.H.
23. Rajab Pasha	1751- 2 A.D. = 1165- 6 A.H.
24. Muḥammad Pasha	1752 A.D. = 1166 A.H.
25. Muḥammad Amīn Pasha b. Husain Pasha al-Jalīlī	1752- 5 A.D. = 1166- 9 A.H.
26. Muṣṭafā Pasha Shahsuwār-Zāda (2nd time)	1755 A.D. = 1169 A.H.
27. Muḥammad Amīn Pasha al-Jalīlī (2nd time)	1755- 6 A.D. = 1169-70 A.H.
28. Muṣṭafa Pasha al-'Azm	1756- 7 A.D. = 1170- 1 A.H.
29. Rajab Pasha (2nd time)	1757 A.D. = 1171 A.H.

30. Ḥusain Pasha al-Jalīlī (8th time)	1757- 8 A.D. = 1171- 2 A.H.
31. Muḥammad Amīn Pasha al-Jalīlī (3rd time)	1758 A.D. = 1172 A.H.
32. Nu'mān Pasha al-Ḥalabī	1759 A.D. = 1173 A.H.
33. Muḥammad Amīn Pasha al-Jalīlī (4th time)	1759-60 A.D. = 1173- 4 A.H.
34. Muṣṭafā Pasha Shahsuwār-Zada (3rd time)	1760- 1 A.D. = 1174- 5 A.H.
35. Muḥammad Amīn Pasha al-Jalīlī (5th time)	1761- 8 A.D. = 1175-82 A.H.
36. Ḥusain Pasha	1768- 9 A.D. = 1182- 3 A.H.
37. Fattāḥ Pasha b. Ismā'il Pasha al-Jalīlī	1769-71 A.D. = 1183- 5 A.H.
38. Sulaimān Pasha b. Muḥammad Amīn Pasha al-Jalīlī	1771- 5 A.D. = 1185- 9 A.H.
39. Muḥammad Amīn Pasha al-Jalīlī (6th time)	1775 A.D. = 1189 A.H.
40. Sulaimān Pasha al-Jalīlī (2nd time)	1775- 6 A.D. = 1189-90 A.H.
41. Ḥasan Pasha	1776- 7 A.D. = 1190-91 A.H.
42. Sulaimān Pasha al-Jalīlī (3rd time)	1777-83 A.D. = 1191- 7 A.H.
43. Muṣṭafā Pasha Yāziḡi	1783 A.D. = 1197- 8 A.H.
44. Taimūr Pasha al-Wānī	1783- 4 A.D. = 1198- 9 A.H.
45. 'Abdul-Bāqī Pasha b. 'Ubaid Pasha al-Jalīlī	1785- 6 A.D. = 1199-1200 A.H.
46. Sulaimān Pasha al-Jalīlī (4th time)	1786- 9 A.D. = 1200- 4 A.H.
47. Muḥammad Pasha b. Muḥammad Amīn Pasha al-Jalīlī	1789-1806 A.D. = 1204-21 A.H.
48. Nu'mān Pasha b. Sulaimān Pasha al-Jalīlī	1806- 8 A.D. = 1221- 3 A.H.
49. Aḥmad Pasha b. Āl Bakr Efendi	1808- 9 A.D. = 1223- 4 A.H.
50. Maḥmūd Pasha b. Muḥammad Pasha al-Jalīlī	1809-10 A.D. = 1224- 5 A.H.
51. Sa'dallāh Pasha b. Ḥusain Pasha al-Jalīlī	1810-12 A.D. = 1225- 7 A.H.
52. Aḥmad Pasha b. Sulaimān Pasha al-Jalīlī	1812-17 A.D. = 1227-33 A.H.
53. Ḥasan Pasha b. Ḥusain Pasha al-Jalīlī	1818 A.D. = 1233 A.H.
54. Aḥmad Pasha al-Jalīlī (2nd time)	1818-21 A.D. = 1233-7 A.H.
55. 'Abdul-Raḥmān Pasha b. 'Abdullāh Bey al-Jalīlī	1821- 2 A.D. = 1237- 8 A.H.
56. Yahyā Pasha b. Nu'mān Pasha al-Jalīlī	1822- 7 A.D. = 1238-42 A.H.
57. 'Abdul-Raḥmān Pasha b. Maḥmūd Pasha al-Jalīlī	1827- 8 A.D. = 1242- 4 A.H.
58. Muḥammad Amīn Pasha b. 'Uthman Bey al-Jalīlī	1829 A.D. = 1245 A.H.
59. Qāsim Pasha b. Ḥasan al-'Umari	1830- 1 A.D. = 1246- 7 A.H.

60. Muḥammad Sa'id Pasha Āl Yāsīn
61. Yahyā Pasha al-Jalīlī (2nd time)
62. Muḥammad Sa'id Pasha Āl Yāsīn  
(2nd time)

1831- 3 A.D. = 1247- 8 A.H.

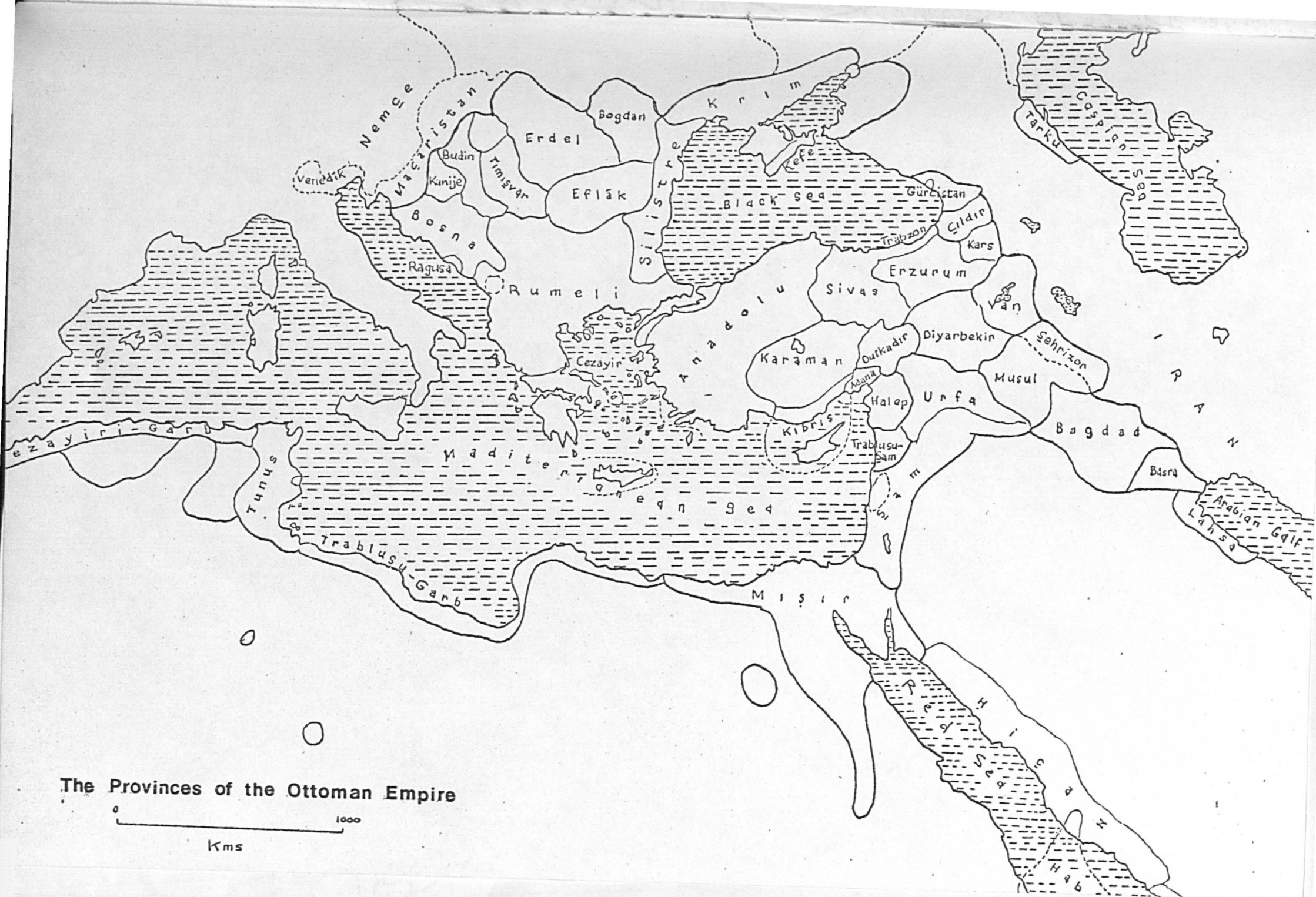
1833- 4 A.D. = 1248- 9 A.H.

1834- 5 A.D. = 1249-51 A.H.



## THE MAPS

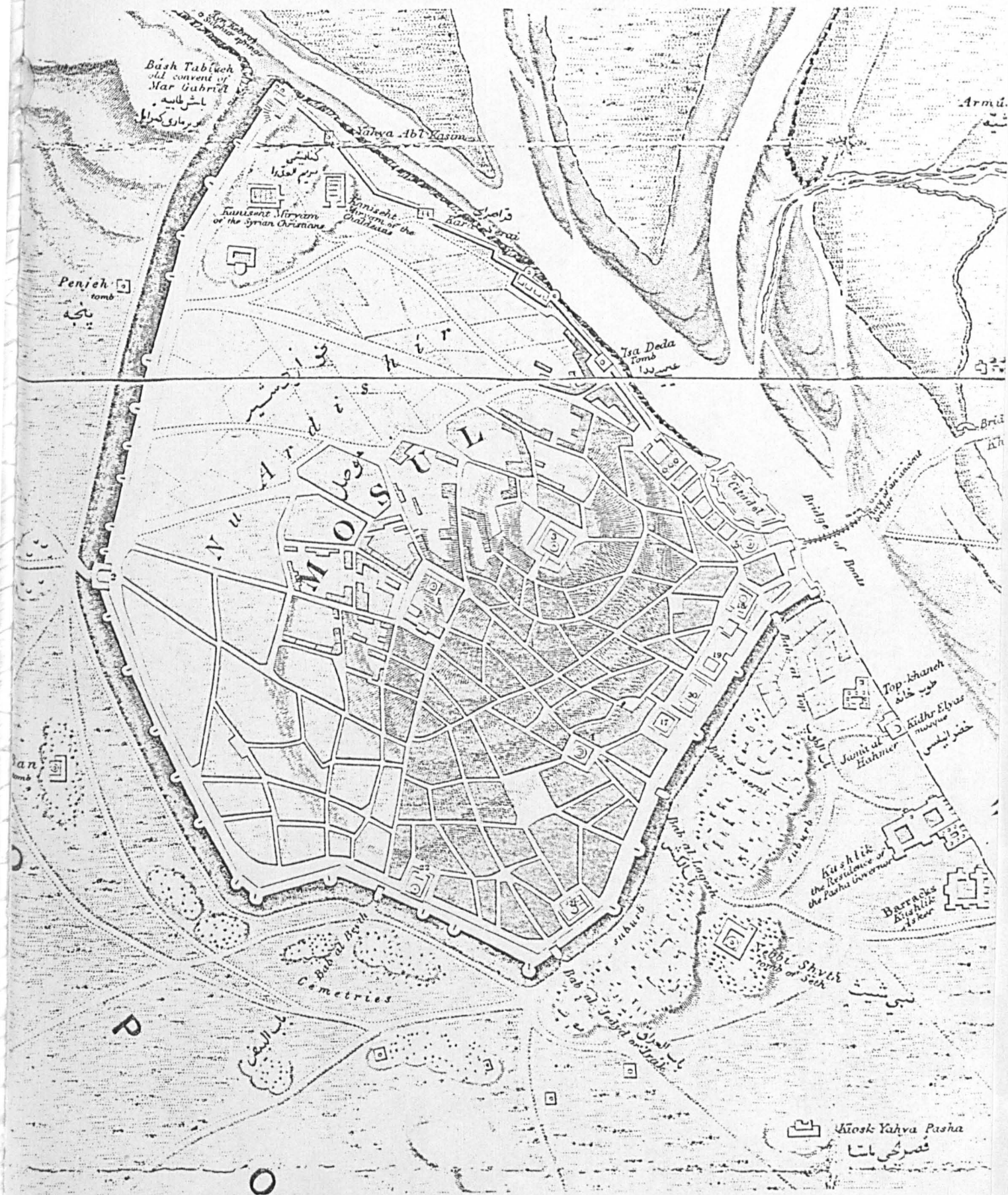


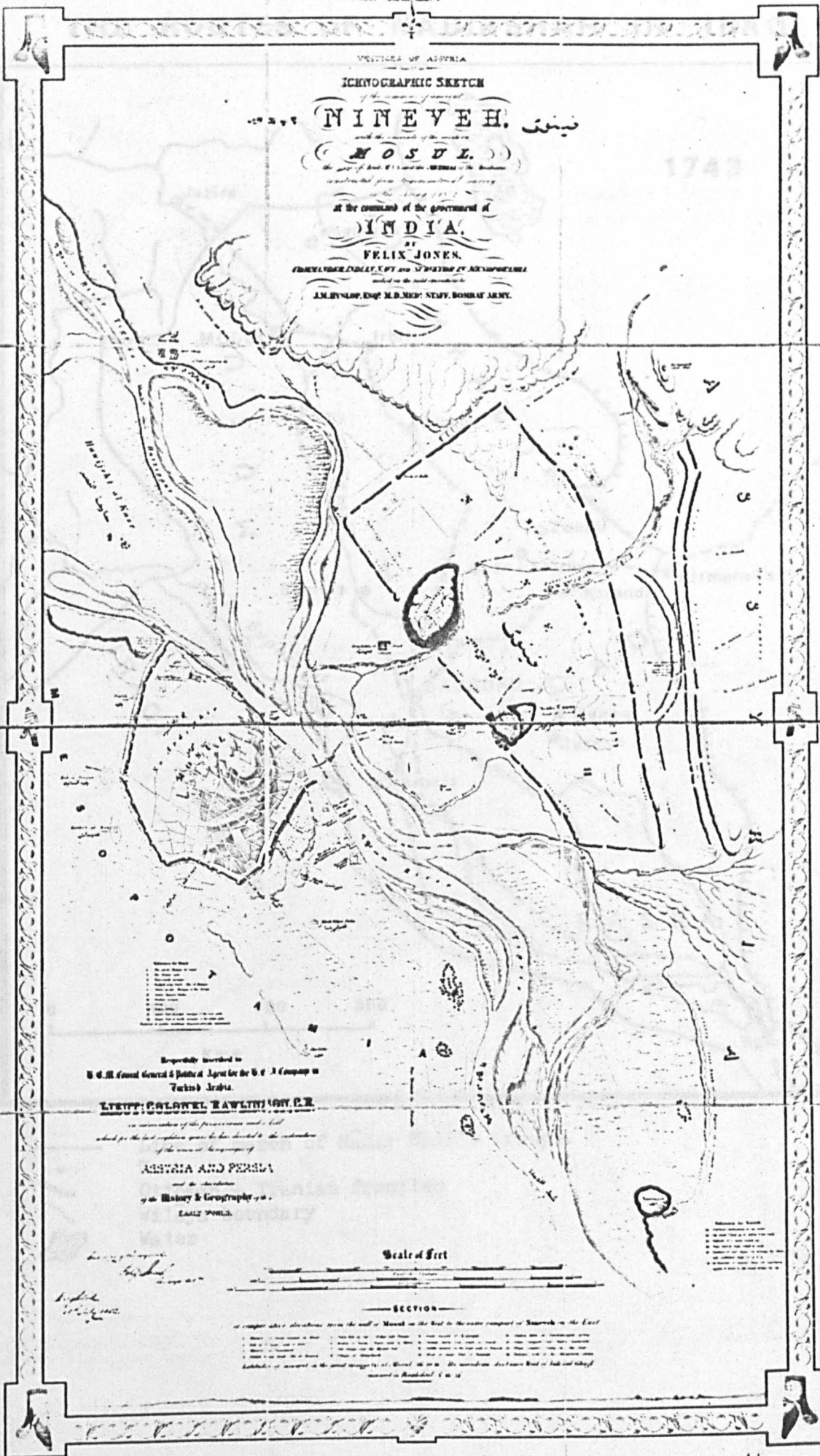


The Provinces of the Ottoman Empire

0 1000  
Kms







UNIVERSITY OF ASSYRIA

ICHOGRAPHIC SKETCH

(NINEVEH. نينوى)

(HOSSE.)

at the command of the government of  
INDIA.

BY  
FELIX JONES.

ENGINEER, CIVIL, CITY AND WATERWORKS, ASSYRIA

AND IN THE FIELD OF THE ASSYRIAN ARMY.

Respectfully forwarded to  
U. S. M. General & British Agent for the U. S. A. Company in  
Turkish Arabia.

LYTTON COLONEL HAWLINGTON, C.E.

in connection of the present work and a list  
which for the last century years has been devoted to the collection  
of the ancient Assyrian

ASSYRIA AND PERSIA

and the description

of the History & Geography of

EARLY WORLD.

Scale of Feet

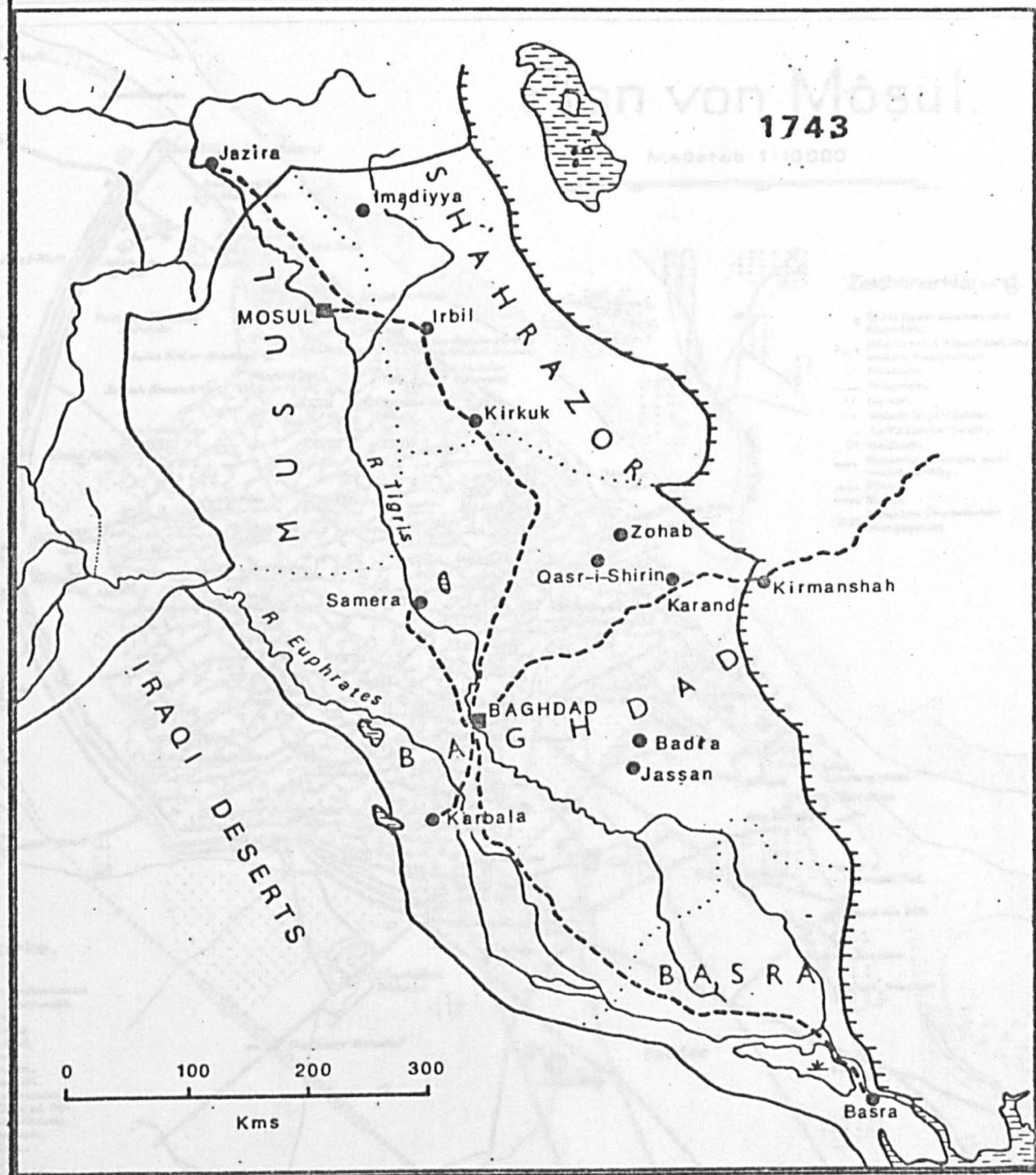
SECTION

at right angles to the wall of Nineveh on the West to the river camp of Nineveh on the East

Reference to Scale  
1 inch = 100 feet  
1/2 inch = 50 feet  
1/4 inch = 25 feet  
1/8 inch = 12 feet 6 inches  
1/16 inch = 6 feet 3 inches  
1/32 inch = 3 feet 1 1/2 inches  
1/64 inch = 1 foot 7 1/2 inches  
1/128 inch = 9 inches  
1/256 inch = 4 1/2 inches  
1/512 inch = 2 1/4 inches  
1/1024 inch = 1 1/8 inches  
1/2048 inch = 3/4 inch  
1/4096 inch = 3/8 inch  
1/8192 inch = 3/16 inch  
1/16384 inch = 3/32 inch  
1/32768 inch = 3/64 inch  
1/65536 inch = 3/128 inch  
1/131072 inch = 3/256 inch  
1/262144 inch = 3/512 inch  
1/524288 inch = 3/1024 inch  
1/1048576 inch = 3/2048 inch  
1/2097152 inch = 3/4096 inch  
1/4194304 inch = 3/8192 inch  
1/8388608 inch = 3/16384 inch  
1/16777216 inch = 3/32768 inch  
1/33554432 inch = 3/65536 inch  
1/67108864 inch = 3/131072 inch  
1/134217728 inch = 3/262144 inch  
1/268435456 inch = 3/524288 inch  
1/536870912 inch = 3/1048576 inch  
1/1073741824 inch = 3/2097152 inch  
1/2147483648 inch = 3/4194304 inch  
1/4294967296 inch = 3/8388608 inch  
1/8589934592 inch = 3/16777216 inch  
1/17179869184 inch = 3/33554432 inch  
1/34359738368 inch = 3/67108864 inch  
1/68719476736 inch = 3/134217728 inch  
1/137438953472 inch = 3/268435456 inch  
1/274877906944 inch = 3/536870912 inch  
1/549755813888 inch = 3/1073741824 inch  
1/1099511627776 inch = 3/2147483648 inch  
1/2199023255552 inch = 3/4294967296 inch  
1/4398046511104 inch = 3/8589934592 inch  
1/8796093022208 inch = 3/17179869184 inch  
1/17592186044416 inch = 3/34359738368 inch  
1/35184372088832 inch = 3/68719476736 inch  
1/70368744177664 inch = 3/137438953472 inch  
1/140737488355328 inch = 3/274877906944 inch  
1/281474976710656 inch = 3/549755813888 inch  
1/562949953421312 inch = 3/1099511627776 inch  
1/1125899906842624 inch = 3/2199023255552 inch  
1/2251799813685248 inch = 3/4398046511104 inch  
1/4503599627370496 inch = 3/8796093022208 inch  
1/9007199254740992 inch = 3/17592186044416 inch  
1/18014398509481984 inch = 3/35184372088832 inch  
1/36028797018963968 inch = 3/70368744177664 inch  
1/72057594037927936 inch = 3/140737488355328 inch  
1/144115188075855872 inch = 3/281474976710656 inch  
1/288230376151711744 inch = 3/562949953421312 inch  
1/576460752303423488 inch = 3/1125899906842624 inch  
1/1152921504606846976 inch = 3/2251799813685248 inch  
1/2305843009213693952 inch = 3/4503599627370496 inch  
1/4611686018427387904 inch = 3/9007199254740992 inch  
1/9223372036854775808 inch = 3/18014398509481984 inch  
1/18446744073709551616 inch = 3/36028797018963968 inch  
1/36893488147419103232 inch = 3/72057594037927936 inch  
1/73786976294838206464 inch = 3/144115188075855872 inch  
1/147573952589676412928 inch = 3/288230376151711744 inch  
1/295147905179352825856 inch = 3/576460752303423488 inch  
1/590295810358705651712 inch = 3/1152921504606846976 inch  
1/1180591620717411303424 inch = 3/2305843009213693952 inch  
1/2361183241434822606848 inch = 3/4611686018427387904 inch  
1/4722366482869645213696 inch = 3/9223372036854775808 inch  
1/9444732965739290427392 inch = 3/18446744073709551616 inch  
1/18889465931478580854784 inch = 3/36893488147419103232 inch  
1/37778931862957161709568 inch = 3/73786976294838206464 inch  
1/75557863725914323419136 inch = 3/147573952589676412928 inch  
1/151115727451828646838272 inch = 3/295147905179352825856 inch  
1/302231454903657293676544 inch = 3/590295810358705651712 inch  
1/604462909807314587353088 inch = 3/1180591620717411303424 inch  
1/1208925819614629174706176 inch = 3/2361183241434822606848 inch  
1/2417851639229258349412352 inch = 3/4722366482869645213696 inch  
1/4835703278458516698824704 inch = 3/9444732965739290427392 inch  
1/9671406556917033397649408 inch = 3/18889465931478580854784 inch  
1/19342813113834066795298816 inch = 3/37778931862957161709568 inch  
1/38685626227668133590597632 inch = 3/75557863725914323419136 inch  
1/77371252455336267181195264 inch = 3/151115727451828646838272 inch  
1/154742504910672534362390528 inch = 3/302231454903657293676544 inch  
1/309485009821345068724781056 inch = 3/604462909807314587353088 inch  
1/618970019642690137449562112 inch = 3/1208925819614629174706176 inch  
1/1237940039285380274899124224 inch = 3/2417851639229258349412352 inch  
1/2475880078570760549798248448 inch = 3/4835703278458516698824704 inch  
1/4951760157141521099596496896 inch = 3/9671406556917033397649408 inch  
1/9903520314283042199192993792 inch = 3/19342813113834066795298816 inch  
1/19807040628566084398385987584 inch = 3/38685626227668133590597632 inch  
1/39614081257132168796771975168 inch = 3/77371252455336267181195264 inch  
1/79228162514264337593543950336 inch = 3/154742504910672534362390528 inch  
1/158456325028528675187087900672 inch = 3/309485009821345068724781056 inch  
1/316912650057057350374175801344 inch = 3/618970019642690137449562112 inch  
1/633825300114114700748351602688 inch = 3/1237940039285380274899124224 inch  
1/1267650600228229401496703205376 inch = 3/2475880078570760549798248448 inch  
1/2535301200456458802993406410752 inch = 3/4951760157141521099596496896 inch  
1/5070602400912917605986812821504 inch = 3/9903520314283042199192993792 inch  
1/10141204801825835211973625643008 inch = 3/19807040628566084398385987584 inch  
1/20282409603651670423947251286016 inch = 3/39614081257132168796771975168 inch  
1/40564819207303340847894502572032 inch = 3/79228162514264337593543950336 inch  
1/81129638414606681695789005144064 inch = 3/158456325028528675187087900672 inch  
1/162259276829213363391578010288128 inch = 3/316912650057057350374175801344 inch  
1/324518553658426726783156020576256 inch = 3/633825300114114700748351602688 inch  
1/649037107316853453566312041152512 inch = 3/1267650600228229401496703205376 inch  
1/1298074214633706907132624082305024 inch = 3/2535301200456458802993406410752 inch  
1/2596148429267413814265248164610048 inch = 3/50706024009129176059868128215032 inch  
1/5192296858534827628530496329220096 inch = 3/10141204801825835211973625643008 inch  
1/10384593717069655257060992658440192 inch = 3/20282409603651670423947251286016 inch  
1/20769187434139310514121985316880384 inch = 3/40564819207303340847894502572032 inch  
1/41538374868278621028243970633760768 inch = 3/811296384146066814265248164610048 inch  
1/83076749736557242056487941267521536 inch = 3/162259276829213363391578010288128 inch  
1/166153499473114484112975882535043072 inch = 3/324518553658426726783156020576256 inch  
1/332306998946228968225951765070086144 inch = 3/649037107316853453566312041152512 inch  
1/664613997892457936451903530140172288 inch = 3/1298074214633706907132624082305024 inch  
1/1329227995784915872903807060280344576 inch = 3/2596148429267413814265248164610048 inch  
1/2658455991569831745807614120560689152 inch = 3/5192296858534827628530496329220096 inch  
1/5316911983139663491615228241121378304 inch = 3/10384593717069655257060992658440192 inch  
1/10633823966279326983230456482242756608 inch = 3/20769187434139310514121985316880384 inch  
1/21267647932558653966460912964485513216 inch = 3/41538374868278621028243970633760768 inch  
1/42535295865117307932921825928971026432 inch = 3/83076749736557242056487941267521536 inch  
1/85070591730234615865843651857942052864 inch = 3/166153499473114484112975882535043072 inch  
1/170141183460469231731687303715884105728 inch = 3/332306998946228968225951765070086144 inch  
1/340282366920938463463374607431768211456 inch = 3/664613997892457936451903530140172288 inch  
1/680564733841876926926749214863536422912 inch = 3/1329227995784915872903807060280344576 inch  
1/1361129467683753853853498429727072845824 inch = 3/2658455991569831745807614120560689152 inch  
1/2722258935367507707706996859454145691648 inch = 3/5316911983139663491615228241121378304 inch  
1/5444517870735015415413993718908291383296 inch = 3/10633823966279326983230456482242756608 inch  
1/10889035741470030830827987437816582766592 inch = 3/21267647932558653966460912964485513216 inch  
1/21778071482940061661655974875633165533184 inch = 3/42535295865117307932921825928971026432 inch  
1/43556142965880123323311949751266331066368 inch = 3/85070591730234615865843651857942052864 inch  
1/87112285931760246646623899502532662132736 inch = 3/170141183460469231731687303715884105728 inch  
1/174224571863520493293247799005065324265472 inch = 3/340282366920938463463374607431768211456 inch  
1/348449143727040986586495598010130648530944 inch = 3/680564733841876926926749214863536422912 inch  
1/696898287454081973172991196020261297061888 inch = 3/1361129467683753853853498429727072845824 inch  
1/1393796574908163946345982392040522594123776 inch = 3/2722258935367507707706996859454145691648 inch  
1/2787593149816327892691964784081045188247552 inch = 3/5444517870735015415413993718908291383296 inch  
1/5575186299632655785383929568162090376495104 inch = 3/10889035741470030830827987437816582766592 inch  
1/11150372599265311570767859136324180752990208 inch = 3/21778071482940061661655974875633165533184 inch  
1/22300745198530623141535718272648361505980416 inch = 3/43556142965880123323311949751266331066368 inch  
1/44601490397061246283071436545296723011960832 inch = 3/87112285931760246646623899502532662132736 inch  
1/89202980794122492566142873090593446023921664 inch = 3/174224571863520493293247799005065324265472 inch  
1/178405961588244985132285746181186892047843328 inch = 3/348449143727040986586495598010130648530944 inch  
1/356811923176489970264571492362373784095686656 inch = 3/696898287454081973172991196020261297061888 inch  
1/713623846352979940529142984724747568191373312 inch = 3/1393796574908163946345982392040522594123776 inch  
1/1427247692705959881058285969449495136382746624 inch = 3/2787593149816327892691964784081045188247552 inch  
1/2854495385411919762116571938898990272765493248 inch = 3/5575186299632655785383929568162090376495104 inch  
1/5708990770823839524233143877797980545530986496 inch = 3/11150372599265311570767859136324180752990208 inch  
1/11417981541647679048466287755595961091061972992 inch = 3/22300745198530623141535718272648361505980416 inch  
1/22835963083295358096932575511191922182123945984 inch = 3/44601490397061246283071436545296723011960832 inch  
1/45671926166590716193865151022383844364247891968 inch = 3/89202980794122492566142873090593446023921664 inch  
1/91343852333181432387730302044767688728495783936 inch = 3/178405961588244985132285746181186892047843328 inch  
1/182687704666362864775460604089535377456991567872 inch = 3/356811923176489970264571492362373784095686656 inch  
1/365375409332725729550921208179070754913983135744 inch = 3/713623846352979940529142984724747568191373312 inch  
1/730750818665451459101842416358141509827966271488 inch = 3/1427247692705959881058285969449495136382746624 inch  
1/1461501637330902918203684832716283019655932542976 inch = 3/2854495385411919762116571938898990272765493248 inch  
1/2923003274661805836407369665432566039311865085952 inch = 3/5708990770823839524233143877797980545530986496 inch  
1/5846006549323611672814739330865132078623730171904 inch = 3/11417981541647679048466287755595961091061972992 inch  
1/11692013098647223345629478661730264157247460343808 inch = 3/22835963083295358096932575511191922182123945984 inch  
1/23384026197294446691258957323460528314494920687616 inch = 3/45671926166590716193865151022383844364247891968 inch  
1/46768052394588893382517914646921056628989841375232 inch = 3/91343852333181432387730302044767688728495783936 inch  
1/93536104789177786765035829293842113257979682750464 inch = 3/182687704666362864775460604089535377456991567872 inch  
1/187072209578355573530071658587684226515959365500928 inch = 3/365375409332725729550921208179070754913983135744 inch  
1/374144419156711147060143317175368453031918731001856 inch = 3/730750818665451459101842416358141509827966271488 inch  
1/748288838313422294120286634350736906063837462003712 inch = 3/1461501637330902918203684832716283019655932542976 inch  
1/1496577676626844588240573268701473812127674924007424 inch = 3/2923003274661805836407369665432566039311865085952 inch  
1/2993155353253689176481146537402947624255349848014848 inch = 3/5846006549323611672814739330865132078623730171904 inch  
1/5986310706507378352962293074805895248510699696029696 inch = 3/11692013098647223345629478661730264157247460343808 inch  
1/11972621413014756705924586149611790497021399392059392 inch = 3/23384026197294446691258957323460528314494920687616 inch  
1/23945242826029513411849172299223580994042798784118784 inch = 3/46768052394588893382517914646921056628989841375232 inch  
1/47890485652059026823698344598447161988085597568237568 inch = 3/93536104789177786765035829293842113257979682750464 inch  
1/95780971304118053647396689196894323976171195136475136 inch = 3/187072209578355573530071658587684226515959365500928 inch  
1/191561942608236107294793378393788647952342390272950272 inch = 3/374144419156711147060143317175368453031918731001856 inch  
1/383123885216472214589586756787577295904684780545900544 inch = 3/748288838313422294120286634350736906063837462003712 inch  
1/766247770432944429179173513575154591809369561091801088 inch = 3/1496577676626844588240573268701473812127674924007424 inch  
1/1532495540865888858358347027150309183618739122183602176 inch = 3/2993155353253689176481146537402947624255349848014848 inch  
1/3064991081731777716716694054300618367237478244367204352 inch = 3/59863107065073783529622930748058952485106996960296



# THE ROUTES OF NADIRSHAH IN IRAQ



- Line of march of Nadir Shah's troops.
- Town
- - - - - Ottoman - Iranian frontiers
- ..... Wilaya boundary
- Water

# Plan von Mōsul.

Maßstab 1:10000

## Zeichenerklärung.

- 1 Christliche Kirchen und Kapellen.
- 2 Islamische Moscheen und andere Heiligtümer.
- 3 Friedhöfe.
- 4 Telegraph.
- 5 Gärten.
- 6 Militär-Lager (Zelte).
- 7 Auffällender Baum.
- 8 Gebüsch.
- 9 Karawansstraße oder wichtiger Weg.
- 10 Pfad.
- 11 Sumpf.
- 12 Sonstiges Übersichts-umgebungsgebiet.

## Stadtbezirke.

- I. Bezirk Schöch Muhammed.
- II. Bāb el Dschedid.
- III. Kantara.
- IV. Mansuriye.
- V. Bāb el-Bed.
- VI. Majāse.
- VII. Minmiden.
- VIII. Bāb Lakasch.
- IX. Omar el-Mauln.
- X. Imām Aun ed-Din.
- XI. Schahr Schauk.
- XII. Chafradsch.
- XIII. Tscholok.
- XIV. Rabi'ije.
- XV. Sordachane.
- XVI. Schöch Abu l'Ali.
- XVII. Chufām Moschee.
- XVIII. Nakyschly Hammām.
- XIX. Amk el-Bakal.
- XX. Dschām el-Kabir.
- XXI. Dschām el-Dschamschid.
- XXII. Imām Ibrahim.
- XXIII. Bāb el-Nabi.
- XXIV. Hōsch el-Chān.
- XXV. Na'ibendiye.
- XXVI. Maidān.
- XXVII. Ras el-Kör.
- XXVIII. el-Mekdāwi.
- XXIX. Bāb el-Mesdchid.
- XXX. el-Chāturiye.
- XXXI. Judenbezirk.
- XXXII. Abd Chab.

Exerzier-Platz

Felder

Schöch Muhammed el-Chuyfān

Der östliche und westliche Rand der Karte sind nach Maßstab Nord gerichtet. Messung von 2° Ost.

## BIBLIOGRAPHIES



## BIBLIOGRAPHIES

### 1. ARCHIVES

State Papers 97 - Turkey , vols. 24 - 32.

These record the correspondence between Mr. Stanhope Aspinwall, the British Resident in Istanbul and the Foreign Office in London , Public Record Office in London .

British Parliamentary Papers , Great Britain , Foreign Office .

Reports on the Trade of the Wilayet of Mosul , vol. LXXIX 1889 - and vol. C. 1912 , Public Record Office in London .

Eighteenth Century Archives Nationales.

E. de St. Albert , " Letters from Baghdad " L. dated 14/9/1743 A.D. , fol. 17 , Biblotheque Nationale in Paris .

---

### 2. MANUSCRIPTS

al-Baghawī , Muhammad al-Hasan Ibn Mas'ūd . Masābīh al-Sunna ,  
Auqāf Library in Mosul , No. 21 / 2  
Sā'igh and Chalabī .

al-Basīrī , Khalīl and al-Fakhrī , 'Abdullāh .  
Urjūza fī Hisār al-Mawṣil, Staatsbibliothek  
of Berlin , No. 9802 .

al-Chalabī , Dawūd . Zubdat al-Āthār al-Jaliyya ,  
 — فقرات تخص الموصل وتمس تاريخ البلاد العربية —  
 Auqāf Library in Mosul , No. 10/7  
 Chalabī .

Zubdat al-Āthār al-Jaliyya ,  
 — فقرات تخص الموصل وحواليها مسئلة من  
 كتاب الآثار الجلية في الحوادث الارضية —  
 Auqāf Library in Mosul , No. 13/7  
 Chalabī .

al-Halabī , 'Alī Ibrāhīm. al-Sīra al-Halabiyya ,  
 Auqāf Library in Mosul , No. 3/15  
 Rābi'iyya and 'Uthmāniyya .

al-Hanafī , 'Umar Ibn Muhammad Ibn 'Awwād al-Shāmī .  
Nisāb al-Ihtisāb , Auqāf Library in  
 Mosul, No. 37/6 Madrasat Hāj Husain  
 Pasha .

al-Jalīlī , Mahmūd ( see Manuscripts : al-'Umarī, Yāsīn).

al-Jalīlī , Yahya Aghā Ibn 'Abdū . Sirāj al-Mulūk wa Minhāj  
al-Sulūk , British Museum Library ,  
 No. 23306 .

al-Kākī , Qīwān al-Dīn Muhammad Ibn Muhammad Ibn Ahmad .  
'Uyūn al-Madhāhib al-Kāmilī , Auqāf  
 Library in Mosul , No. 18/8  
 Muhammadiyya .

al-Maqdisī , Muwaffaq al-Dīn Abū Muhammad Ibn 'Abdullāh Ibn Ahmad  
 Ibn Muhammad Ibn Qudāma.  
al-Tibyān fī Ansāb al-Qurashiyīn ,  
 Auqāf Library in Mosul , No. 2/15  
 Hāj Zakar .

al-Qurtubī , Abū 'Umar Yūsuf Ibn 'Abdullāh Ibn 'Abdulbār al-Nimrī .  
al-Istī'āb fī Ma'rifat al-Ashāb ,  
 Auqāf Library in Mosul , No. 1/12  
 Ahmadiyya .

al-Safadī , Salāh al-Dīn Khalīl Ibn Aibuk .  
Nakt al-Himyan fī Nukt al-'Imyan ,  
 Staatsbibliothek of Berlin, No. 9866.

al-Samarqandī , Abū al-Laith Nasr Ibn Muhammad .  
Bustān al-'Arifīn , Auqāf Library in  
 Mosul , No. 1/4 Madrasat Hāj Husain  
 Pasha .

al-Suyūtī , Jalāl al-Dīn . al-Nafha al-Muskiyya wa al-Tuhfa  
al-Makkiyya , Auqāf Library in Mosul,  
 No. 23/19 al-Nabī Shīth .

al-Turkumān , Iskandar Bey Munshī' . 'Ālim Ārāy 'Abbāsī ( Persian  
 Text ) , Biblotheque Nationale in  
 Paris , No. Supp. 1348 .

al-'Umarī , 'Alī Ibn Yāsīn . Rawdat al-Akhbār fī Afrād al-Akhyār ,  
 British Museum Library , No. Add. 23311.

al-'Umarī , Muḥammad Amīn al-Khatīb .  
Manhal al-Awliya' wa Mashrab al-Asfiya'  
min Sādāt al-Mawsil al-Hadba' , British  
 Museum Library , No. Or. 2429 .

Masrah al-Wafā wa Manhal al-Safā fī  
Sharh Dhāt al-Shafā , Iraqi Museum  
 Library in Baghdad , No. 797 .

al-'Umarī , Nāzim . ( see Manuscripts : al-'Umarī, Yāsīn ) .

al-'Umārī, Yāsīn

- al-'Adhib al-Safī fī Tashīl al-Qawāfī,  
Auqāf Library in Mosul , Majmū' No.  
64/9 Chalabī .
- al-Āthār al-Jaliyya fī al-Hawādith  
al-Ardiyya , The Library of the Iraqi  
Academy of Sciences in Baghdad , vol.  
I No. ١٢٢ , vol. II No. ١٢٢ .  
British Museum Library, No. Or. 6300 .
- al-Durr al-Maknūn fī al-Ma'āthir  
al-Madiya min al-Qurūn :  
( = DUR. 1 : Vienna and Paris MSS )  
Osterreichischen Nationalbibliothek  
of Vienna , MS No. 2412, Mixt. 1607.  
Biblotheque Nationale in Paris , MS  
No. Arabe 4949 .  
The Private Library of Nāzim al-'Umārī.
- al-Durr al-Maknūn fī al-Ma'āthir  
al-Madiya min al-Qurūn :  
( = DUR. 2 : Berlin and the two  
British MSS ) Staatsbibliothek of  
Berlin , No. 9485, under the title:  
( Tārīkh Yāsīn Efendi al-'Umārī ).  
British Museum Library , MS No. Add.  
23.313 ; MS No. Add. 23.312 .
- Ghāyat al-Bayān fī Manāqib Sulaimān,  
Staatsbibliothek of Berlin , MS No.  
9901 .
- Ghāyat al-Maram fī Mahāsin Baghdād  
Dār al-Salām , Iraqi Museum Library  
in Baghdad . 3 copies of this MS No.  
(324) , (1811) and (2142) .

Khulāsat al-Tawārīkh , Staatsbibliothek  
of Berlin , MS No. 9900 .

Manhaj al-Thuqāt fī Tarājim al-Qudāt ,  
Auqāf Library in Mosul , MS No. 5/14 Khaiyāt.  
The Private Library of Mahmūd al-Jalīlī .

Manzūma fī Hawādith al-Mawsil, Auqāf Library  
in Mosul , Majmū' No. 71/24 Ahmadiyya .

Munyat al-Udabā' fī Tārīkh al-Mawsil  
al-Hadba' , British Museum Library ,  
MS No. Add. 23323 .

Qasā'id , Auqāf Library in Mosul ,  
Majmū' No. 31/17 Sā'igh - Chalabī .

Qurrat al-'Ainain fī Tarājim al-Hasan  
wa al-Husain , the original MS is preserved  
in the private Library of M.S. al-Jalīlī in  
Mosul . See also the private Library of  
'Alī al-Jamīl in Mosul .

al-Rawda al-Faiha' fī Tawārīkh al-Nisā'  
Staatsbibliothek of Berlin, MS No. 9902 .  
Auqāf Library in Baghdad , MS No. 5803 .  
Iraqi Museum Library , MS No. 1802 .

al-Saif al-Muhannad fī Manāqib man Summiya  
Ahmad , Madrasat Yahya Pasha in Mosul ,  
MS No. ١٢٠ / ٥٢٤ .

'Umdat al-Bayān fī Tasārīf al-Zamān , Iraqi  
Museum Library , MS No. 9084 ; and the private  
Library of Nāzim al-'Umārī in Mosul .

Umm al-Dunya , Staatsbibliothek of Berlin ,  
MS No. 9486 under the title :  
Tārīkh Yāsīn Efendi al-'Umārī .

'Unwān al-A'yān fī dhikr Mulūk al-Zamān ,  
Staatsbibliothek of Berlin , MS No. 9484 .

'Unwān al-Sharaf , 2 copies of this work  
are preserved in Bibliotheque Nationale  
of Paris , MSS No. Arabe 5792 , Arabe 5138.  
The 3rd copy is preserved in the Library  
of the School of Oriental and African  
Studies in London University, MS No. 49780.

Nazmī-Zādeh , Murtada .

Tarjamat Awliya' Baghdad , Auqāf Library  
in Mosul , MS No. 4/22 Hasaniyya .

Qara Chalabī-Zādeh , 'Abdul-'Azīz Efendi .

Rawdat al-Abrār fī Fath Baghdad ,  
Suleymaniye Library in Istanbul, MS No. 2089.

Anon.

Majmū'at al-Tawārīkh fī Madh Wuzarā' Banī  
'Abdul-Jalīl , Auqāf Library in Mosul ,  
Majmū' No. 50/9 Chalabī .

Anon.

Vak'a-i Nadiri . This is an account of  
the siege of Mosul written by a supporter  
of Hāj Husain Pasha al-Jalīlī . British  
Museum Library , MS No. 7867 ( Turkish  
Text ) .

---

### 3. MISCELLANEOUS WORKS OF REFERENCE

Estimate based on figures given in Iraq ,  
Ministry of Social Affairs , Baghdad , 1954 .

I R A Q , Survey book , London , 1944 .

Musul Vilāyeti Salnāmesi , nr. 2 , 1310 A.H. = 1892 A.D.  
nr. 3 , 1312 A.H. = 1894 A.D.  
nr. 4 , 1325 A.H. = 1907 A.D.  
nr. 5 , 1330 A.H. = 1912 A.D.

Mu'ahadāt Dawlat 'Aliyya Irān bā Duwal Khārija ,  
Tehran , 1326 A.H.

Mu'ahadat 'Ummūmiyya Majmu'asi , Istanbul , 1294 A.H.

The Middle East : A Political and Economic Survey ,  
Preface by Elizabeth Monroe , 2nd ed. , Britain , 1954 .

### 4. GENERALIA & ENCYCLOPAEDIAS

An Encyclopedia of World History , Compiled and edited by  
W.L. Langer , 5th ed. , London , 1972 .

Islam Ansiklopedesi , 11 vols. in progress , Istanbul, 1944- .

Slavonic Encyclopaedia , 1 vol. , ed. by Joseph S. Roucek ,  
New York , 1949 .

The Cambridge History of Iran , vol. I : The Land of Iran ,  
ed. by W.B. Fisher , Cambridge , 1968 .

The Cambridge History of Poland , vol. I , Cambridge, 1930 .

The Hutchinson History of the World , 1 vol. , ed. by J.M. Roberts , London , 1976 .

The Encyclopaedia of Islam , 4 vols. and supplement , ed. by T. Houtsma , T.W. Arnold , R. Basset , and R. Hartmann , Leiden and London , 1913 - 1938 .

The Encyclopaedia of Islam , the new edition , 4 vols. in progress , ed. by H.A.R. Gibb , J.H. Kramers , E. Levi-Provencal, J. Schact , B. Lewis , C. Pellat , and V. Menage , Leiden and London , 1954 - .

The New Cambridge Modern History , vol. II : The Reformation 1520 - 1559 , Cambridge , 1958 .

The Penguin Encyclopaedia of Places , ed. by W.G. Moore , 2nd edition , G. Britain , 1978 .

The Princeton Encyclopedia of Classical Sites , 1 vol. , ed. by Richard Stillwell , Princeton , 1976 .

---

## 5. CATALOGUES

- |                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| Ahmad , S.A.      | . <u>A Descriptive Catalogue of Manuscripts in the Awqāf Library in Mosul</u> , 9 vols. , Mosul, 1975 - 1980 .              |
| Ahlwardt, W.      | . <u>Die Handschriften - Verzeichnisse der Koniglichen Bibliothek Zu Berlin</u> , Neunter Band , Berlin , 1927 ;(12 vols.). |
| al-Chalabī, Dāwūd | . <u>Makhtūtāt al-Mawsil</u> , Baghdad, 1927.<br>( see also, Manuscripts and Arabic Books).                                 |



- Blochet , E. . Catalogue des Manuscrits Arabs  
des Nouvelles Acquisitions 1884-  
1924 , Paris , 1925 .
- Brockelmann, Carl . Geschichte der Arabischen Litteratur,  
5 vols. , Leiden - Brill, 1937-1949.
- Loebenstein, Helen . Katalog der Arabischen Handschriften  
der Oesterreichen Nationalbibliothek,  
Neuerwerbungen 1868-1968 , Teil I ,  
Wien , 1970 .
- Sezgin, Fuat . Geschichte des Arabischen Schrifttums,  
8 vols. , Leiden - Brill, 1967-1982 .
- The British Museum . Catalogus Codicum Orientalium qui in  
Museo Britannico Asservantur, Pars  
Secunda Codices Arabicos, Amplectens  
II, Londini , MDCCCLXXI .

## 6. DICTIONARIES

- 'Abdul-Bāqī, Muḥammad Fu'ād .  
al-Mu'jam al-Mufahras li-Alfāz  
al-Qur'ān al-Karīm, Beirut ----- .  
(Reprint of Cairo ed. , 1945 ) .
- Abū al-Fidā, 'Imād al-Dīn Ismā'īl Ibn Muḥammad Ibn 'Umar,  
(d. 732 A.H. = 1330 A.D.)  
. Taqwīm al-Buldān, ed. by Par M. Reinaud and  
M. Le B Mac Guckin de Siane, Paris,  
Al'Imprimerie Royale, M DCCC XL.
- al-Ḥamawī, Yāqūt . Mu'jam al-Buldān, ed. by Wustenfēld,  
6 vols. , Leipzig , 1868-1870 .  
(Reprinted in Tehran, 1965 ) .

- 'Awwād, Kūrgīs . A Dictionary of Iraqi Authors,  
Baghdad, 1969 , ( Arabic Text ).
- Hammond, G.L. and Scullard, H.H. . The Oxford Classical Dictionary,  
2nd ed., Oxford, 1979.
- Ibn Khallikān, Ahmad . Wafayāt al-A'yān, ed. by Ihsān  
'Abbās, 8 vols., Beirut, 1968-1972.
- Kahhālā, 'Umar Ridā . Mu'jam al-Mu'allifīn, 15 vols. ,  
Damascus, 1957-1961 .
- Kātib Celebi, Mustafā Hāj Khalīfa . Kashf al-Zunūn 'an Asmā' al-Kutub  
wa al-Funūn, Istanbul, 1943. (6 vols.)  
( see also, 9. Turkish Books).
- Palmer, A.W. . A Dictionary of Modern History  
1789-1942, London , 1962.
- Redhouse, Sir James W. . A Turkish and English Lexicon ,  
Constantinople, 1921.
- Semseddīn, Sāmī . Kāmūs al-A'lām, 6 vols., Istanbul,(no date).
- Wensinck, A.J. and Mensing, J.P. . Concordance et Indices de la  
Tradition Musulmane, 7 vols.  
Leiden - Brill, 1936-1969.
- Zirkilī ( or al-Zirkilī ) , Khair al-Dīn . al-A'lām, 10 vols., 2nd ed. ,  
Cairo, 1954-1959.
-

7. ARABIC BOOKS

- al-Ālūsī, Mahmūd Shukrī . al-Misk al-Adhfar fī Tarājim Rijāl al-Qarn al-Thālith 'Ashar, Baghdad 1348 A.H.
- al-'Azzāwī, 'Abbās . Tārīkh al-Adab al-'Arabī fī al-'Irāq 1534-1917 , vol. 2, Baghdad, 1962.
- . Tārīkh al-'Irāq bain Ihtilālain, 8 vols., Baghdad, 1935-1956.
- . 'Ashā'ir al-'Irāq, 4 vols., Baghdad,
- al-Bitlīsī, Idrīs . al-Sharafnamah, Cairo, 1958.
- al-Chalabī, Dāwūd . Kalimat Fārisiyya fī 'Āmmiyyat al-Mawsil, Baghdad, 1960.
- . Zubdat al-Āthār al-Jaliyya fī al-Hawādith al-Ardiyya : This was originally compiled by Yāsīn al-'Umārī, and abstracted by Dāwūd al-Chalabī ; ed. by 'Imād 'Abdul-Salām Ra'ūf , Najaf, 1974.
- ( see also Manuscripts and Catalogues ).
- al-Daiwachī, Sa'īd . Jawāmi' al-Mawsil fī Mukhtalaf al-'Usūr, Baghdad, 1963 .
- . al-Mawsil Umm al-Rabī'ain, Baghdad , 1965.
- ( see also Muhammad Amin al-'Umārī and Yāsīn al-'Umārī in Arabic Books, and Daiwachi in Articles & Periodicals).

- al-Damlūchī, Siddīq . al-Yazīdiyya, Mosul, 1949.
- . Imārat Bahdīnān aw Imārat al-'Imādiyya, Mosul, 1952.
- al-Ghulāmī, Muhammad Ibn Mustafā
- . Shammamat al-'Anbar wa al-Zahr al-Mu'anbar, ed. by Salīm al-Nu'aimī, Baghdad, 1977.
- al-Ghulāmī, Ra'ūf . al-'Alam al-Samī fī Tarjamat al-Shaikh Muhammad al-Ghulāmī, Mosul, 1942.
- . Kitāb al-Muraddad min al-Amthal al-'Āmmiyya al-Mawsiliyya, ed. by Mu'aiyyad al-Ghulāmī, Baghdad, 1964.
- al-Hilwānī, Amīn . Khamsata wa Khamsūn 'Ām min Tārīkh al-'Irāq 1188-1242 A.H., Cairo , 1371 A.H.
- al-Ishāqī al-Manūfī, 'Abdul-Mu'tī
- . Akhbār al-Uwal fī man Tawallā Misr min Arbāb al-Duwal, Cairo, 1310 A.H.
- al-Jalīlī, Siddīq . al-Istiyāf fī Hammām al-'Alīl , Mosul, 1965.
- ( see also Yāsīn al-'Umārī and Hasan 'Abdul-Baqī al-Mawsilī in Arabic Books).
- al-Jalīlī, 'Uthmān al-Hayā'ī
- . al-Hijja fī man Zada 'Alā Ibn Hijja, ed. by Siddīq al-Jalīlī , Mosul, 1937.
- al-Jamīl, 'Alī . al-Tuhfa al-Saniyya fī al-Mashā'ikh al-Sanūsiyya ( The History of Libyā ), Mosul, 1915.

- al-Jibirtī, 'Abdul-Rahmān . 'Aja'ib al-Āthār fī al-Tarājim wa al-Akhbār, ed. by Hasan Muhammad Jawhar and 'Abdul-Rahmān al-Sarnajāwī, Matba'at Dār al-Bayān al-'Arabī, 1958. ( 4 vols. ), Cairo .
- al-Kirkūkī, Rasūl Hāwī . Dawḥat al-Wuzarā' fī Tārīkh Baghdād al-Zawra', Tran. M.K. Nawras, Beirut, no date .
- al-Khaiyat, Ahmad Ibn . Tarjamat al-Awliyā' fī al-Mawsil al-Hadba', ed. by S. al-Daiwachī, Mosul, 1966.
- al-Khazrajī, al-Shaikh 'Alī Ibn al-Hasan . Kitāb al-'Uqūd al-Lu'lu'iyya fī Tārīkh al-Dawla al-Rasūliyya, 2 vols., ed. by al-Shaikh Muhammad Bisyunī 'Asal , Misr, 1914.
- al-Kildānī, Butrus Nasrī . Dhakhīrat al-Adhḥān fī Tawārīkh al-Mashāriqa wa al-Maghāriba al-Siryān, Mosul, 1913.
- al-Makiryānī, Husain Hazny . 'Umara' Suran, Baghdad, no date .
- al-Makkī, Najm al-Dīn 'Umāra. Tārīkh al-Yaman, ed. by Henry Cassels Kay, London, 1892. It is also edited by Hasan Sulaimān Mahmūd, Egypt, 1957.
- al-Mawsilī, Hasan 'Abdul-Baqī . Dīwān, ed. by Ṣ. al-Jalīlī, Mosul, 1967.
- al-Muhibbī, Muhammad Amīn Ibn Fadlullāh . Khulāsat al-Athar fī A'yān al-Qarn al-Hādī 'Ashar, 4 vols., Cairo, 1868.

al-Munshi' al-Baghdādī, Muḥammad Ibn Ahmad

- . Rihlat al-Munshi' al-Baghdādī,  
ed. by 'Abbas al-'Azzawī, Baghdad,  
1948.

al-Murādī, Muḥammad Khalīl . Salk al-Durar fī A'yān al-Qarn  
al-Thānī 'Ashar, 4 vols., Cairo,  
1291 A.H.

al-Nahrawālī, Qutb al-Dīn . al-I'lām bi A'lām Baitullāh al-Haram,  
no date ; no place given .

al-Nāsirī, Muḥammad Ibn al-Khatīb  
 . Zubdat al-Hilab fī Tārīkh Halab,  
2 vols., ed. by S. al-Dahhān ,  
Damascus, 1951-1954.

al-Nu'aimī, Salīm . ( see M.M. al-Ghulamī and 'Isām  
al-'Umarī in Arabic Books ).

al-Qādirī al-Mawsilī, Fathullāh  
 . Malḥamat al-Mawsil, ( Urjūza ) ed.  
by S. al-Daiwachī, Mosul, 1965.

al-Qādirī al-Hasanī, Muḥammad  
 . Nashr al-Mathānī bi Ahl al-Qarn  
al-Hādī 'Ashar wa al-Thānī, ed. by  
Norman Cigar, ( D. Phil. thesis )  
Oxford, 1981.

al-Qārī, Raslān Ibn . Wullāt Dimashq fī al-'Ahd al-'Uthmānī,  
ed. by Salāh al-Dīn al-Munajjid ,  
Damascus, 1949.

al-Qarmanī, Ahmad Abū al-'Abbās  
 . Akhbār al-Duwal wa Āthār al-Uwal,  
Baghdad, 1869.

al-Samarra'ī, Rajā' ( see Yāsīn al-'Umarī in Arabic Books ).

al-Shihābī, al-Amīr Haidar Ahmad

- . Tārīkh al-Ghurār al-Hisān fī Akhbār Abnā' al-Zamān, 2 vols., ed. by Mughabghab in Cairo, 1900 ; and by F.A. Bustani in Beirut, 1933.

al-Sūfī, Ahmad 'Alī

- . al-Mamalīk fī al-'Irāq, Mosul, 1952.

al-Suwaīdī, 'Abdul-Rahmān

- . Ḥadīqat al-Zawrā' fī Siyar al-Wuzarā' ed. by Safā' Khulūsī, Baghdad, 1961.

al-Tha'ālibī, Abū Mansūr 'Abdul-Malik Ibn Muhammad

- . Yatīmat al-Dahr fī Mahāsin Ahl al-'Asr, 4 vols., Cairo, 1934.

al-Tha'ālibī, al-Hasan Ibn Muhammad al-Mar'ashī al-Marghanī,

- . al-Ghurār fī Siyar al-Mulūk wa Akhbārihim , \_\_\_\_\_ ( no date).

al-'Umarī, 'Isām al-Dīn 'Uthmān

- . al-Rawd al-Nadīr fī Tarjamat Uḍabā' al-'Asr, 3 vols., ed. by Salīm al-Nu'aimī, Baghdad, 1974-1975.

al-'Umarī, Muhammad Amīn al-Khatīb

- . Manḥal al-Awliyā' wa Mashrab al-Asfiyā' min Sādāt al-Mawsil al-Ḥadba', 2 vols., ed. by S. al-Daiwachī, Mosul, 1967- 8 .

al-'Umarī, Yāsīn

- . Gharā'ib al-Athar fī Hawādith Rub' al-Qarn al-Thālith 'Ashar, ed. by S. al-Jalīlī, Mosul, 1940.
- . Ghāyat al-Marām fī Tārīkh Mahāsin Baghdād Dar al-Salām, Manshūrāt al-Basrī, Baghdad, 1968.

- . (Muhaddhab) al-Rawda al-Faiḥā' fī Tawārīkh al-Nisā', ed. by Rajā' al-Sāmarra'ī, Baghdad, 1966.
- . Munyat al-Udabā' fī Tārīkh al-Mawsil al-Ḥadba', ed. by S. al-Daiwachī, Mosul, 1955.
- . Zubdat al-Āthār al-Jaliyya fī al-Hawādith al-Ardiyya, ( see Dāwūd al-Chalabī ).
- al-Yāfi'ī, 'Abdullāh . al-Durr al-Nazīm fī Khawās al-Qur'an al-Karīm, \_\_\_\_\_ .
- . Mir'āt al-Jinān wa 'Ibrat al-Yaqzān, 4 vols., Haidar-Abād, 1918.
- al-Yasū'ī, Louis Shīkhū . al-Ādāb al-'Arabiyya fī al-Qarn al-Tāsi' 'Ashar, (vol. I) 1800-70, Beirut, 1927.
- al-Zirkilī(or al-Ziriklī) Khair al-Dīn ( see Zirkilī in Dictionaries ).
- Ausābiūs, Salīm B. . Dalīl Lubnān 'Abra al-Tārīkh, Beirut, 1955.
- 'Awwād, Kūrgīs . Āthar Qadīm fī al-'Irāq : Dīr al-Rabbān Hirmizd, Mosul, 1934.
- . mā Salima min Tawārīkh al-Buldān al-'Irāqiyya , Misr, 1944.
- 'Azzāwī, 'Abbās (see al-'Azzāwī, 'Abbās ) .
- Chalabī, Dāwūd (see al-Chalabī, Dāwūd ) .



- Dahlān, Ahmad Zainī . Khulāṣat al-Kalām fī Bayān 'Umara'  
Baitullāh al-Haram, Cairo, 1305 A.H.
- Daiwachī, Sa'id (see al-Daiwachī, Sa'id ).
- Fa'iq, Sulaimān . Tārīkh Baghdād : Mir'at al-Zawra'  
fī Tārīkh al-Wuzara', Tran. by M.K.  
Nawras, Baghdad, 1962.
- Ibn al-Athīr, Diyā' al-Dīn . al-Kāmil fī al-Tārīkh, 12 vols. ,  
ed. by C.J. Thornbery, Reprinted in  
Beirut, 1966. ( Leyden , 1851-76 ).
- Ibn al-Mu'aiyad al-Yamanī, Yahyā Ibn al-Husain Ibn al-Qāsim . Ghayat al-Amanī fī Akhbār al-Qutr  
al-Yamanī, 2 vols., ed. by Sa'id  
'Abdul-Pattāh 'Āshūr, Cairo, 1968.
- Ibn al-Wardī, Zain al-Dīn 'Umar . Tatimmat al-Mukhtasar fī Akhbār  
al-Bashar, Cairo, 1868.
- . Kharīdat al-'Ajā'ib wa Farīdat  
al-Gharā'ib, Cairo, 1899.
- Ibn Iyās, Muḥammad Ibn Ahmad . Badā' al-Zuhūr fī Waqā' al-Duhūr,  
ed. by Muḥammad Mustafā, Cairo, 1960-.
- Ibn Tulūn, Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad . Mufakahat al-Khillān fī Hawādith  
al-Zamān, 2 vols., ed. by Muḥammad  
Mustafā, Cairo, 1962-4.

- Ibn Zunbul, al-Rammal . Tārīkh al-Sultān Salīm Khān Ibn al-Sultān Bayazīd Khān . . . . . Misr, 1287 A.H.
- Ishāq, Rūfā'il Bābū . Tārīkh Nasārā al-'Irāq, Baghdad , 1948.
- Lanza, Domenico . al-Mawsil fī al-Jīl al-Thāmin 'Ashar Hasb Mudhakkarat Domenico Lanza , Tran. by R. Bidawid, Mosul, 1951.
- Longrigg, S.H. . Arba'at Qurūn min Tārīkh al-'Irāq al-Hadīth, Tran. by Ja'far Khaiyāt, Notes by Mustafā Jawād, 3rd edition, Baghdad, 1962.  
(see S.H. Longrigg in Western Books).
- Ma'rūf, Nājī . The Planning of Baghdad, Baghdad 1966. ( Arabic Text ).
- Mukhtār Pashā, Muḥammad . al-Tawfiqāt al-Ilhāmiyya, Būlāq , 1311 A.H.
- Nazmī-Zādeh, Murtadā . Gulsin Hulafā, Tran. by M.K. Nawras, Baghdad, 1972.
- Ra'ūf, 'Imād 'Abdul-Salām . al-Mawsil fī al-'Ahd al-'Uthmānī : Fatrat al-Hukm al-Mahallī 1139-1249 A.H./ 1726-1834 A.D., Najaf, 1975.  
(see also Yāsīn al-'Umārī- Arabic Books).
- Sā'igh, Sulaimān . Tārīkh al-Mawsil, vol. I, Cairo, 1928; vol. II, Beirut, 1940.
- Shibr, Jāsīm . Tārīkh al-Musha'shā'in wa Tarājim A'lāmihim, Najaf, 1965.

- Sirkīs, Ya'qūb Na'um . Mabahith 'Irāqiyya fī al-Tārīkh wa al-Āthār wa Khutāt Baghdād , 2 vols., Baghdad, 1948-1953.
- Siyūfī, Niqūlā . Majmū' al-Kitābāt al-Muharrara fī Abniyat Madīnat al-Mawsil, ed. by S. al-Daiwachī, Baghdad, 1956.
- Turkhān, I. . Misr fī 'Ahd al-Mamālīk, Cairo, 1960.
- Zakī, Muhammad Amin . Tārīkh al-Kurd wa al-Kurdistan, Tran. from Kurdish by M.A. 'Awnī, Cairo , 1936.
- . Tārīkh al-Sulaimāniyya, Baghdad , 1951.
- 

#### 8. PERSIAN BOOKS

- Falsafī, Nasrullāh . Jeng Chāldīrān, Tehran, 1332 A.H.
- . Shah 'Abbās Awwal, 2 vols., Tehran, 1334 A.H.
- Nawā'ī, Husain . Shah Ismā'il Safawī, Isnād wa Mukātabāt, Tehran, 1367 A.H.
- Pazāgād, Bahā'uldīn . Garnathūrī Tārīkh Irān, Tehran, 1345 A.H.
- Sardadvār, Abū Turāb . Tārīkh-i Nizāmī va Siyāsī yi daurān-i Nādir Shah Afshār, Tehran, (no date).
- Shafaq, Riżā-Zādeh . Nādir Shah, Iran, 1339 A.H.
- Ustur-Abādī, Mirzā Mahdī-Khān. Chahāngashāy Nādirī, ed. by Saiyyd 'Abdullāh Anwār, Tehran, 1341 A.H.
-

9. TURKISH BOOKS

- al-Kirkūklī, Rasūl Hāwī. (see Arabic Books).
- Aktepe, Munīr . Patrona Isyani ( 1730 ), Istanbul, 1938.
- Amīrī, 'Alī . Tadhkirat Shu'arā' Āmid, Āmidī press, 1327 A.H.
- Ashraf, Muḥammad. (see Maps and Atlases).
- Evleyā-Celebī, Dervīs Mehmet Zelli Efendi . Seyāhatname , 4 vols., Istanbul, 1314 A.H.
- Fā'iq, Sulaimān .(see Arabic Books).
- Feridon Bey . Munshi'āt al-Salātīn, 2 vols., Istanbul, 1287 A.H.
- Gokbilgn, T. . Turkiyat Mecmuasi, Turkey, 1951.
- Hakki, Konyali . Konya Tarihi, Konya, 1964.
- Islam Ansiklopedesi. (see Generalia & Encyclopaedias).
- Jevdet, Ahmet . Tārīkh, 12 vols., Istanbul, 1302 A.H.
- Kātib Celebī, Muṣṭafā Hāj Khalīfa . Fezleke ( Compendium), Istanbul , 1288 A.H. (see also Dictionaries).
- Khuja, Sa'duldīn . Tāj al-Tawārīkh, 2 vols., Istanbul, 1862 - 1863 .
- Lutfī, Ahmet . Tārīkh, Istanbul, 1290 A.H.

- Memboury, Ernest . Istanbul Touristique, Istanbul, 1951.
- Na'imā, Mustafā . Tārīkh, 6 vols., Istanbul, 1280 A.H.
- Nazmī-Zādeh, Murtadā . ( see Arabic Books ).
- Nuri, Prer . Osmanlılarda Madeni Paralar, Istanbul, 1968.
- Paçavi, İbrāhīm . Tārīkh, Istanbul, 1283 A.H.
- Rafik, Ahmet . Koprululer, Istanbul, 1331 A.H.
- Rāsim, Ahmet . Osmanlı Tarihi, Istanbul, 1328 A.H.
- Semseddīn, Sāmī . ( see Dictionaries ).
- Silahdar, Fendakli . Silahdar Tarihi, ed. by Ahmet Rafik, Istanbul, 1928.
- Subhī, Muḥammad . Tārīkh Subhī, Istanbul, 1196 A.H.
- Thuraiyyā, Muḥammad . Tarikh : Sejelli Osmani, Istanbul , 1808 - 1816 .
- Uzuncarsili, Ismail . Osmanlı Tarihi, 4 vols., Ankara , 1956.
- Wāsif, Ahmet . Mahāsin al-Āthār, Istanbul, 1219 A.H.
-

10. WESTERN BOOKS

- Alderson, A.D. . The Structure of the Ottoman Empire,  
Oxford, 1956.
- al-Feel, M.R. . The Historical Geography of Iraq,  
between the Mongolian and Ottoman  
Conquests 1258 - 1534, vol. I ,  
Nejef, 1965. ( Ph.D. Thesis )
- Allen, W.E.D. . Problems of Turkish Power in the  
sixteenth Century, London, 1963.
- Allen, W.E.D. and Muratoff, P. . Caucasian Battlefields, Cambridge,  
1953.
- Anderson, M.S. . Europe in the Eighteenth Century  
1713 - 1783 , 2nd edition, London ,  
1979.
- Arnold, Sir T.W. . The Caliphate, Oxford, 1924.
- Baker, B. Cranville . The Passing of the Turkish Empire,  
London, 1913.
- Barber, Noel . The Sultan, New York, 1973.
- Barber, Karl K. . Ottoman Rule in Damascus 1708-1758,  
Princeton, 1980 . ( Ph.D. Thesis )
- Batatu, Hanna . The Old Social Classes and the  
Revolutionary Movements of Iraq,  
Princeton, 1978.
- Bell, G.L. . Syria : the Desert , the Sown ,  
London, 1919.  
( see also Maps and Sketches ).

- Bellan, L.L. . Chah Abbas I, Paris, 1932.
- Bockman, Eric . The Two Sieges of Rhodes 1480-1522,  
London, 1969.
- Bosworth, C.E. . The Islamic Dynasties, Edinburgh,  
1967.
- Bradford, Ernle . The Great Siege : Malta 1565 ,  
London , 1979.
- Buckingham, J.S. . Travels among the Arab Tribes ,  
London, 1825.
- . Travels in Assyria, Media and Persia,  
2 vols., London, 1830 .
- Cassels, Lavender . The Struggle for the Ottoman Empire  
1717 - 1740, London, 1966.
- Creasy, E.S. . History of the Ottoman Turks,  
Reprinted in Beirut, 1961.
- Davison, Roderic H. . Turkey : A Short History, New Jersey,  
1981.
- De Gaury, Gerald . Rulers of Mecca, London, 1951.
- Edmonds, C.J. . Kurds, Turks and Arabs, London, 1951.
- Eversley, Lord . The Turkish Empire from 1288 to 1914,  
London, 1923.
- Fisher, A. . The Crimean Tatars, Stanford, Calif :  
Hoover Insitution Press, 1978 .
- Fraser, J.B. . Travels in Kurdistan and Mesopotamia,  
London, 1840.

- Furet, F. and Richet, D. . French Revolution, Woking, 1970.
- Georgacas, D.J. . The Names of the Asia Minor Peninsula, Heidelberg, 1971.
- Gibb, E.J.W. . History of the Ottoman Poetry, 6 vols., London, 1900-1909.
- Gibb, H.A.R. and Bowen, Harold . Islamic Society and the West, 2 parts, part I, Oxford, 1950 ; part II, Oxford, 1957.
- Glisnan, Michael . Saint and Sufi in Modern Egypt, Oxford, 1937.
- Goormachtigh, B.M. . Histoire de la Mission Dominicaine en Mesopotamia et en Kurdistan, Rome, 1896 .
- Hammer-Purgstall, Joseph von . Geschichte der Osmanischen Reiches, 10 vols., Wien, 1828. ( Reprinted in Graz- Austria, 1963 ).
- Hay, W.R. . Two Years in Kurdistan, London, 1921.
- Herold, J. Christopher . Bonaparte in Egypt, London, 1963.
- Hill, Sir George . A History of Cyprus, 4 vols., Cambridge, 1948 - 1952 .
- Hitti, Philip K. . History of Syria including Lebanon and Palestine, London, 1951.
- . History of the Arabs, 10th edition, Hong Kong, 1980 .
- . Lebanon in History, London, 1957.



- Inalcik, Halil
- . The Ottoman Empire : Conquest , Organisation and Economy, ( Collected Studies ) London, 1978.
  - . The Ottoman Empire : The Classical Age 1300 - 1600 , Tran. by Norman Ilzkowits and Colin Imber, London 1973.
- Ingrams, Harold
- . The Yaman, London, 1963.
- Ives, E.
- . Journey from Persia to England by an unusual Route, London, MDCCLXXIII (= 1773 ).
- Jones, W.
- . History of the Life of Nadir Shah, King of Persia, London, 1882.
- Keane, A.H.
- . Asia with Ethnological Appendix, London, 1882.
- Kemp, Percy
- . Mosul and Mosuli Historians of the Jalili Era 1726 - 1834, ( D. Phil. thesis ) . It is preserved in Oxford New Bodelian Library .( Oxford, 1980).
- Kinneir, J.M.
- . A Geographical Memoir of the Persian Empire, London, 1813.
- Koenigsberger, H.G. and Mosse, G.L.
- . General History of Europe : Europe in the sixteenth Century, London, 1979.
- Kortepeter, Carl Max
- . Ottoman Imperialism During the Reformation : Europe and the Caucasus, London, 1972.
- Lamb, H.
- . Sulaiman the Magnificent, Bristol , 1952.

- Lane Poole, Stanley . The Mohammadan Dynasties, Paris, 1925.
- Lang, R. Hamilton . Cyprus, London, 1878.
- Lanza, Domenico ( see Arabic Books ).
- Legrand, E. ve Guys, H. . Bibliographie Albanaise, Paris & Athene, 1912.
- Le Strange, G. . The Land of the Eastern Caliphate, London, 1905.
- Lockhart, Laurence . Nadir Shah, London, 1938.
- Longrigg, Stephen Hemsley . Four Centuries of Modern Iraq, Oxford, 1925 . ( see also Arabic Books )
- Lorimer, J.G. . Gazetteer of the Persian Gulf , Oman and Central Arabia, 5 vols., Calcutta, 1908-1915. ( Republished in Holand 1970 ).
- Luke, Harry C. . Mosul and its Minorities, London, 1925.
- Lybyer, A.H. . The Government of the Ottoman Empire in the Time of Sulaiman the Magnificent, Cambridge, 1913.
- Macartney, C.A. . The Habsburg and Hohenzollern Dynasties in the Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries, New York, 1970.
- Malcolm, John . History of Persia, London, 1815.
- Mallowan, M.E.L. . Nimrud and its Remains, 2 vols., London, 1966.
- Marco-Polo . The Travels, Translated and with an introduction by Ronald Latham, London, 1979.

- Mayer, Li. A. . Bibliography of Muslim Numismatics, London, 1939.
- Merriman, R.B. . Sulaiman the Magnificent 1520-1566, Harvard, 1944.
- Muir, W. . The Mameluke , or Slave Dynasty of Egypt 1260-1571, Amsterdam, 1968.
- Muller, Herbert J. . The Loom of History, New York, 1958.
- Muller-Wiener, Wolfgang . Bildlexikon Zur Topographie Istanbul, Germany, 1977.
- Niebuhr, C. . Reisebeschreibung nach Arabian und andern Umliegende Landern, 2 vols. , 1908; (Reprinted). There is a French translation of this book entitled : "Voyage en Arabie et en d'autres pays circonvoisins", Amsterdam, 1776.
- Olson, Robert W. . The Siege of Mosul and Ottoman - Persian Relations 1718-1743, Indiana, 1975.
- Otter, M. . Voyage en Turquie et en Perse, Paris, 1748.
- Palles, Alexander . In the Days of the Janissaries , London, 1951.
- Parry, V.J. . A History of the Ottoman Empire to 1730 , ed. by M.A. Cook, Cambridge, 1976.
- Pennington, D.H. . Seventeenth - Century Europe, London, 1970.

- Perry, John R. . Karim Khan Zand : A History of Iran 1747-1779 , Chicago, 1979.
- Pitcher, Donald E. . An Historical Geography of the Ottoman Empire from Earliest Time to the End of the Sixteenth Century, Leiden-Brill, 1972 .
- Pounds, Norman J.G. . Eastern Europe, London, 1969.
- Rabino, H.L. . Mazandaran and Astarabad, London, 1928.
- Rich, C.J. . Narrative of a Residence in Koordistan, 2 vols., London, 1836.
- Savory, R. . Iran under the Safavid, Cambridge, 1980.
- Searight, Sarah . The British in the Middle East, London, 1969.
- Shaw, Stanford J. . History of the Ottoman Empire and Modern Turkey, 2 vols.; vol. I is entitled: "Empire of the Gazis : The Rise and Decline of the Ottoman Empire 1280-1808" , Cambridge, 1978.
- Shay, M.L. . The Ottoman Empire from 1720 to 1734, New York, 1973.
- Spiridonakis, B.G. . Empire Ottoman : Inventaire des Memoires et Documents aux Archives du Ministere des Affaires Etrangeres de France, Thessaloniki, 1973.
- Spry, W.J.J. . Life on the Bosphorus , Turkey Past and Present : History of the Early Turkish Empire, Chronicles of the Caliphs, London, 1895.

- Stocqueler, J.H. . Fifteen months pilgrimage through untrodden parts of Khuzistan and Persia , London, 1832.
- Stookey, R.W. . Yaman, U.S.A., 1978.
- Stoye, John . The Siege of Vienna, London, 1964.
- Sykès, Sir M. . Through Five Turkish Provinces, London, 1900 .
- Sykes, Sir P. . A History of Persia, 2 vols., London, 1930.
- Summer, B.H. . Peter the Great and the Ottoman Empire, Oxford : Blackwells, 1949.
- Tavernier, J.B. . Nouvelle Relation de l'Intérieur du Serail du Grand Seigneur, Paris, 1675.
- Toynbee, J. Arnold . A Study of History, Abridgement of vols. I-VI by D.C. Somervell, Oxford, 1946.
- Trimingham, J. Spencer . The Sufi Orders in Islam, Oxford, 1971.
- Walpole, Lieut. F. . The Ansayrii , with travels to the further east, London, 1851.
- Waterfield, Gordon . Leyard of Nineveh, London, 1963.
- Wigram, W.A. . The Assyrians and their Neighbours, London, 1929.
- Wright, W.L. . Ottoman Statecraft, Princeton, 1935.
- Young, G. . Constantinople, London, ( no date ).
-

11. ARTICLES & PERIODICALS

al-Jamīl, Sayyār K.A.

Article No.1, "The Ottoman Domination of Mosul and al-Jazīra District, 1516 A.D.", Mesopotamia Quarterly Journal, No. 30 , 1980, pp. 189-202 ( Part one of the article); No. 31, 1980, pp. 325-349 ( Part two of the article ).

Article No. 2, " The Strategic Location of Iraq and the beginnings of the Ottoman-Persian Conflict", Āfāq 'Arabiyya Journal, No. 10, Joun 1981.

Article No. 3, " The Assyrians and Toynbee", Mesopotamia Quarterly Journal, No. 13, 1976 , pp. 5 - 17.

'Awwād, Kūrgīs

"Makhtūtāt Maktabat al-Mathaf al-'Irāqī bi Baghdād ", Majalat Ma'had al-Makhtūtāt al-'Arabiyya ( = Revue de L'institut des Manuscrits 'Arabes), vol. I , Cairo, May 1957, pp. 37 - 82.

"al-Makhtūtāt al-Tārīkhiyya fī Khazānat Kutub al-Mathaf al-'Irāqī bi Baghdād ", SUMER, vol. 13, Bagdad, 1957, pp.40-82.

Bain, R. Nisbit

"The Siege of Belgrade by Muḥammad II, July 1-23 , 1456", The English Historical Review, vol. VII, 1892 , pp. 235 - 252 .

Beckingham, C.F.

"Some Early Travels in Arabia ", Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society , London, 1949.

- Bryer, David R.W. . "The Origins of the Druze Religion ",  
Der Islam, No. 53, 1976, pp. 5-27.
- Daiwachī, Sa'īd . " Jāmi' al-Nabī Jirjīs fī al-Mawsil ",  
SUMER, vol. 17, 1961.
- . " Jisr al-Mawsil fī Mukhtalaf al-'Usūr"  
SUMER, vol. 12, 1956.
- . " Madāris al-Mawsil fī al-'Ahd al-'Uthmānī",  
SUMER, vol. 18, 1962.
- . " Qal'at al-Mawsil fī Mukhtalaf al-'Usūr",  
SUMER, vol. 10, 1954.
- . " Sūr al-Mawsil", SUMER, vol. 3, 1947.
- . " Umayyad Mosque in Mosul, SUMER, vol. 5,  
1950.
- . " Urjūzat al-Saiyyd Khalīl al-Basīr ",  
Majalat al-Majma' al-'ilmī al-'Irāqī,  
(= Journal of the Iraqi Academy of  
Sciences ), vol. 13, Baghdad, 1966 ,  
pp. 247 - 264.
- Haddad, George M. . " The historical work of Niqula al-Turk  
1763 - 1828 ", Journal of the American  
Oriental Society, vol. 81, 1961 , pp.  
247 - 251 .
- Hess, A.C. . " The Ottoman conquest of Egypt 1517,  
and the beginning of the sixteenth  
century world war ", International  
Journal of Middle East Studies , vol.  
4, 1973.
- Hoenerbach, Wilhelm . " Uber Einige Arabische Handschriften in  
Baghdad and Tetuan", Oriens , vol. 8 ,  
1955, pp. 96 - 119.

- Lewis, Bernard . " The Impact of the French Revolution on Turkey", Journal of World History , vol. I, 1953, pp. 105 - 125.
- Mantran, Robert . "Baghdad a l'époque Ottoman", Arabica , Special vol. , 1962, pp. 311-324.
- Miller, W. . " Europe and the Ottoman power before the Nineteenth Century ", The English Historical Review, vol. XVI, 1901 , pp. 452 - 471.
- Minorsky, V. . " The Middle East in Western Politics in the 13th , 15th , and 17th Centuries", Journal of the Royal Central Asiatic Society, vol. XXVII, 1940.
- Olson, R. . " The Esnaf and the Patrona Halil Rebellion of 1730 ", Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient, No. 17, Pt. 3, 1973.
- Perkins, Rev. Justin . " Journal of a Tour from Oroomiah to Mosul through the Koordish Mountains and a visit to the Ruins of Nineveh , Journal of American Oriental Society, vol. 2, 1851, pp. 69 - 119.
- Ryder, Col. C.H.D. . " The Demarcation of the Turco - Persian Boundary in 1913-1914", The Geographical Journal, vol. LXVI, pp. 227 - 242 .
- Savory, R. . " The Principal Offices of the Safawid State during the Reign of Ismā'īl I ", Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies, vol. xxiii, 1960.



- Savory, M. Roger . " Some Reflections on Totalitarian Tendencies in the Safavid State", Der Islam, vol. 53, 1976, pp. 226-241.
- Shaw, S.J. . " The Established Ottoman Army Corps Under Selim III 1789 - 1807 , Der Islam , vol. 40, 1965, pp. 459-503.
- . " Ottoman Archival Material for the Nineteenth and Early Twentieth Centuries : The Archives of Istanbul , International Journal of Middle East Studies, vol. 6 , 1975, pp. 94 - 114 .
- Sykes, Mark . " Journeys in North Mesopotamia ", The Geographical Journal, vol. XXX , 1907, pp. 237 - 254 , pp. 384 - 398.

## 12. MAPS & SKETCHES

- Map of Cairo , see En 2, vol. IV.
- Map of Constantinople , Von Hammer-Purgstall, 10 / IV .  
(see Hammer-Purgstall in Western Books).
- Map of Cyprus , by R.H. Lang , ( see Lang, R.H. in Western Books).
- Map of Dimashk , see En 2 , vol. II.
- Map of Eastern Turkey in Asia, see The Geographical Journal , vol. XXVIII, 1906.
- Map of Edirne, City and Neighbourhood, see En 2 , vol. II .
- Maps of Mesopotamia , Tigris and Euphrates , see Col. F.R. Chesney, The Expedition for the Survey Rivers Euphrates and Tigris, 2 vols., London, 1850.

- Maps of Istanbul , in BZTI, (see Western Books).
- Map of Mosul (= Mosul in 1743 ) by C. Niebuhr , Tab. XLVI .  
(see Western Books ).
- Map of Mosul Boundary , see The Geographical Journal , vol. LXVIII, 1926.
- Maps of Mosul , by Percy Kemp , ( 14 Maps ) ; ( see Western Books ).
- Map of the northern Iraq , by A.H. Layard ; see Austen Henry Layard, Nineveh and its Remains, vol. I , 1st ed. , London, 1849.
- Maps of the Ottoman Empire , by D.E. Pitcher ( 36 Maps ) ; ( see Western Books ).
- { Plan Von Mosul , E. Herzfeld , Dec. 1917 .  
(The British Museum Library).
- { Sketch Map of Nineveh - Mosul, drawn by Felix Jones .  
(The British Museum Library).
- Sketch Map of North Mesopotamia, Mark Sykes ; see The Geographical Journal , vol. XXX, 1907 (2).
- Sketch Map of the Balkan Peninsula,  
see ibid., vol. XXXII , 1908.
- The Map of Syria , G.L. Bell.  
(see Western Books).
- The Rise of the Ottoman Empire 1280 - 1683 , ( Map ) , Stanford J. Shaw . ( see Western Books ).
- The Routes of Nadir Shah in Iraq 1743 , drawn by the editor .  
(see the present thesis).
-

13. ATLASES

Kharīṭalī wa Rasmalī Mukammal Tarīkh Osmanī, Compiled by Ahmad Rashīd , vol. 2 , Istanbul, 1308 A.H.

Mukammal wa Mufasssal Jughrāfiyā 'Umūmī Atlāsī, Compiled by Muḥammad Ashraf , Istanbul, 1906.

Rasmalī wa Kharīṭalī Mukammal Tarīkh Osmanī, Compiled by Ahmad Rāsim, vol. 2 , Istanbul, 1327 A.H.

The Concise World Atlas, Compiled by Oxford Cartographers Ltd , Oxford, 1982.

The New Oxford Atlas of the World, Oxford, 1978.

The Time Atlas of the World, 6th edition, London, 1980.

The Time Atlas of World History, ed. by Geoffrey Barraclaugh, London, 1979.

14. CALENDAR

Bacharach, Jere L. . A Near East Studies Handbook, U.S., 1976.

15. THE PRIVATE LIBRARIES

The Private Library of 'Alī al-Jamīl, Hay al-Hukkām, Mosul, Iraq.

The Private Library of Mahmūd al-Jalīlī, al-Dawwāsa , Mosul, Iraq.

The Private Library of Nāzim al-'Umarī , al-Ghizlānī St., Mosul, Iraq.

The Private Library of Siddīq al-Jalīlī, Imām 'Awnuldīn , Mosul, Iraq.

The Private Library of The Chaldean Archbishopric , Mosul, Iraq.

## INDEX

<u>Text</u>	<u>Apparatus</u>	<u>Notes</u>	<u>The Year</u>
<u>Vol./p.</u>	<u>Vol./p.</u>	<u>Vol./p.</u>	
2/1	3.a / 512-3	1/166-7	920 A.H.
2/2	3.a / 513	1/167-8	921 - 2 A.H.
2/3 - 4	3.a / 513 - 5	1/168-9	922 A.H.
2/5	3.a / 515 - 6	1/169-170	922 - 3 A.H.
2/6	3.a / 516 - 7	1/170	923 A.H.
2/7	3.a / 517	1/171	923 - 5 A.H.
2/8	3.a / 517 - 8	1/171	925 - 7 A.H.
2/9	3.a / 518	1/171-3	927 A.H.
2/10-11	3.a / 518 - 9	1/173-4	928 - 30 A.H.
2/12	3.a / 519 - 20	1/174	930 - 1 A.H.
2/13-14	3.a / 520 - 21	1/174-7	932 - 5 A.H.
2/15	3.a / 521	1/177-8	935 - 6 A.H.
2/16	3.a / 521 - 2	1/178	937 - 8 A.H.
2/17	3.a / 522	1/179	939 - 40 A.H.
2/18	3.a / 522 - 3	1/179-180	941 A.H.
2/19	3.a / 523 - 4	1/180-1	942 - 3 A.H.
2/20	3.a / 524	1/181	944 - 5 A.H.
2/21	3.a / 524 - 5	1/182	946 - 7 A.H.
2/22	3.a / 525	1/182	948 - 9 A.H.
2/23	3.a / 525 - 6	1/182-3	950 - 1 A.H.
2/24	3.a / 526 - 7	1/183	952 - 3 A.H.
2/25	3.a / 527	1/183-4	954 - 5 A.H.
2/26	3.a / 527 - 8	1/184	955 - 7 A.H.
2/27	3.a / 528 - 9	1/184-5	957 - 8 A.H.
2/28-9	3.a / 529 - 30	1/185-6	959 - 62 A.H.
2/30	3.a / 530 - 1	1/186	963 - 4 A.H.
2/31-2	3.a / 531 - 2	1/186-7	965 - 8 A.H.
2/33	3.a / 532 - 3	1/187	969 - 70 A.H.
2/34	3.a / 533	1/187-8	971 A.H.
2/35	3.a / 533 - 4	1/188	972 - 3 A.H.
2/36	3.a / 534 - 5	1/188-9	974 A.H.
2/37	3.a / 535 - 6	1/189	974 - 5 A.H.
2/38	3.a / 536	1/189-190	976 - 7 A.H.
2/39	3.a / 537	1/190-1	978 - 80 A.H.
2/40	3.a / 537 - 8	1/191	980 - 1 A.H.

<u>Text</u>	<u>Apparatus</u>	<u>Notes</u>	<u>The Year</u>
2/41	3.a / 538 - 9	1/192	981 A.H.
2/42-3	3.a / 539 -40	1/192-3	982 A.H.
2/44	3.a / 540 - 1	1/193	983 - 4 A.H.
2/45	3.a / 541 - 2	1/193	984 - 5 A.H.
2/46	3.a / 542 - 3	1/193-4	985 - 6 A.H.
2/47	3.a / 543 - 4	1/194-5	986 - 7 A.H.
2/48	3.a / 544 - 5	1/195	988 A.H.
2/49	3.a / 545	1/195	989 - 90 A.H.
2/50	3.a / 546	1/195-6	990 A.H.
2/51	3.a / 546 - 7	1/196	991 - 2 A.H.
2/52-3	3.a / 547 - 9	1/196-7	992 - 4 A.H.
2/54	3.a / 549 -50	1/197	995 A.H.
2/55-6	3.a / 550 - 1	1/197-8	996 - 8 A.H.
2/57	3.a / 551 - 2	1/198	998 - 9 A.H.
2/58	3.a / 552	1/198-9	999-1000 A.H.
2/59	3.a / 553	1/199	1000 A.H.
2/60	3.a / 553 - 4	1/199-200	1001 A.H.
2/61	3.a / 554 - 5	1/200	1001 A.H.
2/62	3.a / 556	1/200-1	1001- 2 A.H.
2/63	3.a / 556 - 7	1/201	1002 A.H.
2/64	3.a / 557	1/201	1003 A.H.
2/65	3.a / 558 - 9	1/202	1003 A.H.
2/66	3.a / 559	1/203	1003 A.H.
2/67	3.a / 559 -60	1/203	1003 A.H.
2/68	3.a / 560	1/203	1003- 4 A.H.
2/69	3.a / 561	1/204	1004 A.H.
2/70	3.a / 561 - 2	1/204	1004 A.H.
2/71	3.a / 562	1/204-5	1004 A.H.
2/72	3.a / 563	1/205	1004 A.H.
2/73	3.a / 563 - 4	1/205	1005 A.H.
2/74	3.a / 564 - 5	1/205	1005 A.H.
2/75	3.a / 565	1/206	1005 A.H.
2/76	3.a / 565 - 6	1/206	1005 A.H.
2/77	3.a / 566 - 7	1/206	1006 A.H.
2/78	3.a / 567 - 8	1/207	1006 A.H.
2/79	3.a / 568	1/207	1006 A.H.
2/80	3.a / 568 - 9	1/207	1006- 7 A.H.

Text	Apparatus	Notes	The Year	
2/81	3.a/569-70	1/207-8	1007	A.H.
2/82	3.a/570	1/208	1007	A.H.
2/83	3.a/570- 1	1/208	1007	A.H.
2/84	3.a/571- 2	1/208-9	1007	A.H.
2/85	3.a/572	1/209	1007- 8	A.H.
2/86	3.a/572- 3	1/209	1008	A.H.
2/87	3.a/573	1/210	1008	A.H.
2/88	3.a/574	1/210	1008	A.H.
2/89	3.a/574- 5	1/210	1008	A.H.
2/90	3.a/575	1/210	1008	A.H.
2/91	3.a/576	1/210-211	1008	A.H.
2/92	3.a/576	1/211	1008- 9	A.H.
2/93	3.a/576- 7	1/211-12	1009	A.H.
2/94	3.a/577- 8	1/212	1009	A.H.
2/95	3.a/578	1/212	1010	A.H.
2/96	3.a/578- 9	1/213	1010	A.H.
2/97	3.a/579-80	1/213	1010	A.H.
2/98	3.a/580	1/213	1010	A.H.
2/99	3.a/580- 1	1/213	1010	A.H.
2/100	3.a/581- 2	1/214	1010	A.H.
2/101	3.a/582- 3	1/214	1010	A.H.
2/102-3	3.a/583- 4	1/214-15	1010	A.H.
2/104	3.a/584- 5	1/215	1011	A.H.
2/105	3.a/585- 6	1/215	1011	A.H.
2/106	3.a/586- 7	1/215	1011- 12	A.H.
2/107	3.a/587	1/215	1012	A.H.
2/108	3.a/588	1/215-16	1012	A.H.
2/109	3.a/589	1/216	1012	A.H.
2/110	3.a/590- 1	1/216-17	1012	A.H.
2/111	3.a/591	1/217	1012- 13	A.H.
2/112	3.a/592	1/217	1013	A.H.
2/113	3.a/592- 3	1/217	1013- 14	A.H.
2/114	3.a/593- 4	1/217-18	1014	A.H.
2/115	3.a/594- 5	1/218	1014	A.H.
2/116	3.a/595	1/218	1014	A.H.
2/117	3.a/595- 6	1/218	1014	A.H.
2/118-9	3.a/596- 8	1/218-19	1014- 15	A.H.

Text	Apparatus	Notes	The Year	
2/120	3.a/598- 9	1/219	1015	A.H.
2/121	3.a/599-600	1/219-20	1015	A.H.
2/122-3	3.a/600- 1	1/220	1016	A.H.
2/124	3.a/602	1/220	1016	A.H.
2/125	3.a/602- 3	1/220-1	1016- 17	A.H.
2/126	3.a/603- 4	1/221	1017	A.H.
2/127	3.a/604- 5	1/221	1017- 18	A.H.
2/128	3.a/605	1/221	1018	A.H.
2/129	3.a/606- 7	1/221-2	1018	A.H.
2/130	3.a/607- 8	1/222	1018- 19	A.H.
2/131	3.a/608	1/222	1019	A.H.
2/132	3.a/608- 9	1/222-3	1019	A.H.
2/133	3.a/609- 10	1/223	1019- 20	A.H.
2/134	3.a/610- 11	1/223	1020	A.H.
2/135	3.a/611- 12	1/223	1020	A.H.
2/136	3.a/612	1/223-4	1020	A.H.
2/137	3.a/612- 13	1/224	1020	A.H.
2/138	3.a/613- 14	1/224	1021	A.H.
2/139	3.a/614- 15	1/224	1022	A.H.
2/140	3.a/615- 16	1/224-5	1022- 3	A.H.
2/141	3.a/616- 17	1/225	1023	A.H.
2/142	3.a/617- 18	1/225	1023	A.H.
2/143	3.a/618- 19	1/225	1024	A.H.
2/144	3.a/619- 20	1/226	1024	A.H.
2/145	3.a/620- 1	1/226	1024- 5	A.H.
2/146	3.a/621	1/226	1025- 6	A.H.
2/147	3.a/622	1/226	1026	A.H.
2/148	3.a/622- 3	1/226-7	1026	A.H.
2/149	3.a/623- 4	1/227	1026- 7	A.H.
2/150	3.a/624- 5	1/227	1027	A.H.
2/151	3.a/625- 6	1/227-8	1027	A.H.
2/152	3.a/626	1/228	1028	A.H.
2/153	3.a/627- 8	1/228	1028	A.H.
2/154	3.a/628	1/229	1028- 30	A.H.
2/155	3.a/629	1/229	1030	A.H.
2/156	3.a/630- 1	1/229	1030	A.H.
2/157	3.a/631	1/230	1030- 1	A.H.



<u>Text</u>	<u>Apparatus</u>	<u>Notes</u>	<u>The Year</u>	
2/158	3.a/632	1/230	1031	A.H.
2/159	3.a/633- 4	1/230	1031	A.H.
2/160	3.a/634- 5	1/230-1	1031	A.H.
2/161	3.a/635- 6	1/231	1031- 2	A.H.
2/162	3.a/636- 7	1/231-2	1032	A.H.
2/163	3.a/637- 8	1/232	1032	A.H.
2/164	3.a/638- 9	1/232-3	1032	A.H.
2/165	3.a/640	1/233	1032- 3	A.H.
2/166	3.a/641	1/233-4	1033	A.H.
2/167	3.a/642	1/234	1033- 4	A.H.
2/168	3.a/643- 4	1/234	1034	A.H.
2/169	3.a/644	1/234	1034- 5	A.H.
2/170	3.a/645- 6	1/234-5	1035	A.H.
2/171	3.a/646- 7	1/235	1035	A.H.
2/172-3	3.a/647- 8	1/235	1035- 7	A.H.
2/174	3.a/648- 9	1/236	1037	A.H.
2/175	3.a/649-50	1/236	1037- 8	A.H.
2/176	3.a/650- 1	1/236	1038- 9	A.H.
2/177	3.a/651- 2	1/236	1039	A.H.
2/178	3.a/652- 3	1/237	1039- 40	A.H.
2/179-80	3.a/653- 5	1/237	1040- 1	A.H.
2/181	3.a/655- 6	1/237-8	1041	A.H.
2/182	3.a/656- 7	1/238	1041	A.H.
2/183	3.a/658- 9	1/238	1041	A.H.
2/184	3.a/659-60	1/238	1041- 2	A.H.
2/185	3.a/660- 1	1/239	1042	A.H.
2/186	3.a/661- 2	1/239	1042	A.H.
2/187	3.a/662	1/239	1042- 3	A.H.
2/188	3.a/663- 4	1/239	1043	A.H.
2/189	3.a/664- 5	1/240	1043	A.H.
2/190	3.a/665- 6	1/240	1043	A.H.
2/191	3.a/666- 7	1/240	1043- 4	A.H.
2/192	3.a/667- 8	1/241	1044	A.H.
2/193	3.a/668- 9	1/241	1044- 5	A.H.
2/194	3.a/669-70	1/241	1045	A.H.
2/195	3.a/670- 1	1/241-2	1045- 6	A.H.
2/196	3.a/671- 2	1/242	1046	A.H.
2/197	3.a/672- 3	1/242	1046- 7	A.H.

Text	Apparatus	Notes	The Year	
2/198	3.a/674	1/242	1047	A.H.
2/199	3.a/675- 7	1/243	1047- 8	A.H.
2/200	3.a/677- 8	1/243	1048	A.H.
2/201	3.a/678- 9	1/243	1048	A.H.
2/202	3.a/679-81	1/244	1048	A.H.
2/203	3.a/681	1/244	1049	A.H.
2/204	3.a/682	1/244	1049- 50	A.H.
2/205	3.a/682- 4	1/244	1050	A.H.
2/206	3.a/684- 5	1/245	1051	A.H.
2/207	3.a/685- 6	1/245	1051	A.H.
2/208	3.a/686	1/245	1051- 2	A.H.
2/209	3.a/687	1/245	1052	A.H.
2/210	3.a/687- 8	1/246	1052- 3	A.H.
2/211	3.a/688- 9	1/246	1053- 4	A.H.
2/212	3.a/689-90	1/246	1054	A.H.
2/213	3.a/691- 2	1/247	1054	A.H.
2/214	3.a/692- 3	1/247-8	1054- 5	A.H.
2/215	3.a/693- 4	1/248	1055	A.H.
2/216	3.a/694- 5	1/248	1055- 6	A.H.
2/217	3.a/695- 6	1/248	1056	A.H.
2/218	3.a/696	1/249	1056	A.H.
2/219	3.a/697	1/249	1056- 7	A.H.
2/220	3.a/697- 9	1/249	1057	A.H.
2/221	3.a/699-700	1/249-50	1057	A.H.
2/222	3.a/700- 1	1/250	1057	A.H.
2/223	3.a/701- 2	1/250	1057	A.H.
2/224	3.a/702- 3	1/250-1	1058	A.H.
2/225	3.a/703- 4	1/251	1058- 9	A.H.
2/226	3.a/704- 5	1/251-2	1059	A.H.
2/227	3.a/706	1/252	1059- 60	A.H.
2/228	3.a/706- 7	1/252	1060	A.H.
2/229	3.a/708	1/253	1060- 1	A.H.
2/230	3.a/709-10	1/253	1061	A.H.
2/231	3.a/710	1/253	1061	A.H.
2/232	3.a/711-12	1/253	1061- 2	A.H.
2/233	3.a/712-13	1/254	1062	A.H.
2/234	3.a/713-15	1/254	1062- 3	A.H.

Text	Apparatus	Notes	The Year	
2/235	3.a/715	1/254-5	1063	A.H.
2/236	3.a/716-17	1/255	1063	A.H.
2/237	3.a/717-18	1/255	1063- 4	A.H.
2/238	3.a/718-19	1/255	1064	A.H.
2/239	3.a/719-20	1/256	1064- 5	A.H.
2/240	3.a/721- 2	1/256	1065	A.H.
2/241	3.a/722	1/256	1065	A.H.
2/242	3.a/723	1/257	1066	A.H.
2/243	3.a/723- 5	1/257	1066	A.H.
2/244	3.a/725- 6	1/257	1066- 7	A.H.
2/245	3.a/726- 7	1/257	1067	A.H.
2/246	3.a/727- 8	1/258	1067- 8	A.H.
2/247	3.a/728- 9	1/258	1068	A.H.
2/248	3.a/729-30	1/258	1069	A.H.
2/249	3.a/730- 1	1/258	1069	A.H.
2/250	3.a/731- 2	1/258-9	1069	A.H.
2/251	3.a/732- 3	1/259.	1069	A.H.
2/252	3.a/733	1/259	1070	A.H.
2/253	3.a/733- 4	1/259	1070	A.H.
2/254	3.a/734- 5	1/260	1070	A.H.
2/255	3.a/736	1/260	1071	A.H.
2/256	3.a/737- 8	1/260	1071	A.H.
2/257	3.a/738- 9	1/261	1071	A.H.
2/258	3.a/739-40	1/261	1071	A.H.
2/259	3.a/740- 1	1/261-2	1072	A.H.
2/260	3.a/742- 3	1/262	1072	A.H.
2/261	3.a/743- 4	1/262	1072	A.H.
2/262	3.a/744- 5	1/262	1072- 3	A.H.
2/263	3.a/745- 6	1/263	1073	A.H.
2/264	3.a/746- 7	1/263	1073- 4	A.H.
2/265	3.a/747- 8	1/263	1074- 5	A.H.
2/266	3.a/748- 9	1/263	1075	A.H.
2/267	3.a/749-50	1/263-4	1075	A.H.
2/268	3.a/750- 1	1/264	1076	A.H.
2/269	3.a/751- 2	1/264-5	1076	A.H.
2/270	3.a/752- 3	1/265	1076	A.H.
2/271	3.a/753- 4	1/265	1077	A.H.
2/272	3.a/754- 5	1/265-6	1077	A.H.

Text	Apparatus	Notes	The Year
2/273	3.a/755- 6	1/266	1077- 8 A.H.
2/274	3.a/756- 7	1/266	1078 A.H.
2/275	3.a/757- 8	1/267	1079 A.H.
2/276	3.a/758- 9	1/267	1079 A.H.
2/277	3.a/759-60	1/267	1079- 80 A.H.
2/278	3.a/760- 2	1/267	1080 A.H.
2/279	3.a/762- 3	1/268	1081 A.H.
2/280	3.a/764	1/268	1081 A.H.
2/281	3.a/765	1/268	1081 A.H.
2/282	3.a/766- 7	1/268-9	1081- 2 A.H.
2/283	3.a/767- 8	1/269	1082 A.H.
2/284	3.a/768- 9	1/269	1083 A.H.
2/285	3.a/769-70	1/269	1083 A.H.
2/286	3.a/770- 2	1/269-270	1084- 5 A.H.
2/287	3.a/772- 3	1/270	1085 A.H.
2/288	3.a/773- 4	1/270	1085 A.H.
2/289	3.a/774- 5	1/270	1085- 6 A.H.
2/290	3.a/775- 6	1/271	1086- 7 A.H.
2/291	3.a/776- 7	1/271	1087 A.H.
2/292	3.a/777- 9	1/271	1087- 8 A.H.
2/293	3.a/779-80	1/272	1088 A.H.
2/294	3.a/780- 1	1/272	1088- 9 A.H.
2/295	3.a/781- 2	1/272	1089- 90 A.H.
2/296	3.a/783- 4	1/273	1090 A.H.
2/297	3.a/784- 5	1/273	1090- 1 A.H.
2/298	3.a/786- 7	1/273	1091 A.H.
2/299	3.a/787- 8	1/274	1091- 2 A.H.
2/300	3.a/788- 9	1/274	1092 A.H.
2/301	3.a/789-90	1/274	1092- 3 A.H.
2/302	3.a/791- 2	1/274	1093 A.H.
2/303	3.a/792- 3	1/275	1093 A.H.
2/304	3.a/793- 4	1/275	1094 A.H.
2/305	3.a/794- 6	1/275-6	1094- 5 A.H.
2/306	3.a/796- 7	1/276	1095 A.H.
2/307	3.a/797- 8	1/276-7	1095- 6 A.H.
2/308	3.a/798- 9	1/277	1096 A.H.
2/309	3.a/799-800	1/277	1096 A.H.

Text	Apparatus	Notes	The Year
2/310	3.a/800- 2	1/277	1096- 7 A.H.
2/311	3.a/802- 3	1/277-8	1097- 8 A.H.
2/312	3.a/803- 4	1/278	1098 A.H.
2/313	3.a/804- 6	1/278	1098- 9 A.H.
2/314	3.a/806- 8	1/279	1100 A.H.
2/315	3.a/808- 10	1/279	1100-1101 A.H.
2/316	3.a/810- 11	1/280	1101- 2 A.H.
2/317	3.a/811- 13	1/280	1102- 4 A.H.
2/318	3.a/813	1/280	1105 A.H.
2/319	3.a/814	1/280-1	1106- 7 A.H.
2/320	3.a/815- 16	1/281	1107- 8 A.H.
2/321- 2	3.a/816- 19	1/281-2	1109 A.H.
2/323	3.a/819- 21	1/282	1110- 11 A.H.
2/324	3.a/821- 2	1/282	1111- 13 A.H.
2/325	3.a/822- 3	1/283	1113- 15 A.H.
2/326	3.a/824- 5	1/283	1115- 17 A.H.
2/327	3.a/825- 6	1/283-4	1117- 19 A.H.
2/328	3.a/826- 7	1/284	1119-1121 A.H.
2/329	3.a/828	1/284-5	1121- 3 A.H.
2/330	3.a/828- 9	1/285	1123- 4 A.H.
2/331	3.a/829- 31	1/285	1124- 5 A.H.
2/332	3.a/831- 2	1/285-6	1125- 7 A.H.
2/333	3.a/833- 4	1/286-7	1127- 8 A.H.
2/334	3.a/834- 6	1/287	1129 A.H.
2/335	3.a/836- 7	1/287	1129-1131 A.H.
2/336	3.a/837-840	1/287-8	1131- 2 A.H.
2/337	3.a/840- 2	1/288	1133 A.H.
2/338	3.a/842- 5	1/288	1134- 5 A.H.
2/339	3.a/845- 7	1/289	1135- 6 A.H.
2/340	3.a/847- 9	1/289-290	1136- 7 A.H.
2/341	3.a/849-851	1/290	1137- 8 A.H.
2/342	3.a/851- 2	1/290	1139- 40 A.H.
2/343	3.a/853- 5	1/290-1	1140 A.H.
2/344	3.a/855- 7	1/291	1140- 1 A.H.
2/345	3.a/858- 60	1/291-2	1142- 3 A.H.
2/346-8	3.a/861- 6	1/292-3	1143- 4 A.H.
2/349	3.a/866- 8	1/293-4	1144- 5 A.H.

<u>Text</u>	<u>Apparatus</u>	<u>Notes</u>	<u>The Year</u>
2/350	3.a/868- 70	1/294	1145- 6 A.H.
2/351	3.a/870- 3	1/294	1146- 7 A.H.
2/352	3.a/873- 5	1/294-5	1147 A.H.
2/353	3.a/875- 7	1/295	1148 A.H.
2/354	3.a/877- 9	1/295	1149 A.H.
2/355	3.a/879-880	1/296	1149- 50 A.H.
2/356	3.a/880- 2	1/296	1150- 1 A.H.
2/357	3.b/883- 4	1/296	1151- 3 A.H.
2/358	3.b/885- 6	1/296-7	1153 A.H.
2/359	3.b/886- 7	1/297	1153- 4 A.H.
2/360- 5	3.b/887-898	1/297-9	1155- 6 A.H.
2/366- 7	3.b/898-902	1/299-300	1157- 9 A.H.
2/368- 9	3.b/902- 6	1/300	1159-1161 A.H.
2/370- 1	3.b/906-910	1/300-1	1161- 2 A.H.
2/372	3.b/910- 12	1/301	1162- 3 A.H.
2/373- 4	3.b/912- 17	1/301-2	1163- 4 A.H.
2/375	3.b/917- 19	1/302	1164- 5 A.H.
2/376	3.b/919- 20	1/302	1165- 6 A.H.
2/377	3.b/920- 2	1/302-3	1166 A.H.
2/378	3.b/923- 5	1/303	1167 A.H.
2/379	3.b/925- 7	1/303-4	1168 A.H.
2/380	3.b/927- 8	1/304	1169 A.H.
2/381	3.b/929- 31	1/304	1169- 70 A.H.
2/382	3.b/931- 3	1/304	1170 A.H.
2/383	3.b/933- 5	1/305	1170- 1 A.H.
2/384	3.b/936- 7	1/305	1171 A.H.
2/385	3.b/938-940	1/305-6	1171- 2 A.H.
2/386	3.b/940- 2	1/306	1172- 3 A.H.
2/387	3.b/942- 4	1/306	1173 A.H.
2/388	3.b/944- 7	1/306-7	1173- 4 A.H.
2/389	3.b/947- 8	1/307	1174- 5 A.H.
2/390	3.b/948-951	1/307	1175 A.H.
2/391	3.b/951- 2	1/307-8	1175 A.H.
2/392	3.b/953- 6	1/308	1176 A.H.
2/393	3.b/956- 7	1/308	1176- 7 A.H.
2/394	3.b/957- 9	1/309	1177 A.H.
2/395	3.b/960- 3	1/309	1177- 8 A.H.

Text	Apparatus	Notes	The Year
2/396- 7	3.b/963- 5	1/309-310	1178-1180 A.H.
2/398	3.b/966- 7	1/310	1180- 1 A.H.
2/399	3.b/967- 9	1/310	1181 A.H.
2/400	3.b/969-970	1/310	1181- 2 A.H.
2/401- 2	3.b/971- 3	1/310-11	1182- 3 A.H.
2/403	3.b/973- 5	1/311	1183 A.H.
2/404	3.b/975- 7	1/311	1183 A.H.
2/405	3.b/977- 8	1/311-12	1184 A.H.
2/406	3.b/979-980	1/312	1184 A.H.
2/407	3.b/980- 3	1/312-13	1184 A.H.
2/408	3.b/984- 5	1/313	1184- 5 A.H.
2/409	3.b/985- 7	1/313	1185 A.H.
2/410	3.b/987- 9	1/313	1185 A.H.
2/411	3.b/989-992	1/313	1185- 6 A.H.
2/412	3.b/992- 4	1/314	1186 A.H.
2/413	3.b/994- 6	1/314	1186 A.H.
2/414	3.b/997- 9	1/314	1186 A.H.
2/415	3.b/999-1000	1/314	1186- 7 A.H.
2/416	3.b/1000- 2	1/314	1187 A.H.
2/417	3.b/1002- 5	1/315	1187 A.H.
2/418	3.b/1005- 6	1/315	1188 A.H.
2/419	3.b/1006- 8	1/315	1188 A.H.
2/420	3.b/1008- 11	1/315	1188 A.H.
2/421- 2	3.b/1011- 14	1/315-16	1189 A.H.
2/423	3.b/1014- 16	1/316	1189 A.H.
2/424	3.b/1016- 18	1/316	1189- 90 A.H.
2/425	3.b/1018- 20	1/316	1190 A.H.
2/426	3.b/1020- 1	1/316	1190 A.H.
2/427	3.b/1022- 4	1/317	1190 A.H.
2/428	3.b/1024- 5	1/317	1190- 1 A.H.
2/429	3.b/1025- 7	1/317	1191 A.H.
2/430	3.b/1028- 9	1/317	1191- 2 A.H.
2/431	3.b/1029- 31	1/318	1192 A.H.
2/432	3.b/1031- 4	1/318	1192 A.H.
2/433	3.b/1034- 6	1/318	1192- 3 A.H.
2/434	3.b/1036- 8	1/318	1193 A.H.
2/435	3.b/1038	1/319	1193 A.H.

Text	Apparatus	Notes	The Year	
2/436	3.b/1038	1/319	1193	A.H.
2/437	3.b/1039- 40	1/319	1193- 4	A.H.
2/438	3.b/1040- 1	1/319	1194- 5	A.H.
2/439	3.b/1042- 3	1/320	1195- 6	A.H.
2/440	3.b/1043- 6	1/320	1196- 7	A.H.
2/441	3.b/1046- 8	1/321	1197- 8	A.H.
2/442	3.b/1048- 51	1/321	1198- 9	A.H.
2/443	3.b/1051- 3	1/321	1199	A.H.
2/444	3.b/1053- 4	1/322	1199-1200	A.H.
2/445-6	3.b/1054- 8	1/322	1200	A.H.
2/447	3.b/1058- 60	1/322-3	1200- 1	A.H.
2/448	3.b/1060- 1	1/323	1201	A.H.
2/449	3.b/1061- 3	1/323-4	1201- 2	A.H.
2/450	3.b/1063- 6	1/324	1202	A.H.
2/451-2	3.b/1066- 72	1/324-5	1202- 3	A.H.
2/453	3.b/1072- 3	1/325	1203	A.H.
2/454	3.b/1073- 5	1/325	1203- 4	A.H.
2/455	3.b/1075- 9	1/326	1204	A.H.
2/456	3.b/1079- 80	1/326	1204- 5	A.H.
2/457	3.b/1080- 1	1/326	1205	A.H.
2/458	3.b/1082- 3	1/327	1205- 6	A.H.
2/459	3.b/1083- 5	1/327	1206	A.H.
2/460	3.b/1085- 7	1/327	1206- 7	A.H.
2/461	3.b/1088- 90	1/327-8	1207	A.H.
2/462	3.b/1090- 5	1/328	1207	A.H.
2/463	3.b/1095- 7	1/328	1207	A.H.
2/464	3.b/1097- 9	1/328-9	1207- 8	A.H.
2/465	3.b/1099-1101	1/329	1208	A.H.
2/466	3.b/1101- 3	1/329-30	1208- 9	A.H.
2/467	3.b/1103- 5	1/330	1209	A.H.
2/468-9	3.b/1105-1110	1/330-1	1209-1210	A.H.
2/470	3.b/1110-1112	1/331	1210	A.H.
2/471	3.b/1112-1114	1/332	1210	A.H.
2/472	3.b/1114-1117	1/332	1210	A.H.
2/473-4	3.b/1117-1120	1/332	1211	A.H.
2/475	3.b/1120- 3	1/333	1211	A.H.
2/476	3.b/1123- 4	1/333	1212	A.H.



Text	Apparatus	Notes	The Year	
2/477	3.b/1124- 5	1/333	1212	A.H.
2/478	3.b/1126- 8	1/333	1212	A.H.
2/479	3.b/1128- 30	1/333	1212-1213	A.H.
2/480-1	3.b/1130- 4	1/334	1213	A.H.
2/482	3.b/1134- 6	1/334	1213	A.H.
2/483	3.b/1136- 8	1/334	1213	A.H.
2/484	3.b/1138- 42	1/334-5	1213	A.H.
2/485	3.b/1142- 5	1/335	1213	A.H.
2/486	3.b/1145- 8	1/335	1213-1214	A.H.
2/487	3.b/1148- 50	1/335	1214	A.H.
2/488	3.b/1150- 2	1/335	1214	A.H.
2/489	3.b/1152- 5	1/335-6	1214	A.H.
2/490	3.b/1155- 7	1/336	1214-1215	A.H.
2/491	3.b/1158- 9	1/336	1215	A.H.
2/492	3.b/1159- 62	1/336	1215	A.H.
2/493-4	3.b/1162- 5	1/336-7	1215-1216	A.H.
2/495-6	3.b/1165- 8	1/337	1216	A.H.
2/497-9	3.b/1168- 72	1/337-8	1216	A.H.
2/499-500	3.b/1172- 5	1/338	1216-1217	A.H.
2/501	3.b/1175- 7	1/338	1217	A.H.
2/502-3	3.b/1177- 8	1/338-9	1217	A.H.
2/504-510	3.b/1179- 84	1/339	1217-1218	A.H.